THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC, Commonly call'd TAMERLAIN.

154.023
Just Publish'd.

The History of Gog and Magog, the Great, first Emperor of the ancient Mogul and Tartars, in four Books: Containing, his Life, Advancement and Conquests, with a Short History of his Successors to the present Time; the Manners, Customs and Laws of the ancient Mogul and Tartar; and the Geography of the vast Countries of Mogulstan, Turquestan, Caffeshan, Togarestan, and the Eastern and Western Tartary. Collected from several Oriental Authors, and Emerald Travellers: whose Names, with an Abridgment of their Lives, are added to this Book. By the late M. Petis de la Croix. Senior Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Turkish and Arabic Languages. And now faithfully translated into English.
THE
French editor's

PREFACE.

OF ALL the oriental pieces which the late M. Petis de la Croix the son has translated, there is not one which more deserves to see the light, than this we now present the public, for which the learned world hath express'd so much impatience. The remarks he hath left behind him, to instruct the reader in several obscure passages, will serve for the groundwork of this preface; in which we shall often make use of his own words.

M. DE LA CROIX having found a manuscript of the history of Genghiz-Can, the most illustrious of the ancestors of Timur-Bec, extracted from the best authors by his late father; and considering it might give much insight into the history of Timur-Bec; the respect due to an author so nearly ally'd to him, and the connection between the two histories, engag'd him to publish that history of Genghiz-Can; in which are related some of the most considerable transactions of the thirteenth century, as this of Timur-Bec is one of the principal ornaments of the two following. The conformity of the subject, and the great-
The French editor’s preface.

greatness of the events, will render the reading of this history very agreeable to those particularly, who are acquainted with that of Genghiz-Can. Here they will find, among the most remarkable particulars, an exact description of the roads of the empire of the Moguls, and a full light into the geography of the greatest part of Asia, with a continuation of the history of the Mogul and Tartar emperors. And tho from the death of Genghiz-Can*, to the birth of Timur-Bec+, there is an interval of one hundred and ten years, during which time twenty-one emperors reign’d, who descended from Zagatai-Can the son of Genghiz-Can, of whose history the Europeans are ignorant; yet this defect has in some measure been supplied, and the reader conducted as far as the time of Timur-Bec. For M. de la Croix the son has added to the history of Genghiz-Can a list of those emperors, with an abridgment of the principal points of their history.

The author of the history, of which we now publish a translation, is a writer universally applauded by the Orientals, and even by those who have written on the same subject; which is indeed uncommon. They agree that he is the most valuable of those who have written the history of Timur-Bec. Condemir, among the rest, prefers him before all the writers of the history of the Moguls and Tartars; as well for the delicacy of the Persian language, as for the

---

* An historian, named Talikhani, has written upon this subject; but M. de la Croix, editor of this this work has not yet appeared in Europe.
+ This list is extant one of the chronological history called Tahurst, and from those of Condemir and Halilin.

force
force of his expressions, and the beauty of his style.

Handz Calfa, a modern Turk, in his Oriental library, says that his name is Moulla Scherefeddin Ali Yezdi, native of Yezd, a city of Persia: that he died in the year of the Hegira 890, that he call’d his book, Zafar Name Emir Timur Garman, that is to say, The history of the conquests of prince Timur, son-in-law of the Can: that this book was publish’d at Chiras, the ancient capital of Persia, by order of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charab, son of Timur-Bec: and that he finish’d it in the year of Christ 1424, that is, nineteen years after the death of Timur-Bec, which happen’d in the year of Christ 1405. He adds, that this book has been since translated into the Turcoman language by Hafiz Meneomed Bin Ahmed Alagemi. He also says, that our author had before compos’d a full volume, under the title of Muzaddamur, Zafar Name, that is, Preliminarys of the history of conquests: which book of preliminary properly contains the history of the Oulkous, or Mogul hords: and families, who follow’d Zagatai-Can, son of Genghiz-Can, in the countrie which his father align’d him as his sharer, and which for that reason have ever since been nam’d Zagatai. These hords, being distributed into a great number of Toman’s, and govern’d by

1. Hordes among the Moguls and Toms are the same as tribes among the Britains and Arabs.
2. Toman is a country given to a hord or family, the chief of which possesseth it as a sovereignty, and governeth according to the laws of Genghiz-Can, furnishing ten thousand men to the Can or captain. Toman also signifies a sum of fifty shillings, a piece of money, each of which in Persia is worth eighteen French seis.

A 4
The French editor's preface.

Chief seceding out of the most illustrious families of the Moguls, form'd the empire which bore the name of Zagatal Can, of which Tranfoxia was both the seat and center.

If this history had been deliver'd down to us, it would have serv'd very well to connect the histories of Genghis Can and Timur-Bec; but the tith of the Mogul emperors, which is join'd to the former, may supply that defect.

A genealogy so well attested as that of Timur-Bec, gave room to M. Petit de la Croix to refute a prejudic'd notion, which almost every one has entertain'd till this time, that Timur-Bec was a sort of an adventurer, and had rais'd himself by robberys and violences. He tells us, that these are calumnys and importunes, which have been publish'd by authors of romances, and Turkish writers who were his enemies, and envious at his glory; among whom is Ahmed Bin Arabichiah, translated into French by M. Vatier. They make this prince a shepherd, and a person of little consequence, who, as they assure us, rais'd his fortune by robbing on the high-way. They have disguis'd his name, to make one which shou'd give us a base and despicable idea of this prince; to which purpose they have forg'n that he was slay'd by an arrow, with which he was shot by a certain shepherd, whose sheep he was healing. Thus they have alter'd the name of Bec, which signify's prince, into that of Lene, which signify's lame: for, it is an easy change, in the writing and pronunciation of the Orientals, to say Timur-Lene 1, instead of

---

1 To make his change, we need only take away the point under the t of Bec, and place one over it, which will become an n. Then carry the t a little higher, and it will be . Thus for Bec we read Lene.
Timur-Bec. The Europeans have form'd the name of Tamerlan and Tumbourian; out of Timur-Lenc, which is compos'd of his true name, and a ridiculous nick-name. As Timur-Bec had conquer'd the Turks and Arabians of Syria, and had even taken the Sultan Bajzer prisoner, it is no wonder that he has been misrepresented by the historians of those nations, who, in despite of truth, and against the dignity of history, have fallen into great excels upon this subject. We find by reading Condemir, and several other historians, that what they have written concerning the origin and adventures of Timur-Bec, are mere fables, which their prejudice against this prince put them upon inventing. Wherefore setting aside the fable, we will keep to the name of Timur-Bec, and drop the supposititious name of Tamerlan.

We come now to speak of this translation, and the copy from which it was done. When M. Paris de la Croix was in the Levant, he was very diligent in attaining a knowledge of the best authors. It was not long before he heard of our historian, from those learned men with whom he convers'd; and he soon found the value of it, when he perus'd it himself, as he says, with a singular satisfaction. When he was at Isphahan, the capital of Persia, he purposed a very hand-some copy, which he brought to Paris, and ex-

*These prejudiced historians have invented the fable of the stone-corn, in which they say our emperor was dropp'd, and they have been follow'd in this by several Europeans. But we see the folly of this in our author his contemporaries, who on the contrary relate, that Tamerlan always treated Bajzer as his equal, and render'd him all the honors due to the greatest prince.
plain'd several passages of it to M. Colbert. This
minister conceiv'd to great an idea of it, and
judg'd of its worth so well, by the account which
M. de la Croix gave him, that he order'd him
to translate it into French. He accordingly
began it, but was interrupted by the voyages
and negotiations, which the king order'd him
to perform, and in which he was employ'd for
several years. Therefore not being able to
finish his translation before the death of M. Col-
bert, he presented it to the marquis of Seignelay.
This minister, whose penetration and fine genius
are known to all the world, found the matter
of this history so delightful, that he judg'd it
worthy of the king's knowledge and perusal. His
majesty was pleas'd to hear the most beautiful
passages of it read by this minister, who had
discover'd a conformity between the great acons
of the Gallic hero, and those of the Tartarian
conquers, abating the excess of rigor and sever-
rity, which he cou'd not but acknowledge and
blame in the latter.  

* His voyages, which were eleven in all, were in the times
which the king first several years together against the republics
of Barbary, and the ports dependent on Morocco, when his
activity resolv'd to reduce 'em to reason, and make 'em demand
a peace, as they have since done. There is a limit ac-
count of those voyages at the end of this history.

* The reader is left to judge what color the French writer
had for paying this compliment to Lewis XIV, for the Tunes
might perhaps those who did not believe in Mahomet,
in case they abbreviate not to him; yet we don't find he ever
performed any of the followers of that prophet, the differing
from himself in some points of doctrine: while we mention,
the Lewis isn't bloody persecutions against soil numbers
who believe in Jesus Christ, also they were his
own subjects, willing to live quietly under him, say, had been
influential in fixing the crown upon his head.
The French editor's preface.

M. de la Croix made a literal version of his author, which he plac'd over-against the Persian text; but however prejudic'd he was in favor of a language, which was in a manner natural to him (as he us'd to say) and which he extremely lov'd; yet he fore-saw the French reader cou'd never digest the figurative and frequent poetic expressions of the Persian style, with which this work is every where intermix'd. The truth of the history, and the most beautiful thoughts, we find wrap'd up in strain'd metaphors, which our manners and the genius of our language can't bear. This historian in that has conform'd to the way of writing of his countrymen, us'd to the boldest hyperboles and metaphors; besides that he wrote for people of the same taste and humor, and his subject was susceptible of all the most rich and beautiful ornaments of the Persian language and poetry, we may say that he hath display'd in this work all the vivacity which the Orientals affect in their expressions. But all this is so foreign to our genius, that the M. de la Croix paid a decent respect to expressions of that nature in the sacred writings, and even bore with something like them in the style of Homer; yet he would not tire the reader's patience with those flourishes of Tartarian rhetoric.

He therefore thought it best to make his version truly French, that is, rather to give the sense and thoughts of his author, than his turns and expressions, always retrenching what is not conformable to the taste of our nation: and in doing so, he hath met with the approbation of several learned men.

The Mahometan writers are oblig'd by their law to place the name of God at the beginning of all their works, to give praise to God, and after-
afterwards to bless Mahomet, whom they usually call the seal of the prophets, believing none other will come after him. M. de la Croix would not translate this form, with which the author begins his discourse, or his introduction to the history: and he has also suppress'd the eulogium which he makes on God in Persian poetry, after having first done it in prose; and another eulogium on Mahomet, to whom he gives very pompous titles. This is all too full of figures, and of a very great length. In fine, in this part of the work, which is a sort of preface of the historian, M. de la Croix has retrenched what appeared too allegorical and foreign, that he might come to the essential part of the discourse, and enter as soon as possible upon the principal subject.

These are the reasons which have engag'd our translator to follow in his version the method we have mention'd; which reasons are all taken out of his own papers. It is not to be thought that they who are fond of the literal translation of an author, would have done otherwise, if they had had a like piece to translate.

In the same papers we find some short notes as to the epochs of the Moguls. As it is necessary to the understanding of the different epochs in the life of Timur-Bec, we have inserted them here, according to the design of M. Petis de la Croix.

---

* They call this false prophet the fain of fames, the strong by way of eminence, the great apostle, the royal prophet, the legislator, &c.

* The author's preface likewise contains a figurative eulogium on Timur-Bec; which figures nothing more than that he is going to begin the history of his hero, whom he styles the conqueror of the world.
The Moguls divide their time by cycles of twelve years, to each of which years they give the name of an animal, always beginning to count and name them in the same manner, as will easily be understood by this small table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mogul years</th>
<th>Christian years</th>
<th>Mahometan years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Mouse</td>
<td>1369</td>
<td>771</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ox</td>
<td>1370</td>
<td>772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Leopard</td>
<td>1371</td>
<td>773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hare</td>
<td>1372</td>
<td>774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Crocodile</td>
<td>1373</td>
<td>775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Serpent</td>
<td>1374</td>
<td>776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Horse</td>
<td>1375</td>
<td>777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sheep</td>
<td>1376</td>
<td>778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Monkey</td>
<td>1377</td>
<td>779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hen</td>
<td>1378</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dog</td>
<td>1379</td>
<td>781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hog</td>
<td>1380</td>
<td>782</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Persians to this present time make use of this epocha, especially in their registers and public acts. Their copper-coins also bear the figure of the animal, which answers to the year they were stamp'd in. As to the origin of this epocha, call'd either Catayan, and Yugurian, or Turkish, Tartarian, and Mogul; we learn from Oulon-Beck, son of Charoe, son of Timur-Beck, a learned prince, and the greatest astrologer of his time, that the astronomers of China and Tartarstan constituted a cycle of twelve animals, as well for their years, as for their days, and parts of days, to which they gave the names specified in the table above; and he professes that he is ignorant both of the origin and constitution of this epocha. M. de la Croix refers those who are
The French editor's preface.

are desirous to look further into this matter, to Mr. John Greaves a learned Englishman, upon the most noted epochs handed down by Ouloe-Bec, printed at London in 1630.

After M. Pèreis de la Croix had finish'd the translation of this history of Timur-Bec, he had the fight of a Spaniish book printed at Sevil one hundred and thirty years before, which bears authentic testimony to some facts related by the Persian historian. This book is the relation of a journey and embassy of Ruy Gonzales de Clavijo, who was sent ambassador extraordinary to Timur-Bec by Henry III. king of Castile; of which embassy our Persian historian makes mention. This ambassador in his relation gives an account of another embassy from the same king to the same Tartar emperor, which preceded his. In the first were two ambassadors, one nam'd Payo Gomez de Sotomayor, and the other Herman Sánchez de Palancenos, both gentlemen of the king's household. They had a very handsom reception from Timur-Bec, and were at the battle where the Ottoman emperor Bajazet was taken prisoner. Timur-Bec made 'em several presents; and when he sent 'em back, he order'd a great lord of his court, nam'd Mehemet Alcagi, to accompany 'em, in quality of his ambassador to the king of Castile, giving him a letter for this prince, with abundance of rich presents. The letter contain'd compliments and marks of friendship, and gave advice of the victory lately obtain'd against Bajazet, and the cause of that war, appealing to the Castilian ambassadors as witnesses of that great action. Among the presents were two ladies of very great beauty, taken out of Bajazet's seraglio after his defeat, one of whom was daughter of count John.
The French editor's preface.

John an Hungarian prince, and niece to the king of Hungary, nam'd Dona Angelina de Grecia; and the other was a Greek nam'd Dona Maria. These ladies were resided at the court of Castile, and met with a fortune fittable to their quality: Dona Angelina married Diego Gonzales de Contreras, regidor of Segovia; and Dona Maria espous'd Payo Gomez de Soromayor, one of the ambassadors. The tomb of the former is yet to be seen in the principal chappel of St. John of Segovia; the other is inter'd in a monastery three leagues from Pontevreda.

In the mean while, the Tartar ambassador having acquitted himself of his commission, the king of Castile sent a second embassy to Timur-Reck, the chief of which was this Roy Gonzalez de Clavijo, a gentleman of his bed-chamber, author of the Spanifl book, we have mention'd, and from whom all these facts are taken. He departed from Madrid, accompany'd by two colleges and the Tartarian ambassador, the 1st of May 1407, and he return'd into Spain the 24th of March 1406. After having related his journey thro' Natolia and Persia, as far as Samarcand, he gives us the particulars of his first audience, and afterwards describes the magnificent

---

*The tale of a ix, Historia del gran Tamurian, o itineraria y narracion del viaje, y relato de la campanada que Roy Gonzalez de Clavijo le hizo por mandado del muy poderoso monarca don Henrique al rey de Castilla, &c. En Sevilla 1431.*

In English,

The history of Tamerlane the great; and a journal or narrative of a voyage, or relation of an embassy which Roy Gonzalez de Clavijo performed by command of the said prince from Henry II, king of Castile. At Leuili 1431.
seals and banquets, which Timur-Bee gave on the marriage of his children, and to which the ambassadors were invited: which is entirely conformable to what the Persian historian says upon that matter. The single point, in which the Spanish relation varies from the Persian history, is on the subject of the audience of leave. The Castilian ambassador assures us that he never had one, because Timur-Bee, as he says, died in that city about this time: when according to our author, the ambassadors of Spain and Egypt had their audience of leave, and were sent back with a great many rich presents: and after their departure Timur-Bee set out himself for Samarcand to wage war in China, and did not die till six months after in the town of Omar, beyond the Izaartes, on the road to China. If we may suspect the ambassador of a great king, of having base and self-interest views, we may here say that the Spanish lord might perhaps have his reasons for concealing from the king his master this last interview, and suppresses it in his relation. However it be, this contradiction cannot easily be reconcil'd at this distance of time.

We have promised in the former part of this preface to give a short account of the travels of M. Petis de la Croix, and of his voyages and negotiations, wherein he was employ'd by the king. We will begin with his voyage to the Levant, which he undertook, only to make a progress in the learning of that country.

M. Petis de la Croix the father, who had been secretary and interpreter to the king from the year 1650, and had worthily executed the same for forty-five years, having learnt that M. Colbert, minister and secretary of state, had a design to send into the Levant a young man
man, to gain a perfect knowledge of the language, manners, history, sciences, arts, and religion of the Orientals, recommended his own son to him; who, besides his great progress in the several languages, knew most of those things which were necessary for a person who would travel with advantage, as the mathematics, geography, astronomy, music, drawing, &c. The minister consented, and sent him, by the king's order, into Syria, Persia and Turkey. To this end he left Paris in the year 1670; and, tho' not quite sixteen years old, yet well furnished by the wise counsels and learned instructions of his father, and a good measure of piety and virtue which he had always a regard to, he embarked at Thoulon; and after a dangerous voyage landing at Alexandria, he went from thence to Aleppo, where he stayed several years. He was afterwards at Isfahan, the capital and residence of the kings of Persia, and after that at Constantinople. We may naturally suppose that he made choice of these three cities for his residence; because in them a person meets with all the helps, which can be desired to advance his studies. He there translated into French several oriental pieces, and some French books into the oriental languages. The life of the French king as far as 1673, and his campaign in 1672, which he published in Arabic, made a great noise in those countries: every one was willing to have copies of 'em, and they were dispersed thro' a great part of the east. During his stay at Aleppo, the near Dupont, French consul in that city, made use of him in carrying on the king's affairs; as did afterwards messieurs de Nointel.
and de Guilleragues, ambassadors from France to the Port.

After ten years stay in the Levant, M. Colbert contented to his return home; he arrived at Paris at the end of 1686, and gave that minister an exact account of his whole voyage, and the commissions sent to him into the Levant from court. The King himself was pleased to hear him explain some of the oriental books (of which there are great numbers in the royal library) when his majesty came to Paris to see it in 1684.

M. de la Croix, after his return, determined to apply himself more than ever to the oriental tongues, and clear the greatest difficulties in 'em: but the King's amirs call'd him another way. In 1684 he translated the treaty between France and the King of Morocco. In 1682 he was sent to Morocco with the commission of Secretary and interpreter in the royal navy, and in quality of secretary to M. de Saint-Amand, ambassador from his majesty to Moula Ismail, king of Morocco. He pronounced the ambassador's speech in Arabic before that prince; in so elegant and polite a style, that both he and his whole court declared, that he understood and spoke their language with more purity and politeness than themselves, tho' in this kingdom it is spoken but. That prince had several conversations with him in the night, on the grandeur of the king and kingdom of France, and upon history, and religion.

The two following years, messieurs du Quefne, de Touville, and d'Ambiveville, lieutenants-general of his majesty's fleets, successively beg'd of him to accompany 'em in the war against the republic of Algiers, with which generals he made
made seven voyages. He serv'd there in the
negotiation for peace in 1684, and translated the
treaty into the Turkish language, which he
read in a full Divan. He caus'd the title of
Padishah, which signifies emperor, to be inserted
in the registers of Algiers, instead of Caluj,
which signifies a petty prince, the title they had
given to the French king till that time. One
of the conditions of the treaty was, that the
republic of Algiers should send a solemn embas-
sey to beg his majesty's pardon. M. de la Croix
accompany'd this ambassador, nam'd Safar, into
France, and explained to the king the famous
harangue, wherein this ambassador, in the name
of the Divan, did in effect beg pardon. It has
been printed in many parts of Europe, and been
the subject of a medal which was struck upon it,
with this motto, Africa supplex.

In 1685 he accompany'd another envoy of
Algiers, nam'd Boudarbah, into France, and pro-
nounc'd his compliment to the king, when the
said ambassador presented his majesty with twen-
ty-five beautiful Barbary horses from the Dey
Mekemoro.

The same year he embark'd in the squadron
which the king sent twice to Tunis, under the
command of the marshal d'Etaires. These
insiders destr'd a peace, which was granted
'em. M. de la Croix translated the conditions,
and publish'd 'em in a full Divan, as he had
done before at Algiers. We obtain'd by this
treaty a reimbursement of three hundred thou-
sand livres to the king.

From Tunis the fleet was sent against Tri-
poli in Barbary, where the fear of the king's arms
had the same success as at Tunis and Algiers.
The Tripolitans sued for a peace, and ob-
tain'd
tain'd it. M. de la Croix having successfully negotiated it, he translated, read, and published the articles in the Divan of Tripoli. By this treaty we obtained a reimbursement of six hundred thousand livres. On this occasion, as on many others, he gave a proof of his fidelity. He was ever a considerable sum of money to put in the treaty, crowns of Tripoli, instead of crowns of France; which could never have been known, but would have produced the difference of more than one hundred thousand livres. The marshal d'Estrees gave an account of it to the king at his return; as the marquis de Seignelay did of a secret negotiation, carry'd on by M. de la Croix alone, with the Arabian princes of the country of Tripoli, to join their forces with the king at the first signal, if his majesty would have permitted that city to be taken.

In 1687 he negotiated a treaty at Morocco, under the duke de Mortemart, with the Alcaid Ali, chief minister for maritime affairs.

In fine, he manag'd, by the immediate orders of the ministers and secretary of state, the affairs of the ambassadors and envoys of Morocco, Constantinople, Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli, who were sent into France, and explain'd to the king their harangues, compliment, and letters, from 1680 to his death; except in some audiences, wherein his father perform'd the ordinary functions of his post in his majesty's service.

It is remarkable, that never any interpreter before M. de la Croix the son, translated the answers out of French into Arabic, Turkish, or Persian, in a style esteem'd in the Levant and Africa, and suitable to the dignity of our monarch.
narch. This he thought exceeding difficult, and always said he never could have acquired it without very great study.

In 1692, the chancellor having obtain'd for him of the king the Arabic professorship in the royal college, and at the same time the reversion of the ancient post of interpreter to the king in Arabic, Turkish, and Persian, which his father enjoy'd; he did not leave France any more, but entirely apply'd himself to the translation of oriental authors. He has left many volumes translated, the most considerable of which we shall mention in a list of his works. One of his best performances, by which he gain'd the greatest applause, is the history of the king's medals, which he had orders to translate from French into Persian, and which was presented in 1703 to the king of Persia, by the sieur Michel, envoy extraordinary from the king to that monarch, who shew'd the greatest esteem for the translation which so fine a work can merit.

M. de la Croix join'd to his knowledge of the Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and Tartar languages, that of the Ethiopian, and Armenian. The former he learnt on occasion of a long letter from the king of Ethiopia to his majesty. The king's affairs made him use his utmost efforts to learn the Armenian, in which he perfectly succeeded, but with prejudice to his health; for he died, as he was continuing to translate all the Armenian books which fell into his hands. He certainly had the greatest knowledge of this language of any man, as well of the learned part, as the vulgar.
This list of his most valuable books is as follows:

1. The oriental library of Hadji-Calil, Cadi of Constantinople, composed in Arabic in two volumes in folio, with two tables, one of the matters, and the other of the authors, which likewise make two volumes.

2. The history of all the Mahometan monarchy, by Hullem Efendi Bezarsen, a modern Turk.

3. The history of the conquest of Syria by the Arabians in the seventh century; the author, who is an Arabian, is nam'd Oualidi.

4. The history of the Arabians of Spain, from the seventh to the fourteenth century.

5. The history of Morocco, call'd Alczzas, in Arabic, from the seventh to the sixteenth century.

6. The history of Tunis, from the eleventh to the fifteenth century.

7. A description of the city of Aleppo, translated from the Arabic.

8. A treatise of the religion of the Druses, translated from the Arabic, in two volumes.

9. The geography of Babouzi an Arabian.

This piece alone may seduce several people, and even some learned men, who believe that the Turks and other Mahommedans neglect the sciences, being deceived by travellers who being ignorant of the language, could not convince with the learned men of the country, they have gone thence. This library is very different from that which the late M. Herbelin has given under the name of the oriental library, in which there is no connection as to the unpolish'd of the words and matters. This is a true body of all the arts and sciences in use among the Osmanli's.
The French editor's preface.

15. The geography of Bin Rabya an Arabian.
16. The voyage of Mr. Sidi Aly, admiral of the Ottoman fleet in the East-Indian seas, under the great Solyman; and his return by land to Constantinople; in Turkish and Tartarian.
17. An history of the animals of Demiri, in Arabic.
18. A description of the city of Constantinople, in Turkish.
19. The history of Algiers, in Turkish and French.
20. The history of Tripoli in Barbary, in Turkish.
21. An Arabic grammar, with the vulgar practice, in two volumes.
22. A French and Arabic dictionary.
23. A French and Turkish dictionary.
25. A French and Armenian dictionary; and another Armenian and French.
26. The history of Armenia, translated from Armenian into French.

We design to present the public with a journal of the voyages of the late M. Peris de la Croix, the translator of this history, to which will be joined a relation of those of M. Peris de la Croix his son, who has been six years in the Levant by the king's order, and is at present secretary and interpreter to his majesty.

We might have added to this list several other works, some of which are wholly translated, and others only in part: but it is sufficient to have mention'd the principal and most important.
THE
Author's Preface.

IN THE name of God, whose bounty and justice extend over all beings. He disposes crowns according to his pleasure, and grants victory to those whom he judges most fit to accomplish his eternal decrees: he defends and continually advances Mahometanism, for the increase of his glory: and it is certain that a fortune rain'd by his hand is immovable, and easily overcomes all the difficulties which tend to obstrue it.

Such was the fortune of the great and invincible Timur, whose history we undertake. The reader will not be surpriz'd at the heroic actions which rais'd him to the supreme dignity of emperor of Tartary, and subjected all Asia to him, from the frontiers of China to those of Greece, that is, the countries of Turkey, Tartary, Persia, India and Syria; when he shall be acquainted with the sublime qualities with which this prince was endow'd. He was a very pious and religious observer of the Mahometan law. He was so prudent, that he always govern'd the state himself, without having recourse to a prime minister; and he succeeded in all his enterprizes,
wherein he had no other end than the glory of God, the increase of religion, and the good of the people. He was exceeding liberal and courteous to every one, excepting those who refused to obey him, whom he punished with the utmost rigor. He was a great lover of justice; and none under his government ever exercised violence and tyranny unpunished. He esteem'd learning and learned men; and 'twas his constant endeavour to render the arts flourishing throughout his empire. He discover'd the greatness of his soul on so many occasions, that it would be needless to speak of it here. As to his bravery, he never committed any action unworthy the quality of his ancestors, who had been all kings or princes; and this history contains a series of incontestable proofs of it. He was fearless and courageous, equally capable of forming a great design with wisdom, and of executing it with vigor. He was very kind to his domestics; exceeding charitable to the poor and afflicted; and built a great number of hospitals, convents of dervises, and mosques. In fine, one may justly say, that nothing was wanting in this prince to render him worthy of the glory, to which God was pleased to advance him.

Timur's father was the virtuous prince Emir Tragai; and his mother the chaste and beautiful Tekine Catun, the lawful wife of the Emir Tragai. He was born in the town of Sebz, situate without the walls of the deli-

* One need not wonder to hear the author, speaking of Timur's mother, say she was the lawful wife of the Emir Tragai, the Mahomeneans being permitted by their law to have concubines, whose children are not accounted legitimate.
The author's preface.

cious city of Kesh*, capital of the old Emir's dominions, on Tuesday night the fifth of Gruban of the year of the Hegira 716, which answers to that of the Monte in the Mosul calendar, under the reign of the Sultan Cazan, king of Transoxiana and Turkellah.

This prince's birth had been predicted to Cachouli Belader, one of his ancestors, in a dream, wherein eight stars seemed to shoot out of him, and the eighth call to great a splendor, that it enlighten'd the four quarters of the world; which Toumene Can, Cachouli's tailor, interpreted, that a prince of his race should be born in the eighth generation, who should fill the world with the splendor of his virtues and conquests.

This's horizon, which was drawn at the moment of his nativity, predicted to him the crown and empire, with all manner of prosperity, and a numerous issue.

This prince, from his childhood discovered his excellent dispositions to the accomplishment of the predictions of his horizon; for as soon as he attained to the age of reason, something might be seen in all his actions, which shew'd an air of sovereignty; he would talk of nothing but thrones and crowns; his favorite diversions represented the military art, in which he dispos'd of the youth who attended him, as a prince dispos'd of his subjects, raising to the highest dignities those who appear'd most deserving, and giving to others the bare title of soldiers; he made figures of canes to represent the army of an enemy, and then attack'd 'em with
his troops, among whom he obser'd a military discipline.

When he was more advanc'd in age, and capable of applying himself to the exercises of the body, far from chusing those pleasures which most young persons fall into, as dancing and the like, which rather excite than cool the mind, he gave himself up to the science of arms. His chief diversions were riding, racing, fencing, and the like. He was likewise often at the chase, the only recreation he took after his continual fatigues.

In these noble exercises Timur pifi'd that part of his life which preceded his great and wonderful actions, that is, from his tenth year till the twenty-fifth or thereabouts; for at that age ambition having got possession of his heart, he began to despise dangers, to gain victories, and acquire the name of a great conqueror and intrepid hero. In the midst of all his glory, he had an admirable conduct over himself, and made justice the rule of all his actions; he never us'd the privilege which conquerors claim, of treating those ill whom fortune has made their slaves; except when his honor was concern'd, or he was oblig'd to it to preserve his conquests.

I. Timur was (a great and noble during the whole course of his life, the Mirzas, his children did not in the least degenerate from him; especially the great and invincible Charoe, his eldest son, and since his successor in the empire, who tho as powerful as Solomon, always made such use of his authority, as not to

---

* Meat signifies this son of a prince.
* This seems to be a mistake, for by the left chapter of the following work, it appears he was Timur's youngest son.
give the least matter of complaint to any of his subjects. This prince never addicted himself to plays and pleasures, with which he was constantly surrounded. His only employment was to take care of the affairs of state, and to render justice to his people: and if he was obliged to recreate himself for some hours, he employed his time in contemplation, and reading useful books; so that one may say he lived the most solitary life, and free from all manner of vanities, in the midst of the tumults of a court. I can't here pretend to give a detail of all the virtues of the great Charos, and of his son the invincible Ibrahim Sultan, who excelled as well in letters as in arms, and was an admirable writer: wherefore I refer the reader to the second and third parts of this work, where I have related all their great and noble actions.

To return to our history: I may venture to say it is preferable to all which have been yet written, even of the most renowned conquerors: and that for these reasons.

The first is the knowledge every one may draw from thence, as it will instruct 'em in the chronology, geography, and history of Asia, and in those virtues, which are proper for the imitation of the greatest princes. This history is like a theatre, where fortune is represented deciding the policy of men, sometimes baffling their designs at her pleasure, at other times favoring 'em; sometimes suffering her self to be governed by it, at other times destroying all the artifices it

* The second and third parts of this work, which the author speaks of, have not been translated, and I believe there are no copies of 'em in Europe.
makes use of, to avoid the dangers to which it is expos'd. In this work we see Timur laying the foundations of a monarchy, which at first appear'd chimerical in the eyes of the wisest men: yet by degrees he raises himself above his equals. Sometimes we see him in a manner seeking his fortune as a private soldier; at other times commanding armies and dethroning kings: sometimes he is oblig'd to quit his conquests, and wander about abandon'd by every one; till at length he deprives emperors of their crowns, and is settled in the empire of Asia by the conquest of Tartary, India, Persia, Arabia, Egypt, Nattola, and other kingdoms: all which part of the world became subject to his laws. And after these noble actions we see him quit terrestrial crowns for immortality, which was his principal aim, and the glorious end to which all these enterprises tended, leaving his empire in a happy and profound peace.

The second reason which may make this work deserve approbation, is the exactness with which the actions of Timur are related, a quality seldom to be met with in the histories of great princes; all his exploits being related even with the minutest circumstances. The author of Timur's life in Turkish verse tells us, that this prince would not permit him to insert some particular facts in his work, fearing they should appear fabulous in verse, and referring them (as Timur himself often said) for this present history.

The third reason why this work should be esteemed, is, that truth appears in all the facts herein related, and that not the least exaggeration has been us'd. To convince the reader of this, I need only inform him of the method.
us'd in compiling it. Timur had always Tattur and Perchan secretary to attend him, who were some of the most learned men of his empire, whom he order'd to write down all his actions and discourses, with every circumstance which might any way relate either to religion, the public, or his ministers; and all this without the least addition, either to embellish the style, or to set off the glory of any of his soldiery or generals, by lessening that of the enemy. And thus this history, as well as that in Turkish verse, has been compus'd.

Besides, as several officers and great lords of the court had caus'd some particular facts to be wrote down, of which themselves were eye-witnesses, having had a considerable share in 'em; this prince order'd all these fragments to be collected, and had the patience to range 'em in order himself, after which he caus'd 'em to be compar'd and examin'd in the following manner. A person read over one of these papers, and when he was come to some remarkable action, the witnesses verify'd the circumstances of it, relating 'em exactly as they had seen 'em. Then the emperor himself examin'd the truth of the fact; and having confronted what the witnesses said with the contents of the memoirs, he dictated to the secretary's the manner in which they should insert the facts in the body of the work, and then order'd it to be read over to him again, to see if nothing could be added or taken from it.

This reader will find by what I have said, that this history has been written with all imaginable fidelity; and that the honor of its composition ought to be ascribed to Timur himself, since he took the trouble of collecting and comparing all the parts of it. The author only gave
gave the finishing stroke, adorning it with all the elegance and beauty of the Persian language, to bring it to its utmost perfection.

What is further remarkable in this work, is the exactness with which the chronology, and the day and hour of the event, are observed; all the encampments and roads are also remarked, with the distance of one place from another.

Lastly, as the events are all linked together, and naturally follow each other; we thought it advisable to relate several facts, which preceded the time that Timur-Bec performed anything so remarkable, as to deserve the observation of the world, because we supposed it necessary to a perfect knowledge of his history.
A MAP OF
CAPCHAC,
Part of the Kingdom
of GETE, GEORGIA,
TRANSOXIANA,
MOSCOVY &c.
(1)

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC.

BOOK I.

Several events which preceded Timur-Bec's ascending the throne of Zagatai.

CHAP. I.

Of Sultan Cazan, grand Can of Zagatai; his defeat and death. Mir Cazagan, a Turkish Prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and establishes a grand Can. The war of Mir Cazagan against Malek Hussein, prince of Herat.

In the year of the Hegira 783, Sultan Cazan*, the son of Ibour Aglen, who sprang from Genghiz Can, ascended the throne of Au. Dom. 1337. He was the 25th of the successors of Zagatai Can.

* Mr. is a contraction of Emin, which among the Eastern nations signifies a chief prince or commander.

** He was the 25th of the successors of Zagatai Can.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. *ghuz Can, or his four*). But this Prince being naturally inclin’d to tyranny, carry’d his violence and injustice to in great a pitch, that the people were reduc’d to despair.

His tyranny had so far intimidated every one, that when he sent his orders to the Princes his dependents to come to any place, and particularly to the assemblies of the states, which he held, they had so little thoughts of returning with their lives, that they commonly made their wills before they went.

This general discontent was at length the cause that Mir Cazagan, who was one of the most considerable princes of his time, and of the tribe of Tabri, revolted and join’d some other princes of the country to make war on the grand Can; they rais’d troops in Saliferai, and brought a great army into the field.

The Can had no sooner receiv’d advice of their march, than he prepar’d to resist them; and when he had got thro a narrow passage nam’d Cologa, or the iron gate, the two armies met, and fought in a plain of the village call’d Derry Zenghi, in the year of the Hegira 746.

The battle was unfortunate to the confederate princes; for Mir Cazagan their leader was wounded by an arrow in his right eye, by Cazan himself; and he not only lost that eye, but was a long time wholly blind.

*The country given to Zagati Can, was Transcaucasia, the country of the Vagares, the great city of Gudiger near Tabor, the kingdom of帖沙克, and the city of Ilea, which to the opinion of learned men, was the ancient Babel.*

* A town situate on the river Gbom, that is to say Omn.*

After
After this expedition Cazan return'd to Carlchi, at which place it was so very cold this winter, that the greatest part of the cattle and horses of the army perished. Mir Cazagan, when he heard of it, left no time, but got together his best troops, and march'd to attack him even in Carlchi; and was no sooner arriv'd in the plain belonging to this city, than Cazan began the fight: the grand Can was unfortunately conquer'd, and dy'd in the field of battle, in the year of the Hegira 747; after he had reign'd in Transoxiana and Turkellian fourteen solar years.

After his death, Mir Cazagan, the chief of the confederates, dispos'd of the kingdom, and set upon the throne a prince of the race of Othai Can, son of Genghis Can, call'd Dachmendoj Aglen; but soon after he put him to death, and at last advanced to the dignity of grand Can, Heyan Couli Aglen, the son of Sorgadon son of Dava.

A city of Transoxiana, long. 35° 1' lat. 52°, whose ancient name was Nefer, and also Nechebei. The name of Carlchi was given it because of the palace which Herat built there, Carlchi in the Mogul language signifying palace. In this place was a well, wherein one might see a moon, which the country people believed to be perform'd by magic, but it was only a miner's of quicksilver, which the cunning Imad Maculla had pitch'd at the bottom of the well.

We must not confound this Cazon Can, who descend'd from Zagan, with the great Gazon Can, the son of Abecan, who sprang from Hugaron Can, the son of Tuj, son of Genghis Can, which Gazon was King of Persia, and died An. Dom. 1311, Heg. 703.

The Persians reckon by solar years as well as lunar.

Heraclius, a modern Turkish author, calls him Dachmendoj Can, the son of Rost Aglen.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. Can*, who was also of the race of Genghis Can.

This new Can render'd himself so much the more agreeable to all the people, by his justice and liberality, during the six years he reign'd, in that they had not yet forgot the tyranny of Sultan Cazan, and had great expectations from the conduct of Mir Cazagan, who had taken upon him the government of the kingdom; which he acquitted with so much prudence and equity, in remedying the public disorders, that his name deserves to be immortaliz'd in history.

The most remarkable things which happen'd in his time, are, that having brought his army into the field at * Arbenk-Seral, he came even unto the gates of Herat*. But the better to understand the reason of this expedition, it is requisite one should know, that from the death of the emperor Aboufisid*, there had not set upon the throne of the empire of Persia any absolute prince of the race of Genghis Can; and that the princes of the Turks, Moguls and Tartars, had no longer the sovereign authority in Coraffana; besides that in the country of Zagatai, at that time, Sultan Cazan, thro' the excess of his tyranny, had drawn upon him the aversion of the people, as before mention'd.

During this time Malek Hussein, firmam'd Moazeddin, the son of Malek Cayaleddin then

---

* Davs Can was the ninth successor of Zagatai, and was the son of Berse Can, who died An. Dom. 1250.
* A city of the province of Tocarestan, upon the river Ghon, long. 102. lat. 57.
* Capital city of Coraffana, long. 64. lat. 34.
* Aboufisid Can was the eighth successor of Hubacou Can, second son of Tulli the son of Genghis Can, who reign'd in Persia, and died An. Dom. 1335.
The history of Timur-Bec.

prince of Herat, whose genealogy we have gi-
ven at length in our book of preliminaries, daily
so far increas'd his authority, that he oblig'd
Cheik Hassan Youre, and the prince Massoud,
firmam'd Veggidin, king of the Serbedals, to
march from the fortres of Sebouar with forces
to attack him. He prepar'd to give him a warm
reception, insomuch that on the thirteenth
of the month Sefer, in the year 743, the two
armies met in the territory of Zare, where
they had a furious battle, in which the army of
Malek Hullein was defeated, and a great num-
ber of his soldiers kill'd. But this prince got
upon an eminence, and made a sign for the
standard to be display'd, and the drum to be
beat: at which order only three hundred horse
got together near his person. He renew'd their
courage by his speeches, and persuad'd 'em to
attack the enemies, who were busy'd in plun-
dering. They obey'd him, and Massoud, who
desery'd 'em, fell presently upon 'em; Cheik
Hassan follow'd him, but he was kill'd by an
arrow shot into his side by one of his own
men, of which he dy'd upon the spot. He was
an old captain, in whom the young prince Mass-
oud very much confided, and had order'd him
to retire, left by chance he shou'd be kill'd in
the fight; which misfortune accordingly hap-
pen'd. Massoud fled, and so the army of Malek
became victorious, after having been conquer'd;
they put all the Serbedals to the sword, and
made a total plunder of their camp. This
victory render'd Malek Hullein so proud, that

* The Serbedals were petty kings of Sebouar in Coreasana,
  who had revolted at the death of Sultan Abulazed, and had
  form'd a small kingdom.

† A Town in Coreasana between Herat and Sebouar.
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book I. tho he knew his ancestors had never enjoy'd any thing in Herat but by the particular favor and protection of the kings and priests of the race of Genghis Can, yet he a'd the part of a sovereign, and affect'd those distinctions which belong to kings, such as having the kettle-drums beat five times a day, and setting up the imperial standard upon his tent. Nay, he further shew'd his rashness; for he many times brought his troops into the field, and made inroads as far as the frontiers of Anderoon and Cheborgan.

These outrages oblige'd even his relations, who were very much discontented with him, to complain to the prince Mir Cazagan, who by his good conduct, moderation and virtue, restored the empire of Zagarai to its former splendor. The princes of Erazal and Aperdi, with whom Malek Hallein had made war, failed not to join their complaints with the others; they in a lively manner represented to Cazagan the pride of that prince: "What! said they, is the race of Genghis Can extinguish'd? is there no further notice taken of the royal majesty? This usurper of Gour does not know himself, and believes there is no one above him."

Mir Cazagan gave attention to these complaints, and enquir'd into the truth of 'em; he then spake to 'em in these terms: "Shall a private man set himself up for king, and throw off the allegiance due to emperors? We will dispute with the (word the pride of this au-

---

"Cries of Community were Earl," Long. 100. f. 10, 16 f.
""glorious"
The history of Timur-Bec.

" downloadable person; and after having ruin'd his Chap. i.
towns and fortresses, we will make a river
as big as the Gihon, with the blood of his
scoundrel soldiers."

For this purpose he sent orders into all the
provinces for the troops to cross over the river
Gihon, and march to the appointed rendezvous;
after which he went to join the grand Cun
Beyan Conil and the princes of the empire,,
at the head of whom he march'd towards Herat.

This news coming to the ears of Malek Hoffein,
he sent an Emir with three hundred
horse to know the truth of it, ordering him
to advance as far as he could for that purpose,
but to return immediately, if he found the
army of Zagatai had pass'd the river Gihon.
This Emir had no sooner cross'd over the river
Morgab, than he found that the Tartar army
had pass'd the Gihon; for which reason he
soon return'd to give notice of it to Malek,
and thus address'd himself to him: "Cazpan
the general of the Turks, is upon his arrival;
he hath brought his army from Tartary into
Perisia; the vast number of arms and the
instruments of war he has with him, have rais'd the
dust up to heaven; and the people say, when
they see the glittering of his soldiers' armour,
that he has used all his power to furnish the
empire of Tartary with iron." On this ad-

---

1 The names of the chief princes of the empire of Zagatai are, Emir Beyan Selkur, Mohammed Cun Aperdi, Selimshah, Olgiga Iron Aperdi, Abdalla lorn of Tabou, and the kings of Bedakeen.

2 The names of the Turks, Tartary, Mogula and Zagataia, are here used promiscuously.
Book I.

vice Malek having summoned his council, which consisted of the princes, the generals of the army, and the principal lords of his kingdom, made this speech: "There hath march'd from the country of the Tartars into Peria to numerous an army, that even the sun is obler'd by the dust they have rais'd; it is compos'd of men who in an assault are as firm as rocks, and when they see their enemies give way, they resemble the torrents which swiftly fall from the tops of mountains, These undaunted persons put not on their helmets, before they have resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to the honor of a victory."

Hereupon each person delivered his sentiments; and because the Tartar army was not only more numerous than that of Herat, which consisted of only fourth, second horse, with about fifteen thousand foot, but also more accustomed to war, and more dextrous at fighting a pitch'd battle, Malek Husein thought it not advisable that his army should remain in the city, nor under covert of the citadel, nor in the streets and gardens of the suburbs, lest they should discover fear. The more to surprize their enemies, it was resolv'd to bring 'em into the field, to meet the Tartars, and first engage with 'em, if possible; and that in the mean time they should build a wall to the east of the city, which should be fortify'd with large ditches from Paymore to Kedelin. Immediately every one prepar'd himself to execute these resolutions, and the arms and all things necessary for the battle were removed out of the city.

The army got ready; and Malek Husein fail'd not to harangue his soldiers, and excite them to fight like brave men, when they should be call'd to it. He told them it was not the
great number of soldiers, which render'd ar-Chap. 1:
mys victorious, but courage and conduct:
and if they were possest of those two qualities,
ye might assure themselves that their enemies
would soon find the world it-self too little for
their security.

In the mean time Mir Cazagan passed the
narrow passagge of Puchnan, and came down to
Kedastan with his army, which consisted of
valiant soldiers; and the next morning he took
horse with the Can, and the princes Oladgia
Iton, Setilmich, and others: they went near
the camp of the enemy; got upon a rising
ground, and strictly view'd the army of Ma-
lek Hullein. After that Mir Cazagan said,
"This novice understands not the rules of mi-
itary art; and the place which he hath cho-
sen to encamp in, will soon be the caufe of
the defeat of his army, for two reasons: one
is, that in the battel his men will be oblig'd
to ascend to meet us, while we shall descend:
and the other is, that when the sun shall
appear, they will have the rays in their eyes,
and will not be able to see those who come
against 'em." Mir Cazagan, and the other
lords, came down from the eminence, almost
affur'd of the victory. The next day they
rang'd their army in form of a half-moon;
and after the prince had harangu'd his soldiers,
they march'd towards the city, and at length
arriv'd in the field of battel which Malek Hul-
fein had pitch'd on. Then Mir Cazagan ascen-
cended another eminence, from whence he
openly law the two armies, and immediately
order'd his soldiers to advance towards the en-
emy.

The Tartars instantly fell upon the army of
Malek Hullein; but the attack was inflamed
vigo-
vigorously, and the fight was bloody; they cry'd out, Sela! in both the armies; that is, let no quarter be given. Every one shew'd his valor and strength, and the field was soon cover'd with blood, bucklers, helmets, and lances, mix'd with the dead, who every moment fell from their horses. At length the army of Malek Hussein, after a long and vain defence, was put to flight; and as that prince had drawn together a large quantity of water behind his camp, to hinder his men from running away, a great many perish'd in the mine; and the rest were pursu'd by the Tartars, who made a horrible slaughter of 'em.

Malek Hussein retreated with great difficulty into the city of Herat, attended only by his guards, who made themselves masters of the by-streets and gardens which join'd the city; while Mir Cazagan, flush'd with the victory he had obtain'd, return'd to his camp with the Tartar princes.

From this time the army of Herat did not once fally out of the city; and the next day Mir Cazagan approach'd it, and began to besiege it in form; his brave soldiers had skirmishes every day with the besieged; and even in the night they assaulted it on all sides by the light of fires.

The siege lasted forty days; the place was briskly attack'd, and vigorously defended; but at length Malek Hussein, weary with delaying, and considering the city as his prison, assembled the princes and lords of his council, to consult about obtaining a peace. He told 'em he did it to serve 'em; and for that reason he would go the following year to call himself with confidence at the feet of the grand Cen and Mir Cazagan, to ask pardon of them for what he had done.
The history of Timur-Bec.

All the lords approv'd his proposal; he then Chap. r.
fent presents of horses sumptuously harness'd, s
curious stuffs, and rich carpets, with a great q
quantity of silver-money, and promised, that w
when Mir Cazagan shou'd return to the place o
his residence, he wou'd not fail to go there i
person to pay him his respects, and make all t
the submission he shou'd require. His promise w
was accompany'd, according to custom, with a
solemn oath.

Mir Cazagan, who was an equitable prince, a
and of a sweet and merciful temper, grant-
ed whatever Malek Husleien desir'd, in con-
deration of the troubles and hardships the p
people suffer'd from that war; for he doubted n
but the country wou'd be entirely ruin'd if t
they continu'd the siege.

He then consented to the peace, on the con-
ditions Malek himself had offer'd, for which r
reason he took the road of Tranfoxiana, with t
the grand Can, at the head of his army, in the y
year of the Hegira 753.

From this time the affairs of Malek Husleien w
were daily upon the decline, and the esteem c
conceiv'd of his person began to diminish: this c
caus'd the captains of his army, who, for the m
most part, were of the country of Gour, to be-
come so proud and insolent, that they conspi-
ted together to depose him, and to setze Malek B
Baker, his brother, in his place.

Malek Husleien had advice of it, but he was n
not in a condition to prevent it: all he cou'd d
do, was to be upon his guard. The captains o
of Gour had resolv'd to seize him as he took h
horse; and one day as he came out of a pleasure-
house, he discover'd, when he was about to g
to get on horseback, that these men had some d
esign against him, and were in a readiness to f
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I.

fall on him; for which reason, as he perceive'd a company of jockeys, who came from the city of Baughiz, and were then employ'd in selling horses which they had brought with 'em; Malek Huflein cry'd out to the Gouris, "Children, do you see those fine horses of Baughiz? I give 'em you if you can take 'em." The greedy Gouris rush'd on 'em, and while they were busy at the pillage, Huflein fled away full speed into the fortresses of Esphidge, which his ancestors had built in the meadow of the town of Herat, between the south and west, and which was full of treasure and ammunition of all sorts.

In the year of the Hegira 772, Malek Huflein, according to promise, went from Esphidge to Trafnestia, to pay his homage and respects to Mir Cazagan and the Can: Mir Cazagan order'd him a magnificent entry; and not only gave him a favorable reception, but was also serviceable to him in regaining Herat, which the Gouris had put into the hands of his Brother, Malek Balier; the property of which he resign'd to him.

Notwithstanding the cares and troubles of Mir Cazagan, the princes of the empire form'd designs against Malek Huflein; for which reason they besought Mir Cazagan to order him to be seiz'd; but they could not obtain their desires, whatever instances they made: for which reason they resolve'd on the assassination of Malek Huflein, on condition, that after his death, none among 'em should demand vengeance for his blood.

Mir Cazagan no sooner heard of this design, than he call'd Malek Huflein, to tell him what these princes had contriv'd against him; and he advis'd him to depart that very evening for
for Herat, since he could not answer for the consequences of his stay.

Malek, having return'd his thanks to the prince for such great favours, took his leave of him; he departed as soon as night approach'd, and made such haste, that he arriv'd at Herat before any one knew of it, which he enter'd with his troops without resistance. He got possession of the throne in the citadel, and at the same time sent guards to seize on Malek Baker, and to put him in prison.

During these transactions, Mirza Abdalla, son of Mir Cazagan, departed from Samarcand with a great army for the conquest of Carizmā, of which he made himself master.

In the mean while Mir Cazagan, who commonly had his winter-quarters in the camp of Saliferali, pass'd the spring at Caranver, because that country was agreeable, and very full of flowers at that season; and in the summer and autumn he dwelt in the city of Mounce, situate in a country proper for hunting, which was an exercise this prince delighted in.

One day he took horse to follow this diversion, and parted unarmed from Saliferali, attended by fifteen persons only, not fearing any surprize; he cross'd the Gilbon, with a design to hunt in the country of Archen; and while he was at the chase, he was surpriz'd by Cotnie Timur, his son-in-law, the son of Boulourdai, of the tribe of Ournat, who had resolv'd to revenge himself of this prince for an affront he

* A kingdom situate on the shore of the Caspian sea, near the mouth of the Gilbon, whose capital was Cercangie, other wise call'd Jurjana.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I, had receiv'd from him. He fell upon him with a company of robbers, who immediately wounded him with an arrow; and at length these villains assassinated this great prince, so famous for his virtue and justice. Some officers of Mir Cazagan pursued the assassins with so much speed, that they overtook Ghiath Timur near Candalz; they shew'd the affection they bore their master; for they bath'd their swords in the assassins blood. After this revenge, they carry'd the body of Mir Cazagan to Sallerai, where they bury'd him in the year of the Hegira 719.

CHAP. II.

Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the son of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Zaganat.

After the unfortunate death of Mir Cazagan, his son, the Mirza Abdalla, succeeded him; for which reason he departed from Samarcand, and came to Sallerai, where all the princes unanimously paid him that homage which declar'd a perfect obedience.

As soon as he had the sovereign authority in his hands, he confirm'd Bejan Couli upon the throne of the Cans, with the same authority as before. But having, during the life of Mir Cazagan, his father, dwelt some time at

* A city of Tocharistan near Kalm, long. 52° 32', lat. 37°.
Samarcan, he was so taken with the pleasures of that country, that he could not keep from it: for which reason he would make it the capital of his kingdom, and the place of his residence; and accordingly he return’d to Samarcan with the grand Can, Beyan Couli.

The Emir Coutcou, the other prince, and the lords of his father’s court, merely from their affection to him, represented, that it was little policy thus to abandon Saliferal, the ancient and ordinary residence of the Cans; but all their advice had no effect upon the mind of Abdalla: the poet says, He who would hear the counsel of his friends, will one day bite his fingers in token of repentance.

The same year this young prince became in love with the empress, wife of the grand Can; and his passion carry’d him so far, that he got the Can assassinated in the city of Samarcan; he afterwards plac’d upon the throne Timur Chah Aglen, son of Bisun Timur Can; then he order’d the body of Beyan Couli to be carri’d to Bocara, where he was bury’d near the venerable doctor Churil Selшеддин Bairely, to the great regret of all the People.

The death of the grand Can was unfortunate to Abdalla: for the prince Beyan Sel上海市 rais’d an army to revenge it, with which he departed from the fortresses of Chadumon for Samarcan: when he was arriv’d on the frontiers of Koch; the prince Hadgi Berlas *, who was prince Timur’s uncle, join’d him with all his troops: and they came in a body to attack Abdalla, who after having defended himself

---

* The son of Houliak, son of Nemoula, son of Houmeyn, son of Casmian Nevan.
The history of Timur-Bek

Book I. Some time was routed, and fled; and they put his brothers to death, as also Timur Chah Aqien, whom he had rais'd to the dignity of grand Cen of Zagatai.

Thus Mirza Abdalla was soon punish'd for his crime, and oblig'd to abandon the country; he crost the river Gilon, took the road above Bacalan, and went to Anderab, a city of the little kingdom of Bedakhan, where he spent the remainder of his days.

All the friends of the late prince, Mir Cazagan, were dispers'd; and the princes Beyan Selduz and Hadgi Berlas, who at that time had great reputation and authority, made themselves masters of the country, and took upon them the government.

The prince Beyan Selduz was of a good-natured pleasant disposition, and never inclin'd to mischief; but he extremely lov'd wine, and scarce pass'd eight days without some debauch of that kind, which caus'd great confusion in his kingdom; for each prince attempted to make himself sovereign, and even those who would otherwise never have had such a design, seeing the empire, in a manner, without a chief, thought themselves oblig'd, for their own safety, to do as others did.

The city of Kech, with its dependencies, remain'd in the possession of the princes Timur and Hadgi Berlas, as it had always belong'd to their ancestors, till the time of Caratchar Nevian; no one having made any opposition to it; the country of Cogende was poss'd by prince Bajazet Gelair; and Mir Hufleim, the son of Mufella, son of Mir Cazagan, made himself master of Cabul, and several other lordships, and maintain'd himself as long as he was able in the dignity of his grandfather, with the
the officers of his court: Oladgía Bogái Sel-
duz with his party, made him self sovereign of
Bale; and Mehemed Coja Aperdi, prince of
the tribe of the Naimans, took possession of Che-
burun; the kings of Bedakhan had fortify'd
themselves in their mountains, that they might
be independent; and Kei Cofru, and Oladgía
Irou Aperdi, made themselves masters of Car-
lan and Arhenk; and Keder Jefouri, prince of
the tribes of Serpol and Tacun, caus'd him self
to be declar'd king thro his own power.

All these princes, who were at enmity with
one another, were continually at war; some
of 'em were vain in battle, and among the rest
Mehemed Coja Aperdi, in the following manner.

Prince Setilmich, lord of Couheftan, fatigu'd
with the war he had carry'd on against Malek
Hussein, prince of Herat, which we have al-
ready mention'd, had join'd himself with Me-
hemed Coja after his return from Transoxians,
and contracted a strong friendship with him.

They took up a resolution vigorously to attack
Hussein, and for that end rais'd an army, with
which they went to assault Herat; Hussein also
brought his army into the field to withstand em.

Mehemed and Setilmich, having a great opin-
on of their own valour, swore they wou'd not turn
back before they had cut off Hussein's head.

Malek Hussein cross'd the river Morgab, and
the two armies met on the plain of Yapaghau;
as soon as the two princes, animated by the
fight of their enemy, had put themselves in a
condition to execute their resolutions, they
went from the army, and advanced full speed
with sword in hand against Malek; but, thro'
a fatal destiny, they were shot by two arrows
from the army of the enemy; so that they fell
from their horses, and espir'd that very hour.
This accident put the army of the princes in confusion; and notwithstanding it was so numerous and formidable, it fled, and left the field of battle to the conquerors.

All these disorders, and the wars of the princes of the empire of Zagatai, serv'd to augment the misery of the country; tumult and sedition spread themselves every where; and nothing was heard and seen among the people but groans and marks of despair.

CHAP. III.

Toglus Timur Can*, king of the Getes, marches into Transoxiana. The flight of Hadji Berlas.

As the country of Transoxiana was in confusion, and almost entirely ruin'd, Toglus Timur, king of Gete, the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can, who descended from Zagatai Can, to whom the crown of this country belonged, had a design to make himself master of it; and after having call'd his officers and courtiers to him, he rais'd an army, and in the month of March, in the year of the Hegira 761, march'd to the conquest of Transoxiana. It is remarkable, that in the space of thirty three years, from the death of Turmeschirin Can, there reign'd eight Cans in the empire of Zagatai.

* The 29th successor to the crown of Zagatai: he was the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can; he dy'd in 1372.

† The 16th successor of Zagatai Can; he dy'd in 1356.
The history of Timur-Bec.

As soon as Toghue Timur arriv'd at the fountain Chanak Boulak, near the Sihon*, in the fields of Tachhun, formerly call'd Alchâfich, he sent Ome Tocatmûr, prince of the hord* of Kerait, Hadji Béi of the hord of Arencht, and Biskdgeh of the hord of Cangouli, for his scouts. These three princes us'd all possible diligence; and when they had crost'd the Sihon at Co-gende, Bayazid Gelair, a very prudent prince, thinking it would be for his advantage to keep a correspondence with 'em, join'd his troops with theirs, and march'd towards the city of Sebz.

Prince Hadji Berlas, uncle of Timur, rais'd as many troops as he was able in the city of Kech and Carshâ, and other neighbouring provinces, to withstand 'em; but he at last chang'd his resolution, and before the two armies met, march'd to Corassana.

---

CHAP. IV.

The rise of Mir Hussein, grandson of Mir Ca-
zagan: he is assist'd by Timur-Bec.

Policy is preferable to valor; but when these two virtues are united in a general, they never fail to form a great man.

Good counsel defeats armies; with the arms of policy, a single man may destroy a hundred; and an arrow well aim'd, never fails to find a place in the heart of the enemy.

* Otherwise, the Jastiere, which separates Transoxiana from the country of Gee.

* These are the ancient Mogul hordes, mention'd in the history of Gough's Cape.
This is plainly to be seen in the affair we are going to relate: for when the prince Hadgi Berlas, on advice of the march of the troops of Geth, had abandon'd his own country, and all his effects, to retire into Corsaliana, and had cross'd the river Gihon; Timur-Bec, his nephew, who was a prince of a discerning spirit, well knew, that if he kept a long time from action, his country and principality would not fail of being ravag'd and destroy'd, since his father Tragai dy'd the same year, and his uncle Hadgi Berlas was fled: he believ'd there was no other prince than himself who cou'd put a stop to the ruin or inflict a foreign army was about to bring on his country; he had to do with a mighty enemy, who had already brought the empire into great danger; he saw the evil which was about to fall on his people, and that the storm was approaching. This young prince, who had scarce arriv'd at his 25th year, and by consequence had not yet obtain'd sufficient experience, fail'd not to undertake an affair so full of difficulties; he repair'd to the banks of the Gihon, and gave his advice to prince Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, concerning the great dangers a country is expos'd to in the absence of a prince, and the violence the enemy's were about to offer his people if he did not prevent 'em. " As a kingdom without a leader, says he, resembles a body without a soul, I think it proper, since you design to go into Corsaliana, that I should return to Kech; and after I have given fresh encouragment to the inhabitants of that country, I shou'd go thence to throw my-self as the feet of the grand Can, and offer him my service: I will gain acquaintance with the princes and lords of his court, and lastly endeavor, by all ways imaginable, to divert the
The history of Timur-Bec.

"the tempest that threatens our country: by which means I will save from inevitable ruin the poor people whom God hath put under our care; an account of which he will one day require of us."

Hadgi Berlas was persuaded, that Timur in these discourses was inspired from heaven; wherefore he approv'd his advice, and this young prince departed. When he was arriv'd at Cuzar, he met Hadgi Mahmud Chah Yefouri, who was order'd to conduct the scout of the army of Gete, and in hopes of a large booty had made great haste, having a design to spare nothing. He behav'd himself so handomely towards this general, that he promis'd to commit no hostility against him before he had had a conference with the princes, and made a truce with 'em: the soldiers, notwithstanding the desire they had to commit disorders, stay'd at this place. Timur-Bec departed for Kech, where he found the three princes of Gete already arriv'd; he had a conference with 'em after a handom reception. They gav'e the pleasure they had in his submitting to the grand Can of Gete, and gave him the command of ten thousand men, who were formerly under prince Carstchar Nevian, his grandfather's great grandfather; as likewise the principality of Kech, with all its dependences. Thus, by the good conduct of this prince, the torrent of misfortunes, which were about to over-run this country, was stopp'd, and the people again enjoy'd peace, of which they had utterly despair'd; for which reason, it was said, that at the sight of him alone, sorrow was chang'd into joy, and mortality into immortality. Those who had the least insight into things, imagin'd that this good success, how small soever, would be of confe-
The history of Timur-Bec:

Book 1. Conquest to Timur-Bec; but they did not foresee that this was nothing in comparison of the vast grandeur which he must attain to.

Timur-Bec, after this conference with the princes of Gete, took his leave of 'em, and applied himself in a particular manner to the care of his country: he gave orders for troops to be raised between the country of Sebz and the river Gihon, and got together a good army, with which he marched to join Kefer Yefourri. In the mean time there arose a dissension between the princes of Gete, for which reason they caused all their troops to march out of this country to attend Toglug Timur Can; and at that time Bayazid Gelair joined our prince with all his friends.

CHAP. V.

Several intrigues between Timur and Haji Berlas; as also between the other princes.

The Emir Hullein, grandson of Mir Cazagan, at that time departed from Cabul, with intention to make war on Beyan Selduz; for which reason he sent an ambassador to Timur-Bec, Bayazid, and Kefer Yefourri, to beg their assistance, whilst he raised an army. Our princes held a council, wherein it was resolved, that Timur-Bec and Kefer should go in person to assist the Emir Hullein, and that Bayazid should repair to Toglug Timur Can, to remove all occasions of blaming 'em from the princes of the court of Gete, and to be present and able to answer the objections made against the assistance given to Hullein.

Bayazid
Bayazid immediately departed to execute this design: but when he learnt at his arrival at Cogende that Toglane Timur Can was return'd with his army, he waited till his men were join'd on the bank of the Sihon; after which he chang'd his resolution, and went no farther. On the other hand, the prince Timur-Bec and Kefer march'd with their troops in order of battle: for the soldiers were so well instructed in the military art, that they never broke their ranks either upon their march or during action.

When they had pass'd the iron gate, which we have already mention'd, they join'd the Emir Hussein, and march'd with him towards the fortress of Chahman, where Beven Selinuz was: but this prince, who did not think himself in a condition to refit 'em, resolv'd to retire to Bedakehan, whither they pursu'd him; so that Chah Behadin, who was king of that country, was also oblig'd to fly, and to abandon that city, which caus'd the whole country to fall into the hands of the Emir Hussein, who there made laws at his pleasure, and sett'd himself of the government of it: after which he put to death Kei Conud, brother of Kei Cofru, prince of Catlan. When the Emir Hussein, contented with what had been done, by the assistance of Timur-Bec and Kefer Yefouri, saw himself in possession of the greatest honors, he thank'd 'em; and they immediately departed for their own country. And as it was requisite, to arrive at that of the Emir Kefer, for 'em to pass over the territory of Timur-Bec, this prince, who was generous, and lov'd to appear magnificent, fail'd not to give him a good reception on this occasion; for when the Emir was arriv'd at Kechem, on the frontiers of Bedakehan, Timur went before him with so much haste, that in four days and
and four nights he arriv’d at the city of Sebz, fifteen days journey on horseback from thence; and at nine in the morning at Olue Moidan, a pleasure-house belonging to Kech, where he generally pass’d the summer, He presently gave orders for a magnificent feast; and when Kefer was near the place, Timur-Bec went to meet him, and receiv’d him with all the respect due to his birth and quality. The most delicious meats, the most excellent liquors, and the choicest fruits and perfumes, were at this banquet. The guests were no less pleas’d with the ball which follow’d, and the comforts of musick with which they were entertain’d.

After the feast prince Kefer departed for his own country, and the noble Timur stay’d in his usual place of residence. His clemency extended equally to the poor as well as the rich; all the country felt the effects of his justice; the people enjoy’d a constant pleasure under his happy government; and the state became more flourishing than it had ever been.

Soon after, Togluc Selduz committed several acts of hostility against Mir Hufflein, who having been formerly protected by Timur-Bec, sent an express to let him know that prince Togluc had violated the peace; he also sent the like advice to Bayazid and Kefer Yefauri. Timur, according to his wonted generosity, caus’d troops to be levy’d, to assist Mir Hufflein a second time: he march’d at their head; and having met Emir Kefer at the iron gate, who came to join his troops with him, they went together to the Emir Hufflein, who was at Hilfar, otherwise call’d the fortress of Chaduman.

The enemy no sooner had advice of their approach than he fled. The Emir Hufflein, who was thus deliver’d from him without drawing a sword, fall’d
fail'd not to go and meet his protectors: he ac-
knowledg'd his obligations; and having magni-
ficently treated 'em, he waited on each of 'em
back.

When Timur had pass'd the iron gate, he
learned, that Hadji Berlas, his uncle, who,
whilst the troops of Gero came to attack his
country, was retir'd into Corassana, was now
upon his return to Kech; that he had had a
conference with Mir Bayazid; that they had both
resolved to join their troops to make war
on prince Kefer Yeouiri; and that Hadji Berlas
had already began to put the army in order
which he was to command. This news be-
ing soon confirm'd, Timur pass'd with his troops
by the frontiers of the province of Kech, and
join'd prince Kefer, with whom he departed for
the city of Kech.

Hadji Berlas no sooner had advice of their
march, than he put himself in a posture of de-
fence; and when he was near Kech, the two
armies came in view at a place call'd Akhar.
They gave the signal for battle by the sound of
kettle-drums, and presently there were heard
on all sides the cries of soldiers who were encou-
rage'd to smite their enemies: there was so great
a dust, that one cou'd not see a person at four
paces distance; yet the soldiers of both armies
did not mix together: blood flow'd from all
sides, and every one gave the best proofs of his
valor. The fight was so bloody, that the au-
thors, who have mention'd the battles of Rout-
tem and Estendir, have describ'd them less ter-
rible than these. At length the victory fell on
the side of the brave Timur, by the death of
the principal officers of the army of Berlas,
who was oblig'd to fly to Samarcand to join
Mir Bayazid.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. — Timur, with the army of Sebz, and Kefer with his, resolv'd to pursue him as far as Samarcand; but fate had otherwise order'd it: all the troops of Kefer, I know not by what motive, abandon'd Timur in the midst of his march, and came over to Hadgi Berlas, in whom that there remain'd with Timur only prince Yakou.*

This defection of the troops of Kefer had so lod an effect on the mind of Kefer Yelouri, that he began to grow jealous of Timur; and had so bad an opinion of him, that he could not forbear giving marks of it both by his words and actions; for this reason Timur at length quitted him, and return'd to his own country with prince Yakou, who was willing to accompany him.

Hadgi Berlas gave Timur a friendly reception, and conducted him to Mir Bayazid; they shew'd abundance of joy at his return, and in appearance entertain'd him as handsomely as he could expect.

Timur the more resented this action of Kefer, in that he had always behav'd himself in a friendly manner towards him, and had never omitted shewing marks of his sincerity and perfect friendship; he was so sensible of the affront, that he thought himself oblig'd in honor to relent the injustice done him, for which cause he willingly consented to the rebellion that Mir Bayazid and Hadgi Berlas had taken to make war on Kefer; whereupon they got together an army, and march'd towards his country. Timur, animated

* Timur-Bec is sometimes call'd Timur only, because Timur is his name; Bec being a title that signifies lord of a province.

* The son of Moharek, son of Dogan, son of Guden, son of Grastiche Kervan.

by
by his desire of revenging himself on Keler, march'd at the head of the vanguard. After having past the mountain of Keel, they met the enemy's army in a place nam'd Surmael. Keler then reflect'd, but too late, on the fault he had committed: he thought repentance would be useless, and thereupon gaining fresh vigor, he with great difficulty ranged his army in order for battle: the soldiers mix'd together with frightful cries, and the field of battle was in a moment red with their blood. Prince Keler, after a long and vain resistance, was oblig'd to yield to the valor of the enemy, and fly.

This victory secour'd prince Bayazid in the throne, and put Hadgi Berlas in possession of his own country; but the unlucky fate of Bayazid did not permit him to foresee in what manner he ought to behave himself, to preserve his good fortune: the next day he had an intrigue with Hadgi Berlas to the disadvantage of Timur: this prince, from his foresight, discover'd it in the council, and being then persuaded, that he did not act sincerely with him, pretended that his nose bled, and went out, and as soon as he got home, took his quiver and other arms, mounted his horse and went into the field, confiding in the assistance of heaven, which had never abandoned him; and so he saw himself from the snare prepar'd for him.

As soon as Hadgi Berlas knew of the departure of Timur, he sent after him to let him know, that he had just receiv'd advice that Abdala the son of Taibou, and Zende Hacham son of Mehemed Aperdi, had rais'd troops to make war on them: for which reason he desir'd him not to pass the River, but to get together the troops of the defart, that for his part he would fend
send forces under the conduct of prince Chougam, to oppose them, and to hinder the sad accidents that might happen. As soon as Timur was advis'd of what was past, he assembled the troops of the desert, and without waiting the arrival of Chougam, he march'd back, and Mir Bayazid departed at the same time from Kech to return to Cogende. Timur was no sooner arriv'd near Termel, than doctor Ali Gurgori, leaving the study of the sciences, took on him a command in the army; he came to meet this prince with his troops to give him battle in a place named Encar. The meeting and defeat of the warlike doctor were the same thing to Timur, since he routed him at the first charge; and pursuing him as far as the old city of Termel, he dispers'd his troops, did what he thought fit in the country, and even encamp'd in that city.

**CHAP. VI.**

The king of the Gefts returns to Transoxiana with a great army. The death of Hodge Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the possession of his country of Kech, and of a Toman of ten thousand men.

The ambition of governing in Transoxiana was rekindled in the mind of Toglug Timur Can, which caus'd his bringing into the field a great army, with which he fell upon that kingdom. As soon as he was arriv'd at Cogende, Mir Bayazid, who was prince of that place, paid him his respects according to custom. Beyan Selduz went to meet this Can with abundance
d ance of ceremony as far as Samarcand; and Chap.
Hadgi Berlas, far from opposing him as he had before done, trusted in providence, and went likewise to meet him.

During these transactions, the Can seiz'd on Mir Bayazid, and put him to death, which made Hadgi Berlas afraid left he shou'd be serv'd so too; he therefore fled into his coun-
try of Kech, whence he brought some troops,
with which he cross'd over the river Gihon:
they were over taken by the regiment of Cachmir
belonging to the army of Gete, who follow'd
their track. The Cachmirians immediately atta-
ack'd 'em, and there was a bloody battel, in
which Chougam Berlas was kill'd. Hadgi Be-
rlas seiz'd into Coraffana; when being at one of
the villages of Jouvin named Corache, which
is dependent of Sebzur, he was surpriz'd by a
company of robbers, who assassinated him and
his brother Idekou. Coraffana was soon after
conquer'd by the army of Gete; and one may
truly say, that Timur was wholly reveng'd by
the hands of the Getes for all the unjust and
traiterous actions of the princes of that coun-
try: for after he had slain the assassins of his
uncle, he join'd by the Can's permission the vil-
lage of Corache to the hereditary countrys of
Hadgi Berlas; the soil of which is fruitful thro'
the industry of the people.

There was at that time at the court of Gete
a prince whose name was Mir Hamid, of the
tribe of Kurinkur, who highly distinguished him-
sell among the other lords of the court by his
fine genius, prudence, and policy, which ob-
tained him the favor of the grand Can; inso-
much that whatever he propos'd was approv'd
of, and he was never refus'd any thing he reques-
ted. As he was a friend to Timur, he laid hold
on
on every opportunity to represent to the Can the good qualities and extraordinary valor of that prince, in so enticing a manner, that the Can took pleasure in hearing him: he begg'd of him the countries which belong'd to Timur by right of succession; the Can granted 'em, and at the same time sent an express to our prince to come before him: he gave him the handsomest reception imaginable, and confirm'd him in the sovereignty of all the province of Kech, and of a Truman, which descended to him by the death of Hadji Berfas, with all its dependencies.

In the winter of this year the Can resolv'd to make war on Mir Hufein, and he brought an army into the field for that purpose; Mir Hufein also rais'd troops, and march'd as far as the river Vakech, where he encamp'd to wait the army of the Can, which arriv'd there after having pass'd the iron gate of Coluga.

When the two armies came in view, they were rang'd in order of battle. Kei Coofu, prince of Catlan, whose brother, Kei Kobad, Mir Hufein had put to death, abandon'd with his troops Mir Hufein, and came over to the army of Gene. This defection obliged Mir Hufein to fly; the victorious Can pursu'd him, cross'd the Gillion, and came as far as Condox. His troops plunder'd all the people of that country even to the mountain of Hendoukech, and the army encamp'd the following spring and summer in those parts.

At the beginning of autumn the Can return'd to Samarcand, and in his way put to death the prince Beyan Soldoz and others, who he suspected were inclin'd to revolt from him: at the same time he behav'd himself obligingly to those who, as he was afflu'd, remain'd him in
The history of Timur-Bec.

in his interest: and having made the empire of Chap.
Tranfozians submit to his authority, and con-
strain’d all the princes, some by his sweet tem-
per, others by force, to take an oath of fide-
licity to him; he gave the government of the
conquer’d countries to his own son Elias Coja
Aglen, and order’d several lords and captains of
his court to attend on the person of the prince
under the command of Bishidegh. Prince Ti-
mur had in charge the principal administration
of affairs of state under that prince, because of
his wisdom. At length the Can departed for
the place of his ordinary residence.

C H A P. VII.

Timur-Bec marches in search of Emir Husein.

We always find that adversity succeeds
prosperity; Joseph did not arrive to the
highest pitch of grandeur, till he had suffer’d the
utmost disgrace: the same happen’d in a manner
to prince Timur; for after Togluic Timur Can
had departed from Tranfozians to return to
Gete, Bishidegh, to whom he had given the su-
periority over all the lords of Gete, of whom
confirmed the court of his son Elias, was not
obedient to the orders of the Can; for besides
his not rendring justice to others, he was even
so insolent as to commit acts of hostility against
the Can himself. Timur, who foresaw the
great disorders this contempt of the Can’s com-
mands would cause in the kingdom, thought
it not advisable to stay there, and therefore
went to seek Mir Husein; he underwent many
difficultys to join this prince, who he knew
was
was in the desarts, because they had receiv'd no intelligence of him: but at last he met him in the desarts of Kivae, near the well of Sagbedg.

These two malecontent princes went to find out Tekil governor of Kivae, but he had a villanous design to seize 'em; his malice was discover'd, and they parted from him, accompany'd by no more than sixty men, and went towards Layab. Tekil purfus'd them with a thousand horse well arm'd, and overtook them: they immediately prepar'd themselves to give him battle, notwithstanding their small number: the fight was bloody, and it was carry'd on with an admirable intrepidity and prudence. Tagi Bouga Berlas, and Seifeddin distinguished themselves among the rest; tho' their horses were kill'd, they fail'd not to fight on foot in the hand, as did Eltehi Behador, who had his horse shot under him, yet nevertheless fought with extreme valor, with his bow in his hand. Timur, who was willing to partake of the glory, and had a particular regard to the safety of so great a man, snatch'd the bow out of his hand, and broke the string, left his intrepidity thou'd cause his death. They fought with so much vigor, that there remain'd only fifty horse of the thousand which Tekil had brought into the field, who were not kill'd or wounded; and of the sixty whom our princes had with 'em, there remain'd but seven. Hulfein, if one may so say, collected all his strength into his arm, and rush'd full speed upon Tekil; he split in two the enemy's standard, and struck terror into the most courageous. In the mean time Tekil's men surrounded Hulfein, and had slain him, if Timur with sword in hand had not made his way thro' the midst of 'em, and dif-
pers'd 'em, to facilitate the means for Mir Huf- 
fein to disengage himself. They presently ra-
ly'd, and return'd to the charge; Huflein's horse 
being wounded with an arrow, fell under him; 
and this Prince had continu'd fighting on foot, 
if the prince's Dilchadaga his wife had not got 
of her horse to give it him. Timur, whose 
valor and good fortune had never let him miss 
an opportunity of acquiring glory, turn'd about 
in the perilous condition he found himself in, 
and with an invincible courage rais'd into the 
midst of the enemy's troops, with his sword in 
one hand, and his bow in the other. He 
aim'd an arrow so successfully, that he shot 
Tekil the general of this unfortunate army in 
the face; who fell from his horse, and Timur 
with a half-pike, which he took from off the 
ground, gave him so violent a blow, that he 
join'd his body to the earth. And thus ended 
the battle with the ambition of the perfidious 
Tekil.

Timur made Huflein mount his horse; they 
re-entered the desert, tho' they had but seven sol-
diers, and at last were abandon'd by three of 
this small number, who were of Coraisana. 
Timur was not more surpriz'd at this misfor-
tune than at any other; for this prince had as 
much resolution in adversity, as he had moder-
ation in prosperity: he comforted the compa-
nions of his troubles, and encourag'd 'em by his 
discourses. At last it was resolv'd, they should 
separate, that they might not be known in 
the desert; he went before with the prince's 
Turquey Aga, his wife, the sister of Huf-
fein, accompany'd only by one faithful ser-
vant. He pass'd the desert, and arriv'd at 
Jourfei, where he met a herd of Turcomans; 
these brash men gave the alarm to their com-
panions,
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book I. - PANIONS, and they surrounded him. Timur hid his princely in a fort of pit, recommended himself to God, and then march’d towards ’em sword in hand; but a Turcoman nam’d Hadgi Mehemed knew him, and prevented their attacking him: the Turcomans made him satisfaction, and endeavour’d by their services, and an entertainment which lasted all night, to make reparation for the want of respect which they had shown to his person. The next day prince Timur gave ’em marks of his liberality, presenting ’em with a ruby of great price, and two embroider’d fults of armor cover’d with pearls of inestimable value. Hadgi Mehemed made choice of three horses, which he presented to Timur, with all things necessary for his journey; and gave him a servant nam’d Sareg Coulangi to serve him as a guide: in this condition he went to join Emir Hulsein, who had taken another road; and after their meeting they came to a place call’d Mahimondi, and got off their horses near a well in the desert, where they staid about twelve days.

In the mean while, Ali Bei the son of Argon-chah had advice of their arrival at Mahimondi; his ill fortune prompted him to march against them with sixty arm’d horse: our princes were surpriz’d, and led to Macan, where Ali Bei for their prison order’d ’em a dark chamber, the furniture of which was very mean; and it was so very nasty, that there was no living there.

Mehemed the brother of Ali Bei, having advice of the injurious manner in which his brother treated these lords, foreflew that this affair would one day be of ill consequence to him; he therefore sent from the frontiers of Tous presents to Timur and Mr. Hulsein; and wrote to his
his brother in terms which reproach’d his in-
difference, and expressly advis’d him to give
the princes their liberty, and to ask pardon
of ’em for the ill treatment he had us’d to-
wards ’em, and to comfort them as much as
possible. But the malice of Ali Beı would not
let him take this advice. He feiz’d on his
brother’s presents, and did not free them from
their prison till the end of sixty two days: and he was
of so ungenerous a temper, that when he grant-
ed them their liberty, he gave them but one
poor lean horse, and an old camel. They were
in this distress, when Mobarcheal prince of
Sandger, and a friend to Timur, had advice of
their misfortune; he went to seek them with
his children, and having testify’d his sorrow for
their affliction, presented Timur with several
fine horses, and gave him all the assistance he
was able. Timur receiv’d them with joy, and,
according to his wonted generosity, gave the
horses to Mir Husein.

Then these two princes consulted what they
should do in their present condition: and
they came to a resolution that Mir Husein
should go to Hirmen, a place proper to pass
the winter in, and that Timur should return
into his own country, that he might be able at
length to rejoin Mir Husein at Hirmen, with
Toumen, prince of the tribe of Mikonzeri.

They departed according to this resolution;
the Emir Husein towards Hirmen, and Timur
towards Kech. After he had cross’d the river,
and arrived at Bocar-Zendon, a village of Boise-
ra, he there left the princess Olagiai, Turcan
one of his wives, because his affairs oblig’d
him to that precaution, that he might not be
discover’d in his journey: he departed secretly,
and pass’d without being discover’d thro’ his
own country of Kech. In the mean while Temouke Coutechin knew of his arrival; and came to meet him with about fifteen men. Timur order'd him to follow him, and they went to the mountain Guzar, which they pass'd over next morning; and in the evening arriv'd at Acomo, where they cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd the desert: but because the weather was exceeding hot, they were oblig'd to stay a whole month on the bank of the river, under the shade of a little wood, during which time the litter of the princess Turcan, which was departed from Bogar-Zendan, and mov'd but slowly, arriv'd there. And perceiving at some distance a dust rais'd by a great number of horsemen, they thought it convenient to cross the river; Timur went on horseback into the water, whilst the horse that carry'd the princess's litter follow'd him; this oblig'd all the company to do the same, notwithstanding the rapidity of this great river, which they all safely cross'd. From thence they enter'd into the desert, where they stay'd some days, during which time Timur learnt that the people were gone out of their Ilak, that is, a place proper to pass the summer in: And this news made him desirous to go thither, and enjoy the cool season; he repair'd either with his company, and having pass'd a month there, they march'd towards Samarcand. Timur went down to the princess Coute Turcan, his eldest sister, and stay'd with her forty-eight days; but as soon as he learnt that the people knew him, he took horse and went to the meadow of

*By the word litter is to be understood a four-corner'd niche, adorn'd with brocade within, and cover'd on the outside with red Indian linen, in which the ladies in the Levant are carry'd. This niche is convey'd by a horse, camel, or mule.*

Kech,
The history of Timur-Bee.

Kech, where he lodg'd in a village call'd Achi-Chap. 8.
ghil forty eight days longer; after this he de-
parted along the banks of the Gihon, where he
met Timur Coja Aglen, and Behram Gelair,
with whom he went to Cindahar, as he had
promis'd Mir Huslein. God favor'd their de-
sign; for when they were arriv'd at Hirmen,
which was the place of rendezvous, they found
Mir Huslein with Toumen; and here Behram
Gelair parted from them, and fled into India.

CHAP. VIII

Several warlike exploits of Timur and
Hussein.

About this time the prince of Siflan was en-
gaged in war; but being too weak to
defend himself against his enemy, he was oblig'd
to beg assistance of our princes, to whom he
made known the danger he was in. Upon this
they march'd to join him with a thousand good
soldiers well equipp'd: the prince went to re-
ceive them with great ceremony, and promis'd
that if thro' their assistance he shou'd be de-
liver'd from his enemy, and regain his former
prosperity, he wou'd in return present them
with a great many precious stones, and ac-
knowledg the obligation as long as he liv'd.
These princes forthwith march'd against his en-
emy, attack'd and defeated him; but the prince
of Siflan not being in a condition to perform
his promises, only return'd them thanks for what
they had done. When our princes were departed
from Siflan, they met a great company of Segh-
ziens,
The history of Timur-Besn.

Book I.

zians, who waited their coming, with design to fight them. The arrows and darts flew from both sides, and particularly from Timur's, who being got into the midst of his enemies, let fly his arrows against them, and also rushed with sword in hand upon the most valiant men, several of whom he slew outright; his war-club and lance also render'd him as formidable to all those whom fortune plac'd in his way. The slaughter which he soon made, oblig'd the enemies to employ all their strength against him alone; they oppressed him with their arrows, and tho he always made a vigorous defence, he was dangerously wounded in the hand; nevertheless the Seghzians being over-power'd by our brave men, were put to the rout, and at length entirely defeated.

After this victory, our princes return'd to Kiehlac. Timur stay'd at the camp of Toumen to be heal'd of his wound, and Hussein march'd towards Bactan with ninety men. He met Aprim, younger brother of Bilidgeh, who oppos'd his passage with his troops. Hussein was necessitated to fight; but his father, over-power'd by the great number of the enemies, were vanquish'd; and Hussein troubled at this disgrace, fled to Cheberto, accompany'd by twelve men only.

Timur was no sooner heal'd of his wound, than he march'd towards Arif with Timur Coja Agien, and twenty four others. When he was arriv'd at Kehmrdi, he learnt news of the defeat and flight of Hussein; and sent one of his

* A people inhabiting the country of Seghas, near Seghelan or Sifan.
* Winter quarters.
* Saltic Berlar, defended from Idier, son of Cornelius Novian.
The history of Timur-Bec.

men to let him know of his recovery, and to in-
 Chap 8.
vite him to come to Arsef. Timur continu'd his road, and met Saddic Berlas*, who with a
design to serve under him, had pass'd the de-
sert with fifteen of his domesticks to seek
him. Timur receiv'd him handsomely, and im-
mediately sent to Huflein, to let him know
that the sooner he came to join him the better.
In the mean time, Timur on the road perceiv-
ing a hundred horse, sent a foot-soldier to know
who they were; who brought him word that
their chief was Cazauchi the son of Hafan,
who upon the news of Mir Huflein's arrival in
the country of Buculan, came to seek him.
In short, Timur found these men were friends, be-
cause their leader had wheel'd his horse about on
an eminence in token of joy; he then join'd them,
and they went together towards Arsef, from
whence he sent spies, who brought him word
the next day that they perceiv'd at some distance
a body of horse. Timur immediately mounted,
and advanc'd to join them: he ask'd them
who they were; they answer'd, we are officers
of the invincible Timur; he spur'd his horse
into the middle of them, and found Toclic
Coja Berlas, prince Seifeddin, Aiche and Tu-
tuk, accompany'd by seventy chosen soldiers.
These brave men, from the esteem they had for
the valor of Timur, had voluntarily en-
gag'd in his service: when they had found
what they fought for, they alight'd off their
horses, and kill'd the ground on which he stood,
a ceremony used towards the greatest princes.
Timur return'd home, and the next day they

* Saddic Berlas, descended from Ilder, son of Cazauchi Herain.

defcry'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. defery'd another body of horse who came from Kehmerdi; they found that it was Chir Behram, who after having stayd at the camp of Toumen, whilst Timur departed thence, came to find him, repenting of what he had done. He learnt that Mir Husein was also coming to meet Timur, being informed of his cure by Saddic and his servant Svedenge.

Oulom Couli with a hundred and thirty horse, and Mamur Keli with a hundred and fifty foot, also offer'd their service to our prince in Arsef: he receiv'd 'em willingly, and they had the satisfaction to learn from his own mouth the adventures which had happen'd to him during his absence.

They also having advice that Mengheli Bouga Selduz, their sworn enemy, had fortify'd himself in Olatchou, immediately march'd towards this citadel to force it; but Chir Behram, Mengheli's friend, warded off this blow by desiring Timur to let him go to him, under pretence of persuading him to relent by his remonstrances, and even to bring him before him. The prince consented to it, but Mengheli prefer'd flight to all other advice.

About the same time three hundred men of Doulan Jaoun, dependent of Culin, who formerly were in the service of Timur's relations, came to offer him their service.

These troops very much strengthen'd the two princes; they departed from Arsef for Souf, which is a defile of mountains, where Amles son of Toumen was at the head of two hundred men, to favor the march of the cavalry of Bale: and this captain, being inform'd of the good condition Timur and Husein were in, join'd those princes.
The history of Timur-Bec.

In the mean-while Temouke was sent with Chap. 8.
three persons to the iron gate to gain intelligence; he arrived there after having pass'd the river Termed, and learnt that the army of Geze was retir'd from thence, having first ravag'd all the country. Temouke at this place met his relations, who, after a thousand caresles, told him that his wife and children were encamp'd in the neighbourhood, and they besought him very much to go and see them: but the generous Temouke refus'd to do so, and bravely answer'd, that when the master was driven from his house, it was not decent that the servant should enter his.

Timur and Hulfein departed from Souf with their little army, pass'd the straights of Ghez, and came into the plain of Oliai Bouga. They there learnt that the princes Soliman Berlas, Emir Moula, Yakou Berlas, Hendouke Berlas, and many others with their troops, hearing of the success of their affairs, had broke the peace with the Gezes, in order to join them, and that they were already arriv'd at Termed, but to be more particularly inform'd, they hasten'd Toulan Bouga towards the Ghou, with order to march all night, and even to cross the river, to learn news, and to return forthwith. For their part, they departed from Oliai Bouga, and enter'd into the country of Balc; here three princes their enemies, viz. Aboufaid, son of Taflou; Mengheli Bouga Seliz, who had fled from the citadel of Olatchou to Aboufaid his son-in-law; and Haider Andhouli, were united, after having got together six thousand men, with whom they design'd to attack our princes. In short, they no sooner heard of the arrival of the two princes, than excited by hate and ambition, they march'd with their troops.
troops towards their camp, stopp'd on the banks of the river Abyudah, which separated the two camps, and laid ambuscades in all the passages of that river.

Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of conquering, came to the bank of the river to put a stop to the first onset of the enemy, and to wait the arrival of his friends: he incessibly gain'd what time he had need of; and behav'd himself so circumspectly, with regard to the march of each, that the enemy's army was oblig'd a great while to move along the bank of the river near the straits of Ghez to find a place fordable, with design to come to blows; which, thro' Timur's prudence, they were not able to do till they came in sight of the city of Bula.

Then the two parties rang'd their troops in such manner, that the main body was between the right and left wing, and the brook nam'd Abdalla lay between the two armies. During these preparations, the princes, who we said before were near Termid, join'd our party: Temouke arriv'd also, and gave advice of everything he had observ'd beyond the Ghon, as well in relation to the army of the Gutes, as concerning other particulars.

The combat began about noon, and lasted till night: Temouke was dangerously wounded; guards and sentinels were fix'd in all places convenient for 'em. As soon as day-light appear'd, the soldiers of both armies, on the sound of the kettle-drums, gave a great shout, excited by a desire for fighting. Timur, with his wonted intrepidity, pass'd the bridge, and fell upon the enemy, tho' their army was much more numerous than his, and wholly compos'd of valiant soldiers. This boldness struck fear into all the
The history of Timur-Bec.

enemys, who cou'd not withstand the bravery of our prince, but fled with great confusion.

After this victory, Husein and Timur reviewed their soldiers, and found only two thousand horse: Timur rejoyced one part to himself, and with 'em went before towards the Gihon, which he crossed at Termid in a bark; and after having encamp'd on the bank of the river, he sent scouts to the iron gate of Coluga, who being fatigued, fell asleep, insomuch that Ajoum, younger brother of Bikidgek, unexpectedly came upon 'em with his troops. Timur, who relied on his scouts, was afraid of nothing; and his soldiers were relishing themselves in their tents, when, on a sudden, both the scouts and enemy arrived at their camp.

Our men had not time to rally, nor fix themselves in order of battle to oppose the enemy: all they cou'd do, after abandoning their tents, was to embark for repassing the river; whilst our hero maintain'd his ground with a handful of brave men, and flung in an ile, where he sustained the enemy's attack with more than human valor; so that he gave time to his troops to cross the river, and he himself soon follow'd.

The two parties remain'd a whole month in sight of each other, on each side the river; and Timur having cause'd the barks to be burnt, departed at length for Culm, on the frontiers of Balc, where he join'd Husein with the rest of the army.

The two princes march'd to Condoz, where they got together the troops of the tribe of Boroldai, with which they turn'd towards Bedakchan. At their arrival at Takan, they made peace with the kings of Bedakchan. They then return'd to Arsenk, and after having crossed the river near Saliferai, went to Carlan, pass'd the day.
fact, and encamp’d in a place nam’d Ghilfe. Here Huleem openly complain’d of Chir Behram, even before his face, and before Poulad Bonga, in that he would return to his province; he told him he did not act with honor, in abandoning them when they were near the enemy, and had to great occasion for soldiers. Timur gave him his advice, and us’d him very kindly, that he might oblige him to stay with ’em; but he would not; and tho’ his humor from temper was enough to provoke Huleem, yet he dissembled his resentment, and Chir Behram parted for Belgevan.

C H A P. IX.
The renounter of the army of Gote, and its defeat, caus’d by the policy of Timur-Bec; with the reduction of the city of Kesh.

In the mean while the news was confirm’d, that Toeluc Selduz, Kei Cofru, and several other princes of Gote, were come at the head of an army of that kingdom; and that moreover Timur, son of Bubcan Sarie Chancoun, Toeluc Coji Berlas, Hadji Bei, Couch Timur, son of Biskedeh, and other princes of tribes, with their troops, had encamp’d with twenty thousand men between Gials and the bridge Senghun; and besides all this, above six thousand men had deserted our princes, so that their forces were much inferior in number to those of the Gotes; but Timur, who trusted in God, and

* A town in the province of Cahan, long. 104°, lat. 19°.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Incessantly besought his assistance, frequently repeated this passage of the Alcoran: *How often hast a small number of troops, by the permission of God, conquered an infinite number of soldiers?* And he was not ignorant, that if God was for him he had nothing to fear. In this dispositions of mind, he marched with two thousand men towards this great army; and meeting them at the foot of the bridge of Senghin, he boldly disputed their passage: he fought with extraordinary courage from nine in the morning till night, which gave his Soldiers an opportunity of taking breath. In the mean time Timur reflected upon the great inequality of the forces, and perceived he should not be able to succeed in his designs if his valor was not seconded by policy; he therefore had recourse to this stratagem: he ordered the princes Moula, Movaid, Emir, and Ouscura Behader, to post themselves at the foot of the bridge with five hundred of the bravest soldiers, whom he would leave with 'em, whilst he swam over the Gihon with the rest between the plain of Issan and Raflan Kech, and posted himself on the mountains.

The next day the enemy's scouts knew, by the marks of the horses' feet, that troops had passed the river in the night. This report made the leaders of the enemy's army look about 'em, and hinder'd their fighting that day. When night came, Timur ordered his men to approach 'em, and to light fires on the tops of the hills round their army. This call fear into the soldiers of Gete, who imagining they were surrounded by a numerous army, they therefore fled that night in disorder without fighting; they dare'd not fly towards the bridge because of the five hundred men posted there, and whom they believed to be a much greater number, altho' the Getes were more
more than ten to one. It may be truly said, that the fires kindled on the mountains broke the general's measures, and put a stop to the soldiers' valor, since the disorders began among 'em from that time. As soon as Timur perceived the effect of his stratagem, he came down from the mountain like a torrent, and fell upon the enemy sword in hand; they flew so many of 'em, that there were nothing left thro'out the field but dead bodies: he purru'd 'em as far as the plain of Hedgerat; and Mr Hulsein, who arriv'd with the rest of the army, continu'd to make a terrible slaughter of 'em. This defeat wonderfully encourag'd the soldiers of Timur and Hulsein, who encamp'd in that plain, while the renown of this victory spread it self on every side, and gain'd Timur great reputation.

He then decamp'd, and march'd with two thousand men to the iron gate, where he met the inhabitants of Kech, and of the neighbouring places, who had fled from the army of the Getes, and came in multitudes to seek him, and implore his protection. Here Timur chose three hundred men to guard his person, and order'd the others to slay there. He then sent the Emirs Soliman Berlas, Yakou Berlas, Belram Gelair, Geladeedin Berlas, Seifeddin and Yolimir, with two hundred of his guards towards Kech; ordering 'em to form four squadrons, and to fasten on each side their horses: two long branches of trees well furnish'd with leaves, that in drawing 'em along they might raise a great dust. They punctually executed this order, which had its desired effect; for the governor of Kech, who saw so much dust upon the plain, believ'd there was a great army: this struck a terror into him, and made him abandon the city; which Timur's men enter'd without opposition, and there establish'd officers
The history of Timur-Bec.

officers of justice, and all things necessary. Thus Chap.te-
fortune, which was always favorable to Timur, 
caus'd him to triumph over an army by fire, and to conquer a city by dust.

C H A P. X.

The death of Toglue Timur Can, king of the 
Getes, and the defeat of his army by the 
princes Timur-Bec and Husein.

ABOUT this time the Can Toglue Ti-
mur dy'd; and when Elias Cofa, his son, 
receiv'd the news of it, he was encamp'd at Tach 
Arigh, four leagues from Kech; he had with him the princes and lords of his court, with a 
numerous army of horse and foot. The prin-
ces who brought him this news, were Olue To-
cutmur, and Mir Hamid, who came principally 
to conduct him into his country of Gete, where 
he was to take possession of the imperial throne 
of his father.

Timur, with his hundred horse, march'd all 
night to arrive at Cezar: a vast concourse of 
people came the next day to prostrate themselves 
before him: he rais'd some troops out of 'em, 
which he join'd to those of Kech, and order'd 
that Cofa Selaheri should command the rear of 
the army, with which he would encamp at Che-
kedalic; to which place the Cheik Mehmed came 
to join Timur with seven regiments. They re-
main'd seven days encampt at Chekedalic; dur-
ing which time Mir Husein arriv'd with his 
troops, and those Timur had left at the iron 
gate. Chir Behram, who parted from 'em in 
the plain of Ghulec, and was gone to see his

family,
family, return'd also to join 'em with his troops after forty three days abscence. They march'd in a body towards Cazar, under the command of Hulfein and Timur; and when they were arriv'd there, they visit'd the tomb of the illustrious Coja Resmes. After having pray'd to this great Santon to intercede with God for the prosperity of their army, they embrac'd one another, contracted an indissoluble union, and confirm'd the alliance by solemn oaths, taking the Santon to witness the sincerity of their promises.

It is remarkable in history, that great men have often a sort of fore-knowledge of the events which will happen to 'em: the coming of Joseph's father and brothers was reveal'd to him; as was the conquest of Mecca to Mahomet.

As Timur was one day considering in what manner he shou'd attack the great army of Elias, with the few troops he had, he fell asleep, and in a dream heard a voice, which said to him distinctly, \textit{Fear nothing, for the most high God will graciously give thee the victory.} He awak'd on this, and the more to confirm himself that the revelation was true, he ask'd if any one had spoken while he slept; they answer'd him in the negative: he therefore no longer doubted that the voice came from heaven. This inspir'd him with so much vigor and resolution, that he immediately went to seek Hulfein; he told his dream to him, and afterwards to all the army, who were very much encourag'd by this omen, and only sought an opportunity to fight. This happy news chang'd the prince's inquietude into pleasantry and good humor; and the soldiers, whom the present danger had render'd fearful, grew dauntless as soon as it was made known to 'em.
The princes pray'd to God for the prosperity of their arms, and at length took horse, and made all necessary preparations for the battel; ranging their army in order, and dividing it into two bodies. Emir Hulfein put himself at the head of the right wing, and Timur commanded the left: and in this order they march'd against Elias.

This new emperor, being encamp'd at Tach Aright, also divided his army into two bodies: he commanded in person the left wing, and made Mir Hamid his lieutenant-general; and the Emirtocarmur, and the prince Bihidgul, put themselves at the head of the right.

As soon as the two armies were in fight, they rang'd themselves in form of a half-moon; and the soldiers, animated by their general's speeches, were even mad to engage: a great cry was immediately heard in both armies, and the combatants erected their lances in token of resolution.

The battel began in a place call'd Cahamir, by the enemys skirmishes, who trusted in the great number of their soldiers, which far surpas'd that of the army of Timur: but these men did not long continue in this disposition; for Timur, without flitting from his post, let fly his arrows against the enemys with such skill, that there was not one who advanc'd that return'd.

Timur's horse at length began the general fight with such a terrible cloud of arrows, that they darken'd the sky, and slew the molt forward of the enemys.

Then Timur, follow'd by his soldiers sword in hand, broke thro the opposite wing of the enemy with so much vigor, that he did not give them time to make the first discharge of their arrows; the fury with which he rush'd into the middle
middle of the squadrons, struck such a terror into 'em, that they were soon put into disorder; and as on the other hand Hufcin was fighting at the head of his men with Bikidgek, never was a battle fought with so much fury, nor so bravely sustained. The slaughter of so many men exceedingly fatigued our warriors, but at the same time very much heightened their courage in exciting their revenge. If Timur charg'd the enemy with so much fury at the beginning of the fight, in the end he behav'd himself with greater bravery; for being seconded by his soldiers, who were animated by his example, he rush'd on the enemy on each side, bearing down all before him; he at length drove the first rank upon the second, which could not sustain the strength of our men, encourag'd by the indefatigable valor of Timur.

At the same time this prince made a great cry to excite his soldiers against those who fled; they pursu'd 'em with their lances, destroying all who fell into their hands; they would never have been weary of slaughter, if Timur had not commanded 'em to desist, and to advance to the right, to charge the rear of the troops commanded by Bikidgek and Tocarnur: these princes fought with extraordinary inrepidity, and by their valor render'd the issue of the battle doubtful; but when they were attack'd on both sides, how bravely sooner they behav'd themselves, and notwithstanding the number of their troops, they could not withstand the courage of Timur, their soldiers being constrain'd to give way to his strength, and follow the example of their companions, especially when they saw the bravest of their leaders expire; as Donnus, colonel of the regiment of Behrin;
The history of Timur-Bec.

Tehamp, a favorite of the grand Can, whom Chap.2.
the soldiers regarded as the only support of their valor. The general Tocamur can'd no less con-
formation in the army by his death, as well as Biki, brother of the great general Bikidgök. 
Dolat Chah, and two other princes of the blood, encreas'd by their death the affliction of the 
soldiers. Thus at length this army, so formidable for its number, was entirely defeated by a handful 
of men, if compar'd with the great number of the enemy.

The emperor Elias Coja Can, the princes Bikidgök, Esbender Aglen, Mir Hamid, Iofet 
and Coja Jofet, were made prisoners; but the natural generosity of the Tucks was of service 
to the emperor of the Getes; for he was known by some soldiers of Timur's army who had taken 
him: they got off their horses, and without acquainting their commanders with it, set Elias 
and Bikidgök on 'em, who fled, and alone sav'd themselves.

Timur march'd all night thro by-ways to the river Yan, to hinder the retreat of those that fled, of whom there were as that place to great a number flain, that the water of the river was red with their blood; and in the mean time he sent the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin towards 
Samarcand, to make themselves masters of it, which they did without any resistance. This 
ľamous battel happen'd in the year of the Hijra 765.

Timur immediately held a council with Mir Hulfein and Chir Behran; after which they departed with all haste to overtake the rest of the enemies that were fled, and especially the grand Can and Bikidgök; they pass'd the Sihon at Co
gende, and went to encamp before the city of 

Mog. The 

Crocodil.
The history of Timur-Beco.

Book I. Takhunt*. Here God mix'd bitterness with their prosperity: these princes fell sick, but their sickness did not endure long, for they were cur'd at the arrival of the illustrious princes Olijai Turcan, who came from a Kichlae, or winter-quarters.

Timur then resolv'd to return home, and re-pass the river at Cogende. Having a desire to hunt, he had a vall tract of land encompass'd by men; the Emir Hujftein did the same in the plain of Dizaec: they follow'd this diversion for many days, and then return'd to Samarcand, which they enter'd in a magnificent manner; which was very agreeable to the people, who expected from these princes a milder government than they had enjoy'd under the Getes.

C H A P. XI.

The assembly of the princes convened by Timur and the Emir Hujftein, in which they elevated Cabelshah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can.

AFTER the famous victory over the Getes, Tranfoxtana and Turkestan were deliver'd from tyranny: but our princes were in great danger from the small deference the lords paid them; for all those who had had any hand in the defeat of the Getes, would have set themselves up for sovereigns, and been independent in their provinces: and they flatter'd themselves

* The same as Alkah; a town upon the Sihon, long. 99. lat. 42.
the more in this design, in that they imagin'd Chap. 11, they had insufficient strength to do it. This disorder oblig'd Timur and Hussein, who had the greatest authority, to convene a general assembly, to consider thoroughly of the affairs of state; and what appeared of most consequence, was the choice of a grand Can. The two princes represented to 'em the indispensability of an empire's having a head; and they said, that without one it would be impossible to protect themselves against their enemies, and to preserve peace; because if many princes had an absolute command, every one would strive to get the better of the others, and by this means there would be continual wars, which would entirely ruin the people who were under their protection. And that no one might refuse to submit to this chief, they resolved to choose one of the race of Genghiz Can, to preserve the ancient custom of the kingdom: they therefore propos'd Cabul-chah Aglen, who, that he might not incur the disgrace which commonly happen to princes in great revolutions, had chosen a solitary life, and taken on him the habit of a Derwish, which they stripp'd him of, and put on him the royal mantle. Publick rejoicings were then ordered to be made throughout all the city of Samarcand; the people were feasted at the expense of the court, the grandees endeavor'd to appear magnificent by distributing gold and silver; every one dress'd himself in his best clothes; and the most precious furniture, and richest fruits were hung out; comforts of musick were heard everywhere, and nothing was spared to make this feast magnificent.

*The son of Dourgi, son of Shih Gail, son of Dara Can.*

E. 3
The princes made Cabulelah Aglen ascend the throne, and presented him with the royal cup, according to the custom of the Turkish kings; at length all the princes in their turns bow'd nine times before him, as the chief of each tribe is oblig'd to do to the Can.

After this ceremony they committed Haider, prince of Anđecoud, who was in irons, into the hands of Zende Hacham, to put him to death; which was accordingly executed the same night, to punish him for the hostilities he had committed against our princes.

Timur continued the feast by a noble banquet, with which he entertain'd Mir Husein; and he thought himself the more oblig'd, in that the place of the assembly was in his own country, and that of his ancestors, and the other lords were strangers.

After this banquet Timur made considerable presents to Husein, as horses, swords, helmets, and the finest belts; and to render the joy compleat, Timur, to whom was given the surname of great, and Saheb-Caran, that is, the hero of the age, propos'd to Mir Husein, and prince Oladzia Iou Aperdi, an old man of great experience, to deliver out of prison Emir Hamid, the lieutenant-general of the enemy's, whose father had always been his friend; as also prince Eskender his companion, who had been taken in the war. Husein consented to it in complaisance to Timur, against the proverb, which says, When the enemy falls into your hands, put it out of his power to hurt you another time, lest you repent of it. When Mir Husein had departed for his lord and ancient residence at Salifurlai, Timur sent the Emirs David and Seifeddin to release Hamid and Eskender Aglen from their confinement, with order to pay
The history of Timur-Bec.

...em all the civilitys imaginable, and to bring them back; but Bayazid and Aimen, in whole hands, the prisoners were, had no sooner perceiv'd the two messengers at a distance, than they imagin'd that they came with orders to put Hamid to death; but to save them the trouble, one gave him a great blow with a club on his head, and the other cut it off: thus died the Emir Hamid lieutenant-general of the Getes. When the Emir Husein had advice of it, he said that the action of the servant was greater than that of the master; and sent an ambassador to demand Eskender Aglen his private enemy, who was sent to him, and put to death.

Our princes flaid at their respective habitations all the winter; their affairs were in so good a condition, that they could not at that time desire more prosperity than they enjoy'd.

C H A P. XII.

The battle of Lai, or of the sloughs.

This prosperity did not continue long; for at the beginning of the spring news was brought that the Getes had rais'd another army, and that they were marching towards Transoxiana. Timur sent advice of it to the Emir Husein, who order'd Poulad Bouga, Zendehaceli, and Malek Behader, to put themselves at the head of their troops, and to march forthwith to Timur, who had already rais'd an army. Immediately after their arrival he departed; and when they were got to the plain of Ahiar, they review'd the troops, and...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. After some time to refresh the cavalry. They then departed to meet the enemy, and after having passed the Sihon at Cogende, they encamped on its banks between Tachlant and Tchinaz. Timur commanded his captains to fortify their quarters; and the enemy's scouts advanced when the Emir Hulein arriv'd with his army. He pass'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in a place which was mark'd out for his troops.

The enemy's army encamp'd also on the bank of the river at Exam; for which reason our princes quitted their camp, and advanced towards the Getes. The scouts of the two armies were no sooner in sight, than they rang'd themselves in order of battle. The Emir Hulein commanded the right wing; his rear being led by Pietrandi Erist, and his vanguard by Oladgia Irou Aperdi, and other brave men. Timur, who was the soul of the army, put himself at the head of the left wing; he gave the command of the rear to prince Sar Bouga, with the troops of Capchac, and of the vanguard to Timur Coja Aglen; he kept the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, Mourad Berlas, and many other valiant men near his person. They march'd in this posture to attack the enemy's army, commanded by the emperor Elias Coja Can. Timur's soldiers were full of presumption and vanity, because they had not only once before conquer'd this very enemy, tho' he was superior to 'em, and better provided, but because they themselves were now poss'd of those advantages. But for this their pride they were punish'd, that the observation might be verify'd, that the day would be unfortunate to the army which depended upon the multitude of its soldiers. God permitted the Getes, who in the battle of Cabanitan were defeated, notwithstanding their great number,
number, to get the advantage in this, tho they Chap. x. had by far the fewer troops. They us'd for this purpose a stratagem which is said to have been taught them by a famous magician.

It is commonly believ'd, that the stone call'd Virtue of Gedi sleep'd in water at a certain hour, has a power to change the air, to produce wind, rain and thunder, and terrible hurricanes; to which stone the Getes, being satisfy'd of their weakness, had recourse. However that be, to great a tempest was rais'd, that the world seem'd ready to fall into its original chaos: it rain'd so excessively, that it look'd like the deluge; many thunderbolts fell, and the lightning and the noise of the thunder astonish'd the most fearles: the earth cou'd no longer be distinguisht from the sea; horses and oxen swam in the water; the feet of the horses of our army, which were the best in Asia, were stuck so far in the mire, that the skin of their bellies was peel'd off; this excessive moisture caus'd at length an Esferca, a cruel disfemper, which slackens the nerves, renders the limbs paralytic, and corrupting the flesh, dries it up, that in a manner nothing appears but the bones and nerves.

The enemies, to prevent the ill effects their stone would produce, had provided themselves with good felts, with which they cover'd their camp, persons and horses; and they had prepared canals to carry the water off: whilst ours were reduc'd to a miserable condition; their clothes becoming extremely heavy, and the horse being more embaras'd than the foot.

When the rain was over, their bad condition did not hinder their advancing, and they attack'd the enemy with an heroic valor; but the Getes, whom the rain and tempest had scarce difor-
Book I. disorder'd, mounted on fresh horses, and well-armed, received our army, with a briskness so much greater than that of our men, that our soldiers were obliged to fly; and there were terrible cries in both armies. Then Timur, who saw he must either die shamefully or fight, turn'd himself about, and crying out to his soldiers to come to him, found himself insensibly in the middle of the enemy's right wing. As his men were surrounded by 'em, there was the most terrible slaughter that was ever known; blood flow'd in little rivers, and the dead bodies of both sides fell promiscuously over one another, both friends and enemies, without knowing who were conquerors. The rules of war were not observed; every thing was in confusion, and every one of the soldiers had been slain in the heat of the battle, if by an unexpected accident, Chem Cown Nevian, brother of the Emir Hamid, who commanded the right wing of the enemy, had not been slain: for Timur being about to give him a blow with his ax, this prince, who was one of the most valiant of the Gates, fenc'd off the blow with his buckler, but as he was rising up to strike Timur with his sabre, he was pier'd with lance by prince Yakou Berlas.

The emperor Elias Coja Can had no sooner heard of the misfortune which happen'd to his general, than he retreated; and his soldiers who saw him fly, despairing of the victory, fled after him: but Timur and his men pursuit'd them, and did not cease the slaughter till their horses fell under them, not able any longer to bear the fatigue; whilst the enemy's horses, which had not suffered thru the tempest and thongs, were swifter and fled. But if we had the victory on one side, we were beaten on the other; for the
left-wing of the enemy fell to briskly on Perlandi and Zendehachem, who commanded the van of our right wing, that they approached the Emir Hulein, whose guards being surpriz'd, lay in disorder, notwithstanding the courage of Chir Behram and Poulad Bouga, who on this occasion gave marks of the greatest valor. Hadgi Beí lost no ground, but briskly attack'd the captains Ferhad and Orone Timur with their regiments, who began to give way; but prince Chamfeddin unexpectedly came to their assistance with a great squadron, which not only prevented their flight, but beat back Hadgi Beí: the fight was bloody, and the enemies were triumphing, when Timur, who perceived the disorder, arrived with seventeen companies, and fell upon Chamfeddin, who was not able to sustain the attack, but lost ground and fled. These advantages gave the Emir Hulein an opportunity to rally his guards. Timur sent Behader his aide-de-camp to him, to desire him to advance, and to tell him, that if they briskly attack'd the enemy, he would no longer be able to resist; but this prince, either through jealousy of the great actions of our hero, or through presumption, reflected the meagre of Behader, abused him, and beat him off his horse. Timur, who perceived they had so good an opportunity of overcoming, dissembled his resentment, and sent to him a second time Hamdi and Malik who belonged to him, but he treated them as he had Behader. "Have I lied? said he to them; why then doth he press me to advance? Whatever happens, whether we conquer or are conquer'd, none of you shall save himself from my hand." Malik and Hamdi returned in a great passion, and Timur vex'd that the most favorable opportunity should be
The History of Timur-Bek.

Book I. be loos'd thro' the caprice of the Emir Hullein, resolv'd to be revenge'd; he ceas'd from attacking the enemy, and as the two wings of both armys had been reciprocally routed, and had taken each others place, they encamp'd where they were at that time, with design to give some refreshment to the soldiers during the night, after the excessive fatigue of the day. In the mean while the Emir Hullein recover'd from his ill humor, sent several messages to Timur, to intreat him to come and see him; but this prince, weary with his manner of acting, refus'd to go.

The sound of the trumpet Kerrena waking the soldiers before morning, every one prepar'd himself to continue the fight. The two parties fell upon one another with great cries, mix'd with a confus'd noise of drums and trumpets, and the victory was not long in suspense: the army of the Getes fled, and Timur and his men pursu'd 'em, and in the pursuit perceiv'd the standard of prince Chamfeddin, who was separated from the rest, and came with a great number; so our men abandon'd the fugitives, and turn'd towards the white standard: but the enemies, as soon as they perceiv'd the ensign, rally'd and return'd to the charge. The combat was bloody, and at length our men were vanquish'd; the Getes had the victory, and oblig'd us to turn our backs. Fear caus'd a great number of our men to perish in the sloughs and marshes. The enemies in the pursuit of the red kill'd a great many, and there remain'd slain in the field of battle more than

* Kerrena is a large trumpet of brass, eight foot long, which serves to wake the soldiers, and sound a return.
ten thousand of our men. This famous battle of Lai, that is to say, of the doughs, happen'd on the first of Ramadan, in the year of the Hegira 766. Astrologers remark, that the tenth of the trine celestial conjunctions was in Scorpio, about the time of this fatal defeat. I mention this circumstance only for the perfection of this history; and not to infer that accidents are caus'd by the influences of the heavenly bodies: on the contrary, I believe there are no influences nor accidents in nature, of which God is not the disposer and primary author.

C H A P. XIII.

The Retreat of Timur-Bec and Husein.
Samarcand besieged by the Gotes.

After this great defeat, the princes arriv'd at Kesh, where they did not think themselves sufficiently secure'd against the Gotes, who yet pursu'd them; they therefore resolv'd to pass the Gihon, every one with the troops of his hord: the Emir Husein told Timur that it was proper he shou'd do the same with his family and troops; but this prince answer'd him, that the other princes might do what they pleas'd, but that he was not of that mind, and that his temper would not suffer him to abandon his country to the tyranny of barbarians; that he would rally as many troops as he was able, and march against the enemys: and if fortune oppos'd him, he shou'd nevertheless have the glory of dying in defence of his subjects.
The Emir Hussein went to Saliferai, where he made his men cross the Gihon, and retir'd with 'em by by-ways to Cheberto; from whence he sent spies to the places round about to learn news of the Gates, that he might fly into India on the first advice of their approach.

As soon as the Emir Hussein was departed from Koch, Timur neglected no opportunity of levying troops; his good conduct, and the affection of the people towards him, was the reason that he rais'd seventeen companies; he sent Timur Coja Agien to command the half of these troops, and order'd Chaourchi and Abbas Behader to carry forage to Samarcand, and raise other troops there. But Chaourchi laid in the way to drink hard of some of the bell wines; this liquor, which makes many men courageous and generous, dispirited him even to excess; he told David Coja and Hindoucha, that Timur had a design to seize 'em, and to send 'em to the Emir Hussein to be put to death. Upon this these two captains were afraid, and fled in haste to the Gates, which was a great loss to Timur; the others continued their road, and met a Kukaug a party of the army of the Gates, commanded by Kepec Timur, son of Ooli Totamur, and by the captains Chiraoul and Initerfac son of Hadgi Bei; ours were surpriz'd and entirely defeated, with the four or five companies who remain'd with 'em.

Timur soon receiv'd advice of this fresh loss; he well knew that his prosperity must be at a stand for some time, and that there was no more likelihood of defending his country, to whatsoever hazard he expos'd his life; for this reason he cross'd the Gihon, and went for Bals, where he rally'd the troops of his Toman, and
The history of Timur-Bec.

the other troops of his country who had fled thither. He also got together the Tomans of Kepec Can and Olsja Bouga Seldiz, part of whom he sent to the river Gilian to guard the pallages, and to get information of what happen'd there. Timur Coja Aglen arriv'd at this time, and he was punish'd for his bad conduct by a fine impos'd on him.

In the mean while the army of the Geres arriv'd at Samarcand, which at that time was without a citadel. Munsana Zade Samarcandi, Moula Cardeec Imam of Bokara, and Aboubeker Kolevi, men whole probity and knowledge had acquired them an authority and power over the people, and who imagin'd the tyrannick government of the Geres would cause an entire deflation of this city, undertook to defend it against these barbarians. They represented to the inhabitants by their pathetic speeches the miseries which this insupportable tyranny had brought on them; that what was to come would be much worse, because of the particular affection the Geres imagin'd they bore to the princes of Tranfoxiana; that in this condition they ought to take arms to defend themselves from the cruelty of these tyrants, till it should please God to grant the princes sufficient strength to refit them. The inhabitants of Samarcand, who had a great veneration for their Imams, and love for their princes, being desirous to take arms, were easily persuaded to do so; and without the princes at their head, they undertook to dispute with the Geres their entrance into the city: they fix'd chains across each street, and every one arm'd himself, even from children of twelve years of age, to the oldest men. The enemy, to prove several times to surprize the city, they enter'd into the
the suburbs; but they were always repuls'd with loss, and even the citizens made such vigorous efforts, that they beat back the Gates into their tents, chased them entirely out of the suburbs, and kill'd a great number of them. But as this city was well peopled, and the inhabitants were not accustomed to the fatigues of war, victuals became very dear; the artificers work'd no longer, and every one began to be rid with the siege; insomuch that being reduc'd to the last extremity, they had been constrain'd to surrender, if God had not deliver'd them on a sudden from the evil which threaten'd them. There was a mortality among the horses of the Gates, of which there perish'd three fourths, so that they were at a loss to get horses for the couriers. This misfortune ruin'd their army, and disabled them from continuing the siege, so that they were oblig'd to return home in a miserable condition, almost all of 'em on foot, with their quivers tied to their backs, and their swords on their shoulders. The principal men of the city were fill'd with pride, because the Gates were retirc'd; and attributed to themselves the glory of sustaining the attack of so great an army, and even of having repuls'd it. Moreover, they would have respect paid 'em, and claim'd a sort of superiority over the rest; they at length form'd great parties, spilt the people's blood, and caus'd strange disorders in the city, to maintain themselves in their usurpation.

On the other hand, Abbas Behader, whom Timur had sent to the iron gate, to observe the motions of the army of the Gates, return'd in all haste to that prince. He gave him an account of the miserable condition the enemies were in, and represented to him at the same time
time the fate of the inhabitants of Samarcand, who suffer'd a great deal under the tyranny of the usurpers. When Timur was inform'd of these things, he sent in haste to the Emir Huflein, to give him advice of them, and to invite him at the same time to march therewith his troops. Huflein was extremely well pleas'd with the news, and departed forthwith from Chebarto to Saliferai. Timur order'd all his family to cross the Gihon, and sent 'em to Kech, his antient residence.

This prince then took horse to meet Huflein, which he did at the entry of the meadow of Bacalan. They embrac'd each other, and having renew'd their friendship, they promis'd to be more closely united than ever. They had a long conference on what had already pass'd, and what they had to do; and they concluded to be at Samarcand the beginning of the spring: Timur return'd, cross'd the Gihon, and encamp'd at Carfchi. The name of Carfchi was given to this city because of the palace Kepeck built two leagues and a half from Nakhchiv, in the mogul language Carfchi, signifying a palace. Timur pass'd the winter there; during which time he built the citadel, which was finish'd before the end of that season.

*Nakhchiv, Nelef, and Carfchi, are the same place.*
CHAP. XIV.

Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the dissension which happen'd between 'em.

The princes departed in the spring for Samarcand; and as soon as they were arriv'd at this capital of Tranfoixiana, they agreed on what was of most importance; to wit, the punishment of the insolence of the Serbedals, who pretended to take upon 'em the highest polls, and had entirely confounded both the state and religion by the violences they had exercis'd. It was resolve'd that they shou'd seize on all those petty tyrants; which was accordingly done. The Emir Huflein, after having reproach'd 'em for the horrid crimes they had committed, order'd their heads to be cut off, after their trial at Canighul, where the army encamp'd; insomuch, that there remain'd only Moulana Zade, whom Timur sav'd thro' a motive of piety.

After the princes had regulated the civil government of this city, restor'd the laws and the ordinary course of justice among the inhabitants whom the Serbedals had seduce'ed, Huflein made known his reigning passions. He saw himself at the height of his desires; and at the same time discover'd an inastiable avarice and meanness of spirit, which did not in the least shew him to be the grandson of the great Emir Cazagan. He employ'd all his care and authority to heap up riches; and avarice had so vass a poise of his soul, that he had no regard to honor or equity; and without considering that Timur had as much or a greater share in the good
good or ill success of the wars they had been engag’d in, he even ventur’d to tax the domesticks of Timur: he exacted immense sums from the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, ACHOUGA, Eltchi, Behader, and Dolet Ghz Balki. The barrel of the loughs, where these princes lost their treasure, and most part of their baggage, had put ’em out of a condition to satisfy him immediately. All they could recover thito their industry, was not sufficient to allurage his thirst after riches: but Timur furnish’d ’em with enough to make up the great sum they were tax’d at; and as this prince had not a sufficient quantity of ready-money, he gave ’em even the necklaces and ear-rings of the princes Olajai Turcan his wife. Hullein receiv’d all they brought him; he saw, among the rest, his sister’s jewels, and he had a soul-enough to forget the duty of a brother, and not to refuse ’em. After having fix’d a price on ’em, he examin’d whether they had entirely paid the tax, and found there yet remain’d three thousand dinars unpaid: this ungenerous prince demanded ’em, and Timur gave his own horses to satisfy him. Hullein would not accept ’em; but he said he would go to Saliferai, from whence he must send a sum of money to Caracerze, there to demand in marriage the daughter of Hullein Sofi, and that he would wait for the remainder of what was due. He was no sooner departed, than Timur rais’d the sum at Kech, which he sent him.

These actions gave the Emir Hullein a bad reputation; but the fear the people were in, because of the union between him and Timur, made ’em dissimble it: nevertheless, the aver-
Book I. On which the principal lords bore to him was
so great, that they resolv'd to use all their ef-
forts to disunite 'em; and after having humili-
ted the haughtiness of Hufsein, they propos'd to
themselves to give the absolute power to Timur,
who was of a sweet temper, had a generous
soul, noble passions, and, in fine, every virtue
that was necessary to the forming of a great
prince. But as the sun never shews itself till the
flares have disappear'd, Timur cou'd not arrive
at that pitch of greatness desir'd for him, with-
out the ruin of Hufsein. The Emir Moosfa Ali
Dervis, son of Bajazet Gelair, who was his
wife's brother, and Ferhad, to break the union
of the princes, made use of an artificer, first
thought of by Oorda Catoun, a princess be-
longing to the fraglio of Turm-churin Can,
whose daughter, the mother of Ali Dervis,
was ally'd to the Emir Hufsein: they wrote
a letter to him full of falsehoods; the particulars
of which were, that Timur, offended at the
grand Can and him, had sought means to re-
venge himself by an open war; and that he was
so far resolv'd on it, that he had already begun
to make preparations, which would no sooner
be finish'd, than he will make known his designs
by divers hostilities. This letter was given to
Hufsein, who read it, and at the same time
shew'd it to Can Cabulechah Aglen. They im-
mediately sent men to Timur to be inform'd of
the truth from himself, and to desire him to
come to Samarcand to Ooura Catoun, with those
who had given him advice of it, that being
brought face to face the truth of the things af-
serted might more easily be brought to light.
Timur, who not so much as thought of what
he was accus'd of, took horse without fear, or
using any precautions, and went to Samarcand;
but
but the Emir Mousa and Ali Dervis having notice of his arrival, abandon'd the intrigue, and fled to Cogende, for fear of coming to dishonour. This was enough to persuade Hufeisn, and the rest, that Timur had no hand in the conspiracy; but it had a very different effect with regard to Hufeisn. Timur, who by his long familiarity with him, knew what his heart was capable of, and how jealous he was, since he believ'd what was contain'd in this false letter, did not doubt his having a constant suspicion of him, and that there would be continual quarrels between 'em, he therefore thought it prudent for him also to be mistrustful of the Emir Hufeisn, to avoid the dangers which might happen. He seriously consider'd how he should for the future deal with a prince whose proceedings were so unaccountable, and who had shown so much baseness and avarice. The Emirs on the other hand were extremely discontented with Hufeisn, because of the tax he had imposed on 'em, and were continually endeavouring to deliver themselves from slavery.

One day, in a conference with 'em, this prince open'd his heart to 'em; and after having testify'd his resentment of the tyrannical actions of Hufeisn, he declar'd his intention to remedy this evil. Chir Behram and Behram Celair, who, for fear of displeasing Timur, never dar'd to discover the mortal hatred they bore to Hufeisn, because of the firm alliance between these two princes, then took off the mask, and acquainted Timur with the unanimous design of all the princes, which was founded on their assurance that Hufeisn did not act faithfully with any of 'em. They declar'd to him they were all resolv'd to break off with him, and to treat him for the future as an enemy; that he had
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. dissembled in every thing; and if they did not soon bring an army into the field to give him battle, he would begin first with 'em. These princes were to warm on this design, and by their discourses to heighten'd Timur's discontent against Hulfein, that they brought him to a resolution to make war upon him. They entered into a treaty, and confirm'd it by an oath, which imported that Chir Behram shou'd go to his principality of Catlan, and there raise troops, while Timur regulated the affairs of the army. Chir Behram carry'd with him an officer of Timur's, nam'd Adel, and left one of his own, call'd Tacojah; so that when Adel came, Tacojah departed, and so the two armies kept a constant correspondence. Chir Behram arriv'd at Catlan; and as soon as he had rais'd troops, he led 'em to a mountain situated behind Terze, where he began many hostilities against Hulfein. But this politic prince by his artifices gain'd over to his interest Chir Behram; he brought him from the mountain, on conditions somewhat advantageous to this faithles's prince. Timur, when he had advice of it, wrote a letter to Chir Behram, to reproach him for his baseness and inconstancy: at the end of which he had these words; "I pray God you may soon receive from Hulfein the punishment of your faithlessness, when repentance will avail you nothing."

Timur fail'd not to pursue his enterprise; he assign'd troops to Behram Gelair, prince Yakon, and Abbas Behader; and sent 'em to Cogende to make themselves masters of the bord of Gelair, and to seize on the Emir Moula, and Ali Dervis the son of Bajazer, whose malice had been the first cause of this disorder: but these seditionus men had notice of it, and fled. Behram
ram got together the lord of Gelair, and established himself in his principality.

After this expedition, Timur being apprehensive how difficult it was to extricate himself out of this troublesome affair of attacking the Can and the Emir Husseyn at the same time, took horse with those who were of his side; and after having put to death the men belonging to Ali Dervis, he march'd with his household and troops towards Gete.

Whilst Timur was gone to Samarcand to raise troops, the Emirs Soliman and Chaourachi, who were necessary to the discord between the two princes, came over from Husseyn to him; and prince Kesper Yefouri being dead, Ali his brother, Elias, and Hadji Mamur Chah, came with the troops of the lord of Yefouri to submit themselves to Timur. This prince made Cara Hendouke Berias governor of Samarcand during his absence; after which he took horse to return. But Hendouke prov'd faithless to him, and went even to Husseyn, whilst Cara Joum, who found himself not in a capacity to govern, seem'd to have lost all his courage.

Whilst Timur was gone from his palace to recruit his troops, the princes Olaiaj Turcan Aga, his wife, dy'd. He was very much afflict ed at this loss, and on this occasion distributed great sums among the poor of the country. The Emir Husseyn was the more touch'd at this misfortune, in that it was doubly fatal to him, since, in losing his sister, Timur was disingag'd from his alliance, and the regard and friendship which that prince had kept up betwixt 'em, was now dissolved.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I.

C H A P. XV.

Timur-Bec brings an army into the field against Emir Hufstein.

In the autumn of the year of the Hegira 767, Timur having rais'd an army, consisting of the most valiant men of the empire, in order to oppose the Emir Hufstein, gave the command of the vanguard to prince Soileddin, and directed him to march without interruption. Hufstein, whose artifices had succeeded so well with regard to Chur Behram, as to bring him over to his obedience, imag'd he could do the same by Timur; on which account he sent to him Malek Behader and Abdalla Pirau with a treaty ready drawn up, after the most enticing manner. He put Timur in mind that he had always defir'd to cultivate a good understanding with him; that they had been concern'd together in the most dangerous affairs of the empire; that their union had been the cause of their success; that they were now lifted up above their equals; and that it was time they shou'd both enjoy their grandeur: in fine, he besought him entirely to confide in this treaty, and not to suffer jealousy to take possession of his heart. Malek and Abdalla arriv'd at Itoun, where the army of Timur was encamp'd, after having pass'd the iron gate; who having fird their respects to him, they presented him with the treaty of the Emir Hufstein, and then fird for peace. But Timur, whose fortune seem'd to be in the disposal of providence, told 'em he ought to give no more credit to the words of Hufstein than to the east-wind,
wind, and he would not regard what his ambas-
Chap. 15-
dadors said. However, this overture of peace
was of ill consequence to Timur; for the Ye-
fourians had so little thoughts of succeeding, that
their meanness made them resolve to desert
Timur.
At this time the princes Abbas and Yakou
went to Cogende with Behram Gelair. Be-
ing arriv'd, a council was held upon the affair
of the Ye-fourians; and it was unanimously re-
solv'd to secure the chiefs of that people, who had
enter'd into a conspiracy to change their masters;
but Timur oppos'd it, and told 'em, that in so
happy a conjuncture, violence and indignation
should have no part in his actions, and that it
would be an injury to his glory and reputation,
because when the rest of the people shall hear
of the ill treatment us'd towards these men, they
would no longer continue under his protection;
that it was necessary that moderation should be
the basis of a rising monarchy, and that his
throne should be establish'd on the pillars of
justice and goodnes.
After this discourse, which gain'd the hearts
of all the captains, he order'd that they should
behave themselves courteously towards the Ye-
fourians; whom having permitted to return
home, he went to encamp at Carshi.
Hussein, who had rais'd the best troops he was
able, march'd with Chir Behram, and brought
with him the princes Mobarekchah and Mehe-
med Beyer Seliduz, who had a great friendship
for Timur; but as the army of Hussein had
join'd 'em, they were oblig'd to go with him.
Hussein, not being content with having a
great army, would again make use of artifice
and impollution to bring over Timur. He sent
to him his treasurer Kefer with an alcoran, and
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. a letter, wherein he told him he had taken an oath on that book to give him a full account of the truth in his letter; the contents whereof were as follow.

"The misunderstanding between us will infallibly end in the ruin of the state, and the misery of the people. I know you are a prince of a sweet temper; that you have excellent dispositions; that you love the mululans; shew a great deal of goodness to your subjects; and by consequence ought not to approve of what is doing. For my part, I think it advisable that my army shou'd stay at Gegana, and yours at Cazana; and that we have a conference together, accompany'd by a hundred men only, in Chekitchee, where we will renew our friendship, and confirm our former union by solemn oaths; so that hereafter incendarys shall not be able to find means of fowing dissension among us: for the nation can never enjoy reft till there is a hearty agreement between us."

When Timur had read the letter, he presently knew it was a trick of Hullein, and look'd upon his promise only as an artifice; but as all the princes thought it better to have peace than war, provided Hullein acted with sincerity, he consented to what was propos'd; and leaving the army at Cazar, he took only three hundred men for his guard, who were the bravest he cou'd chuse, and who had always shewn themselves faithful to him, designing to leave two hundred of 'em at Derno for fear of a surprize, and then to march with one hundred only to Chekitchee, the place of interview.

In the mean while the Emir Hullein put to death Chir Echram in Nevendac, according to the
the prediction of Timur; for the words of great men are often the oracles of fate.

The Emir Husein did not fail in preparing to put his artifice in execution; and without regard to his oaths, or the veneration due to the alocoran, on which he had sworn, he dispatch'd with great expedition three thousand chosen men to surprise Timur. A peasant, who had formerly been a domestick of this prince, fled from the rest of the troops, and came with all haste to give Timur advice of it, whom he found already arriv'd at Dehno. An officer nam'd Behram, who had no talent in politicke, was by ill luck plac'd as a sentinel at the gate of the palace, to whom the peasant immediately address'd himself; but this silly fellow would give no credit to what he said, and imagin'd this news would displease the prince, because a peace was actually on the anvil: he even beat the peasant, and sent him away without mentioning to Timur what had been told him. In the mean while Husein's horse, who made great haste, arriv'd very soon in the morning at that quarter; and Timur had already taken horse with his hundred men to go to the place of rendezvous. He was very near it, when he had advice of the treachery of Husein, and the arrival of this troop: nevertheless he advance'd; and when he had got into the middle of the straits of Haram, he plac'd his men in ambucafade, to render the passage the more difficult to the enemy, and to oppole 'em with advantage. The enemy arriv'd, and there were great cries on both sides; the arrows fell like hail, and the fight was bloody. Husein's men finding themselves in a place which was narrow, and ill-dispos'd for fighting, stopp'd, to give Timur an opportunity to draw off; then they pursu'd him, and all he cou'd do was to retreat.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. fighting as far as to Carlich, they not being able to pursue him any farther, where the two branches of the river of Chekedalic join.

In the mean while the news of Hulfein's artifice was brought to Cuzar; and the army, who imagin'd all hopes were lost, dispers'd themselves. Timur, with the few men he had left, went to Cuzar, where he learnt this sad news; at which turn of fortune he was not daunted. But having return'd thanks to God, he came to Carlich, where he held a council with the princes; in which it was resolv'd to send the ladys to Macan, and thence to the confines of the country of Sengar, the people whereof had always been faithful to Timur; to their care he trusted the princelics, and was very well contented they shou'd be sent away, that he might the better carry on the war. The princes also resolv'd that they shou'd rendezvous with their troops at Isac's well, in the neighbourhood of Boeldalic. Every one depart'd at the same time for his own country, where he levy'd troops, and made all necessary preparations, while the ladys went to Macan.

The next day the army of Hulfein arriv'd at Carlich, and the Emirs Mouffa and Hindouchah made themselves masters of the fortresses which Timur had built there. Timur came to Isac's well, where he waited for his friends and officers, who arriv'd there one after another; and when they were all got together, they depart'd for Macan, cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd the desert. Timur sent to all the lords of Herat, and to Mehemed Youm Garbani, to know the state of their affairs. He encamp'd near the well of Chourab till the return of these messengers, which was two months after their setting out; he also stopp'd all the caravans which came from Coraisa-
na to Transoxiana. When all the envos were Chap. 16.
return'd, by his orders it was rumour'd that the
people of Herat had sent for him, and that these
envos were ambassadors of that country: upon
which he gave leave to the caravans to depart.
He then took the road to Herat in their presence
with all his men. The merchants arriv'd at
Carfehi, and fail'd not to give out that they had
seen Timur depart for Herat; which news the
Emir Moutla believ'd, it being told by persons
dilinterested, and who had seen him depart: for
which reason he went out of the fortress of
Carfehi; and after having got together his
troops, he march'd with seven thousand horse
to encamp at Barmae, with design to go to Uz-
kunt. Malek Behader, who commanded the
five thousand horse Hulfein had sent, went to
Caizar, and stopp'd at the hill of Carachin, and
at Gonbedulli.

C H A P. X V I

Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the
princes. The march of Timur to Carfehi.

WHEN Timur knew that the caravans were
at some distance, he return'd immediately
to the place he came from, where he staid as long
as was needful for the caravans to get to Carfehi;
and then he resolv'd to revenge himself on his
enemys, tho' he had not above two hundred men.
With this small number he took the road to Car-
fehi; in the neighbourhood of which city were
12000 horse, with many princes and lords, whom
the desire of fighting had brought thither: which
renders the action of Timur the more remarkable,
who expos'd himself to so great a danger with an
unheard of intrepidity. These are events which
man can no ways comprehend, and which are
only known to the divine being,

Timur march'd all night; and when he was
come to the bank of the Gihon, he first made
his own horses go into the water, and then was
follow'd by forty more, who swam over. They
left the village Kullar, that no one might give
notice of their arrival; and there procur'd barks,
which they sent to the other side of the river,
that the rest of the troops might cross over.

The prince Siorgatmich Aglen, the prince
David, chief of the herd of Doglar, and hus-
band of Cottup Turean Aga, eldest sister of Ti-
mur; the Emir Yahou Berlas; the Emir Mou-
jad Erol, who espous'd another of Timur's sisters;
the Emir Sar Bouga Gelair; Hudein Behader;
the Emir Seifeddin Nejur; the valiant Abbas of
Capchac; Aebouga Behader of the country of the
Naimans; and Mamrkchah of Bocara; were of
the number of those men who accompany'd Ti-
mur.

All those lords departed together, and arriv'd
at Bourdalie; at which place were the amba-
dadors of the Emir Mouffa, whom they feast'd;
they enter'd into Bourdalie, where they lay'd
till the next evening, when they continu'd their
march, and in the night went down to old
Fezef. The next day they block'd up the pas-
sages, and lay in ambuscade; they stopp'd all
those who came to draw water, but soon after
let 'em go. In the night they took horse for
Chirhun: The Emir Yahou told 'em he thought
it advisable to fall upon the Emir Mouffa during
the night; believing that if they cou'd seize his
person, they might make themselves masters of
the rest, and do whatever they pleas'd. But Ti-
mur
The history of Timur-Bec.

We are but a small number; and if unhappily any accident befal us, we shall be reduc'd to great extremity: it is better therefore to do nothing inconsiderately. Let every one stay here, while I alone go to Carlchi, where I will use such precautions that I may not be surpriz'd. I shall by this learn where one may best enter the city, and observe what machines will be necessary to make our selves masters of a town of this importance." Thus Timur would do every thing himself, without depending on the conduct of his generals. He immediately, with Moubacher and Abdalla, took horse for Carlchi, and came down to the bank of the ditch surrounding the citadel. As this ditch had much water, he gave the horses to Moubacher to take care of, and enter'd up to the knees in the aqueduct, which passes over the ditch, and conveys water into the citadel. He crost'd this current with Abdalla, who follow'd him every where; and when they were arriv'd at the gate which looks towards Cuzar, Timur knock'd at it, but they found it wall'd up. They went round the walls with great precaution, for fear of being discover'd, and in order to find out a part lower than the rest. Timur perceiv'd a place, which he shew'd Abdalla, and which he thought proper to fix the ladder against. After this discovery Timur return'd by the same aqueduct, took horse, and rode with all speed to his troops, with whom he march'd immediately for the taking of Carlchi. He left forty three men to guard the horses, and sent a hundred to the walls with their ladders, which they had brought from Bourdalia, who also pass'd by the aqueduct we mention'd, being conducted by Abdalla, whilst Timur remain'd with a hundred soldiers.
at the gate, to watch the time when it should be open'd in the morning, that he might enter the city.

Those brave men who, according to Timur's order, went to the foot of the walls, fixed their ladders at the place agreed on; and scaling the walls, ran sword in hand to the gate, where finding the guards drunk and asleep in their mistresses arms, they put'em all to the sword. The Dervise Buke broke the lock of the gate with his battell-ax, and made way for Timur and his company to enter; who order'd the trumpets to sound, and the soldiers at the same time to run to the castle, which they did with great crys. This struck terror into every one; and the inhabitants, who suspected nothing, being awak'd by the noise of the trumpets, thought there was an earthquake, or that the day of judgment was come. Timur, by his good conduct, made himself master of the city, while the troops seiz'd on the castle, where they took the son of the Emir Moulla, prisoner with all his domesticks, whom they bound, and cast into prisons and pits. Mehemed Bci, son of the Emir Moulla, who afterwards was a confederate with Timur, being then very young, directions were given for concealing him, in order to his escape; that when he shou'd get to his father, his army might be intimidated, and disperse. He went that fame night to his father, but the army did not disperse, as was expected, because the Emir Moulla sent immediately to Malek Behader, to give him notice of the city's being surpriz'd. These two princes join'd their troops, and about noon besieged the city with 10000 horse. The Emir Moulla, who was of the house of Tadjgut, posted himself before the gate of the city, and Malek Behader encamp'd with the troops of the
the Coronus over-against the gate which looks towards Cuzar. Timur himself refolys'd to guard the gate of the city, and had for his lieutenant the Emir Moussa Bouga: he order'd the Emirs David and Munot to defend the gate of Cuzar; and aigued to the Emirs Siorgatmich Aglen, Abbas, Hulleen Behader, Abooga and others, the care of the towers and walls.

The Emir Munot Eriat made a fally, in which he was the thirtyeth man, and fell furiously upon the besiegers sword in hand. In this rencounter he fought with so great valor, that, in a manner, he eclips'd the great exploits of Roustem and Esfendiar: he took sixty horses from the enemy, after having kill'd the riders, and brought 'em into the city, fighting all his way back.

In the mean while Durke Behader, who left the enemy, following the example of fortune, who had turn'd her back upon 'em, came into the city, and submitted to Timur.

This prince had refolys'd the same day to fally out, and to make his enemy's feel the strengthe of his arms; but the Emir Seifeddin, who was skil'd in astrologie, and predicted strange things by geomancy, represented to him that it was not advisible to undertake any thing that day, because the hour of nine the next morning would be more fortunate: his advice was taken, and the fally was put off till next morning. On the besiegers side Tizektihi Behader approach'd the gate with two hundred men, who erected their lances and bucklers in token of dehance; for which reason they kept watch all night in that post: but in the morning Etchi Bouga and Akiturkur let down the bridge, fally'd out with fifty men, and sword in hand fell upon the besiegers, of whom they made a terrible slaughter,
Timur order'd Alichah and Dervichee Bergongi, with twenty horse, to relieve their foot, who then oppos'd as many horse. They went accordingly, and gave great proofs of their valor and good fortune.

On the enemy's side Tagi Bouga came to the attack with sword in hand; but Alimur hop'd his pallasge, and unthors'd him.

Among the cavalry of the Emir Moulla there was a young Uzbee, exceedingly courageous, or rather rash, who already imagin'd himself a considerable person: he prepar'd for the batail, took in his hand a great war-club, and advance'd to signalize himself by some eminent action. Cazan Bouga boldly oppos'd him, and fell so dextertously upon the young man, that he was not able to defend himself, whilst Benghi cut him cross the body with his sword.

The Emir Sar Bouga and Eltchi Behader fought briskly near the gate: they continually let fly a shower of arrows on the enemy, and so terribly gun'd 'em, that victory declar'd herself for the besieg'd. Fear got possession of the enemy's hearts, who, to escape the more expeditiously, shing away their large bucklers, call'd Tonsa; and covering their heads with their little shields, retir'd into the retrenchments they had made: but our men pursu'd 'em, and drove 'em beyond their standards, that they could not save themselves; and so they fled as well as they were able into the suburbs.

A body of a hundred men of the enemy, commanded by Toutkel, assaulted the city on the other side: and their foot ply'd their arrows with so much dexterity, that they contriv'd our soldiers to retire: but Timur sally'd out with fifteen horse only, and insh'd fresh courage into his men. Eltchi Bouga and Behram return'd
return'd to attack Toukel, who was fix'd behind a skirt of the wall, where he fought: Eitchi Rouga got upon the wall, and struck at him with his sword; but he avoided the blow, and fled.

It happen'd about this time that one of our soldiers of the regiment of Corasana with his sword wounded Schah Behram, of which he died some time after. The good fortune of Timur, join'd with the fear of the enemies, caus'd the Emir Mouila, who was the principal author of this war, entirely to forfeit his reputation by flying with the eleven thousand horse he commanded, tho' he was refus'd only by an hundred of men, but who indeed were the most valiant in all Asia. His soldiers were routed and dispers'd; so that there remain'd only Malek Behader, who stood his ground before the gate of Corar with five thousand men of the militia of the Coronas. Wherefore Timur march'd against him; but Malek no sooner perceiv'd him than being seiz'd with fear, he cast away his bucklers, and fled into the camp at Gonbedhuli. Timur pursu'd him, and Malek observing at a distance the cavalry of this prince, lost all his courage, and fled again from that place, while his troops dispers'd. One can scarcely believe a man capable of such intrepidity as to attack twelve thousand horse, inured to war, and excited by a desire of revenge, with only two hundred forty-three soldiers: it is true indeed, the latter fought only to attain glory. Thus Timur, thro' the assistance of heaven, took a city and a fortres in two days and two nights only, made slaves of part of his enemies, pillag'd their goods, and entirely defeated 'em.

The soldiers of Timur enrich'd themselves with the spoils of the enemies, whom they pursu'd to a great distance. Timur order'd the princes
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book I.

res Yalous and Seifeddin to follow 'em as far as the defile in the mountain of Chikidekig, and to seize all the fugitives they should overtake. Then this prince, concern'd at seeing his orders so remissly executed, pursu'd 'em himself, the Emir Daoud marching before him. A hundred of the enemy's horses, who belong'd to the rear of the army, perceiving 'em, divided themselves into two bodies. The left fell upon Eirchi Bouga, and made him turn his back, whilst the right attack'd Timur, who not only sustained the first onset, but even rush'd on 'em with so much vigor, that they gave way and fled; the body on the left, which had fallen upon Bouga, seeing the defeat of the other, fled also; and there remain'd many led horses, which were join'd to the other spoils the victorious soldiers had taken from the enemy.

Timur then perceiv'd Arazou Mule Agha, sister of Bayazid Gelair, and wife of the Emir Moult, who fled with Malek Behadar; he pursu'd her, and call'd to Malek to abandon her, and told him he would save his life, tho' he deserv'd to lose it. Malek laid hold on the promise of the prince, abandon'd the lady, and fled before; nevertheless the lady fled full speed, and Timur, who alone pursu'd 'em, had overtaken 'em, if a valet nam'd Achiktar, who had a bow and arrows in his hand, had not hinder'd him, feigning as if he would let fly at him as soon as he should see him advance. This man was an ill archer; but Timur, who had neither buckler nor arrows, took him for a good one, and was not willing to be blamed for having expos'd his life for a woman; so he took care of himself, while his horse, thro' a caprice, flopt short, which accident gave time to Dolechah Bacchi to join him, who holding his buckler before his head,
The history of Timur-Bec.

head, pursu'd the ladys, and the valet was oblig'd to let fly at him: but he shew'd his unkindness, cease'd defending himself, and fled as fast as the ladys; so that Dolerchah was not able to come up with 'em.

Azrou Mule had then gone with child nine months, and was soon after deliver'd of a prince, who was nam'd Touman Aga. Without doubt the good fortune of this child was the only cause that her enemies cou'd not overtake her: the person design'd for happiness, is happy even from its mother's womb. Touman Aga had afterwards the honor to enter the marriage-bed of Timur.

This prince return'd from Aconbi, which is near Kezilca, which occasion'd joy thro' the whole camp; but the Emirs Yakou and Seifed-din were asham'd, and repent'd for having shewn so much slackness in obeying Timur's orders: his displeasure encourag'd 'em; they immediately depart'd to make reparation for their fault, and pursu'd their enemies: they march'd along the river Chekedalid, and came to the narrowest passidge of the mountain Che-kidgek, where they met the troops of Gelair, and others who had fled; they brought 'em back, and by this means made amends for the fault they had committed.

Timur spend all the winter at Carshchi, contented and glorying in his victorious; and gave the people of this country marks of his clemency and liberality, in relieving poor families, whose ruin the war had caus'd. His chief care was that the art of trade, should flourish in this great city: and he order'd that the grounds round about should be cultivated, that there might be plenty.
Book I. He gave the government of Bocara to Mamutecha, and commanded him to reduce entirely to obedience the inhabitants of that city, to render the country flourishing, and to remit yearly the tribute and revenues to his treasury.

He sent orders to Nikepeicha, who was wandering about Corassum, to come to him; and he gave him the government of Amouye and its dependences, of which he had formerly been the natural prince. Ali Yefouri, who was without any employment at the head of the Yefourians, went to Bocara to find Mamutecha his son-in-law, and with his Yefourians submitted to Timur, whom they had formerly refused to obey, tho' he had several times summoned 'em to do. The Emir Muaid sent Chirm Bei Aga his wife to Macan, and the secretary Furmogi's wife accompany'd her; but they miss'd their way, which caus'd the loss of many horses and beasts of carriage; but a guide was sent 'em, who conducted 'em to Macan, where Timur kept a feraglio.

C H A P. XVII.

Mir Hussein brings an army into the field to oppose Timur.

When the Emir Moulla had sav'd himself from the fury of our soldiers, he fled with the ruins of his troops to the Emir Hussein, who, on the recital of what had pass'd, was very much astonish'd. But the fear and inquietude which seiz'd him did not hinder his recruiting his army, and parting immediately
The history of Timur-Bec.

diately from Saliferai, with design to give Timur battle. He sent before him the Emirs Oladgia Iron Aperdi, Gehancha Ion of Taifou, and Poulad Bouga, with ten thousand men of the Coronas, under the conduct of the Emir Mouifa. They pass'd the iron gate, and encamp'd in the narrowest place of the mountain of Chekidgee, where they prepar'd for battle.

Timur, on advice of their motions, departed with resolution to attack 'em at night. He took the road to Uligus Bagh, a mountain situate in the plain of Veragh; and that he might not be perceiv'd by the enemies, he went thro' the deepest snow. He sent some men by the road which leads to the top of the mountain to get intelligence. They there seiz'd on twenty of the enemies, who inform'd 'em of the state of their army; and told 'em they had pass'd, during the night, by the narrowest part of the mountain Chekidgee, and were encamp'd at Chekedale. Timur, for the greater security, sent spies there, who confirm'd this advice; and assur'd him that the Emir Mouifa, Oladgia Iron, and others, had ten thousand horse, and that they were rang'd by squadrons on the mountain Accaya, where they were encamp'd. Timur had then but two hundred men, whom he put in order, and march'd against the enemies, alway securing the advantage of the ground.

When the two armies were in view, they rais'd hideous cries; but Timur being allur'd of the great inequality of their forces, thought it proper to delay the time, that he might not expose himself to an apparent defeat, which would have tarnish'd the glory of the famous victory he had already gain'd.

He thought himself the rather necessitated to do thus, in that it was the beginning of his
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I.

rise; and that in losing this battle, he should lose all hopes.

The enemy well knew our army was not numerous enough to attack them during the night; but Timur, who was better satisfied of it, preferred his retreat to rash enterprise; and returning by the way of Courlone, without being pursued by the enemy, he got to Carshi, and then to Bocara, whence Ali Yefouri and Mamutecha came to meet him, and pay him their respects; and afterwards he made his entry into the city.

The Emir Yakou had formerly been ill-used by Mamutecha; this governor had caused him to be tied to a horse’s tail, beaten with a stick both before and behind, and made to run in that condition; but as he was always jealous of him, and hated him, he counsel’d Timur to go into Corallana on pretence that his affairs required it; nevertheless Timur would not consent to it, whatsoever instances he made him. The Emir went thither without taking leave of him, accompanied with Seifeddin and Abbas Behader, and they arrived at Macan. Some days after, the news was brought to Bocara, that Moulla and Olandia Irou, the scouts of the Emir Huf- fein, were approaching with a great army. Timur told Ali Yefouri and Mamutecha, that there needed only resolution and valor to preserve the country, and that they should lead the troops out of the city, and attack the enemy by night. But these captains, who had not courage enough to undertake so rash an action, refused to do it, and made appear to Timur that it was better to defend the place, and stand firm against the attacks of the enemy, than to expose themselves to the loss of a battle.
The history of Timur-Bec.

As Timur perceiv'd their cowardice by their discourse, he doubted their resolution to defend the place; and as his affairs regard'd his presence in Coraffana, he went thither. When he was arriv'd at the Gihon, he met ten barks going down; he order'd 'em to be stopped, and they serv'd him and his men to cross the river; thence entering into the desert, he march'd to Merou, and went to join his illustrious family at Macan, a town of Coraffana.

---

CHAP. XVIII.

The siege and taking of Bocara by the army of Hussein. Timur defeats the army of the Coronas.

The Emir Hussein besieged Bocara, which was at first vigorously defended by Ali and Mamutchea; who, after having causs'd the troops that were in the suburbs to enter the city, gave marks of their valor in a fury from the gate of Kelabad, where they briskly repuls'd the besiegers, who, that they might surprize 'em, pretended to fly as far as the tomb of the Santon Seifeddin Bacerxi. These men not being skill'd in the art of war, and imagining the enemy fled in earnest, pursu'd 'em with their lins, axes, and other arms; but as they advanced, Hussein rally'd his troops, who drove them back as far as the gates of the city, killing a great number, whilst the rest with difficulty escap'd, and felling away their bows and arrows, hid themselves in holes and granaries. Ali and Mamutchea would have rally'd some
Book I. Some soldiers to defend the city; but they could not do it. Wherefore being oblig'd to fly during the night, they took the road to Macan, very much troubled at their not being able to obey Timur's orders, which would have been much more to their credit.

The Emir Husein sent men in pursuit of 'em, as far as the Gihon, who flew almost all of 'em, and took possession of their baggage. With great difficulty Ali and Mamutecha lately past'd the Gihon with some of their servants: they went thro' the desert to Meron, and at length had the honor to see Timur at Macan, of whom they begg'd pardon for their fault. Timur gave them horses and furniture, and took 'em again into his service.

Thus the Emir Husein made himself master of Bocara, where he liad some time; then leaving the Emir Calil with some other Emirs and good troops to guard the city, he return'd to Sal-serif.

In the mean while, Timur learnt that Nikepeicha, to whom he had given the government of Amouye with its dependences, had behav'd himself as an enemy, and not only misgravely seiz'd all the soldiers who would have lifted themselves in his service, but had even kopp'd his domesticks. This news put Timur in a passion; wherefore he departed that night by the road of Pourtghul with six hundred men, and arriv'd at the Gihon, when the river was overflown and extremely rapid. He himself look'd out for a passage, and at length chose that which is at the foot of the mountain of Bourdali, and order'd the Emirs to go down lower on the banks of the river with four hundred horse. This prince, follow'd by twenty men, enter'd into the river at nine o'clock in the
The history of Timur-Bec.

the morning, and swam till half an hour past Chap. II.
twelve before they got to the other bank; they
then march'd all night, and next morning found
themselves at the town of Amooye, where Nikepeicha was. This governor being valiant,
a good horsemann, and dexterous at the bow,
pit himself in a posture of defence; but his in-
gratitude was fatal to him, for on his shooting
his first arrow, the string of his bow broke,
and the arrow stuck in the buckler of Carai
Behader, who, with Durke, fell immediately
on him, and bound his hands behind his back;
wherefore one may well say, that his treason
had furr the cord with which he was bound.
Timur order'd banks to be brought from the
other side the river, in which the princes cross'd
with the four hundred men.

About the same time Timur had advice that
the army of the Coronas was encamp'd in the
neighbourhood of Bocara: whereupon this
prince being resolv'd to attack them, departed
thence, march'd all night, and met 'em in a
place call'd Birmas: the two armys fought with
extreme vigor: till at last the advantage fell
on our side, for the Emir Calil general of the
Coronas was at length vanquish'd.

After this expedition the victorious Timur
past'd the Gihon, and encamp'd a whole month
in a place nam'd the hill of Caraoul, where
are wells and cisterns; from thence he went to
Macan, where, soon after his arrival, he pun-
nish'd Nikepeicha for his ingratitude.
The history of Timur-Bec.

C H A P. XIX.

Timur sends an ambassador to Malek Hussein at Herat.

TIMUR at his arriv alat Macan, sent the Emir Yakou in quality of ambassador to Malek Hussein prince of Herat; who gave him a handson reception, and spok'd nothing to convince him of the union he desir'd with his master, telling him he wou'd go express to Serac, and if Timur wou'd give himself the trouble to come to that place, they wou'd ter into a strict alliance, which should be confirm'd by solemn oaths. The Emir Yakou gave Timur an account of this negotiation; but our prince having been formerly in this country with Hadgi Berlas his uncle, he remember'd all the bad actions the race of Malek was accus'd of.

When the Emir Norouz son of Argou Ağa had all the power in the country of Coraflana in the reign of Cazan Can, Malek Fadhreddin, uncle to Malek Hussein, had been shut up by his father Chamfeddin Kert in the citadel of Kufar in the country of Gour. Norouz having obtain'd his freedom of his father, gave him in marriage the daughter of his own brother the Emir Hadgi, with the government of Herat; which was the cause of his rise. But when Cazan Can's inclination towards the Emir Norouz, was chang'd thro the calumny of some slanderers, and the Can had put to death his brothers and relations in Media, and sent the Emirs Cotuccha and Manhegut to take Norouz himself, this prince confid-
The history of Timur-Bec.

...ding in the obligations Facereddin ow'd him, Chap. 19. and the alliance they had contracted, fled to Herat for succor, where he found the more willingly, in that Facereddin gave him a handsom reception, and renew'd his protestations of friendship, which he confirm'd by an oath. Nevertheless the Emir Cotlucche was no sooner arriv'd at the gates of Herat, than the traitor Facereddin committed the most vile action in delivering up his benefactor the Emir Norouz into the hands of his enemies, who presently put him to death. Cayafeddin, brother of Facereddin, and father of Malek Hullein, behav'd himself in the same manner in the reign of the Sultan Abousaid towards prince Chouban Selduz his benefactor, unjustly putting him and his son Chelaocan to death, who fled from Sultan Abousaid to him for refuge, because he had promised and sworn to protect them. Tho the Emir Chouban had always blam'd the conduct of the Emir Norouz, in fleeing for refuge to such traitors, laying, It was wrong to prefer the prison of a citadel to the liberty which might be procured by flight: yet he did the same, and the like misfortune happen'd to him. As the fact is related at length in my best of Preliminary, I have but slightly mention'd it here, to shew that Timur's foresight did not permit him to rely on this prince's promises; tho' on the other hand his generous temper pointed out to him that it would be unhandsom, if in requital for the good entertainment Malek Hullein gave his ambassador, he should behave himself with incivility and scorn, wherefore he sent to him his own son prince Gehanghir, who was the eldest and dearest of his children, accompany'd by Mobarakecha Sendgeri. And because we are oblig'd to
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I.

To return greater civility than we have receiv'd. Timur order'd him to tell him in answer to his obliging expressions, that for a proof that he confided entirely in him, he had sent his son, and left in his kingdom his family, and all that belonged to him, because he design'd to return to his native country: he added, that he did not doubt but Malek Husein would follow the generous sentiments which kings ought to have, in being faithful in what is entrusted to them, and that he should be well pleas'd with what he did, because from great men ought to proceed only great actions.

Chap. XX.

Timur defeats the army of the Emir Husein in Transoxiana.

As providence had design'd the crown for Timur, this prince was not permitted to taste the pleasures of Corassiana, whilst he could acquire glory: he was excited therefore to depart out of that country to seek laurels elsewhere, tho the security he was in, and the good order of his affairs were powerful motives for him to stay there.

At this time almost all Transoxiana was in subjection to his enemies, who had every where troops in garrison; yet he departed with his hundred men only for that country, crossed the Gilsen, and having march'd all night, arriv'd next morning at Neytan, that is to say, the field of reeds, where he laid all that day in a garden to refresh his horses, and at length paiz'd
The history of Timur-Bec.
pafs'd by Jouibari; he march'd all night, and Chap. 25. arriv'd at Carfchi on that side of it which
looks towards Cazar, and he inviol'd it with
his troops.

He met many of the domesticks of the Emir
Moulla, whom he feiz'd and bound; the rela-
tions of Caifer Anandje, Courdet and Ourdu-
chah fled with their men; Dourke and All Be-
hader bought some merchants whom they took
to be enemies, and after having us'd them ill,
took from them some bales of brocade, which
they brought to Timur, who order'd all to be
restor'd to the merchants, without reserving the
least part.

There were at this time five hundred men of
the Coronas at Conzimonac, whom the Emir
Soliman Yefouri join'd, as also Barat Coja and
Hendoncha, with their troops: Anandje and
Courdet pafs'd by Cazar, with a design also to
join 'em.

Timur, ignorant of what had happen'd, de-
parted from Carfchi at limb; and arriv'd at
midnight at Neagat, where he learnt news of
the Coronas, and of the troops which had join'd
then; this oblig'd him to be upon his guard,
so that he went out of Neagat the sooner, and
halt all night in the plain of that town.

The next day he decam'd, and in their
march Emir Yakhun fell from his horse, and was so
dangerously wounded that his health was very
much impair'd: wherefore Timur sent him to
Macon accompany'd by thirty men, and then
march'd vigorously against the Coronas. All
the brave men thought it best to give 'em bat-
tel; except Ali Yefouri, whose relations told
Timur of it, who compell'd him to take horse:
All Behader and Archaga were fear before with
fifty troopers for the forlorn hope; and on the
enemys
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I.

The enemy's side Hendoucha was at the head of three hundred horse. These scouts soon came to blows; there ensued a bloody fight, in which the bravest warriors lost their lives. The Timur's soldiers were fewer than their enemies, yet they defeated 'em, and beat 'em back as far as the body of their army. After this expedition Timur gave time to the cavalry to rest, and did not take horse himself till noon; then he divided the soldiers into seven bodies; and because the enemies were by far more numerous than they, he made the following speech to encourage his men: "This day, brave soldiers, is a day of dancing for warriors; the dancing-room of the heroes is the field of battle; the cries of war are the longs sung and danced to; and the wine which is drank is the blood of the enemy."

Timur left the Emirs Daud, Sar Bouga, Husselin Berias, Selfeddin, Abbas, Achouel, Hindou, Eltechi Bouga, Dourke, and Ali Behader, each in his own post; advanced himself to view the enemies, and at their approach divided his troops into two wings, commanding in person the main body.

When they were in view, the Cheiks Bedreddin and his son fled, Ali Yelouri and the two horsemen who accompany'd him did the same; but this did not hinder Timur's rushing upon the enemies like a lion. The battle did not last above an hour, victory declaring for Timur, who entirely routed this vast multitude. Our victorious soldiers pursu'd 'em, and drove 'em as far as Chekedalies; taking their principal officers prisoners, with much cattle and baggage, and enriching themselves with the booty. Among the prisoners were Oladgia Irou, Taycani and Poulad, who had once been
been of the number of Timur's best friends, wherefore our soldiers put them to the sword, and laid their heads at the feet of the great Timur, who con'd not see these illustrious men lie dead without grief: he order'd that their bodies should be carry'd to the city of Kech, that the Imams might pray for 'em, and funeral obsequies might be perform'd in a sumptuous manner, tho' they had us'd hostility against him.

After this defeat he would not give the enemy's time to recover their loss, nor to levy fresh troops; but resolves'd to pursue 'em as far as the fortress of Chaduman, and to put his army in order, to march directly against the Emir Husein: but the princes refused to follow him, representing to him, that their opinion was, that he ought to abandon this enterprise, and return to Samarcand; to which he consented.

Timur having got together the troops of Kech and the neighbouring places, departed for Samarcand, leaving Termagien Aigouri and Taghichah at Kech, to take care of his revenues, without over-taxing the people. At his arrival in the neighbourhood of Samarcand, Ouchecara Behader, governor of that city, sallied out with the troops of the Emir Moulla, and stopp'd at the bank of the rivulet Rahmet. Timur divided his soldiers into two bodies, and at the first onset routed his enemies. Aktimur Behader pursu'd Ouchecara, and striking at him with his sword, broke his quiver and arrows; but Ouchecara turning himself upon his saddle, answer'd him with another blow of his sword, with which he smote the head of Aktimur's horse, which fell under him: so that Ouchecara fled, and enter'd into the city. Timur encamp'd in a place call'd Retin, while Ouchecara got together fifteen hundred men, whom
Book I. whom he equipp'd to advantage, and made a second Sally. The soldiers of Timur march'd against 'em like roaring lions, and so affrighted these new troops, that they fled without fighting; and re-entering the city, block'd up the streets to hinder the cavalry from passing. Their fears were so great, that they got in their horses all saddled with the greatest expedition, their saddles being much bruise'd, so that they were but badly equipp'd; the soldiers likewise being reduc'd to so great misery, that they hid themselves in the filthiest places.

Timur laid some days in the delicious country of Sogd, where he chose for his pleasure-houses Ferinkunt and Sagrune, two very agreeable villages.

In the mean time he had advice that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were advancing with a great body of the Coromans. Taghishah also arriv'd, and confirm'd this news, adding that a troop of soldiers had fallen upon Termaginun unaware, and put him to death.

Timur departed from Sogd, to encamp with his army on the bank of the rivulet Yam; to which place Argounheh, native of Bure-dale, whom Timur had sent to gain intelligence, brought with him a soldier, who told Timur that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were encamp'd on the rivulet Toun, and that the Emir Hulsein was arriv'd at Carshch with a great army. On this Timur imagin'd it best to wait a more favorable opportunity to revenge himself on his enemies.

He disbanded the army he had rais'd at Kech and the neighbouring places; and with the six hundred men who were with him before his pasting the Gihon, march'd towards the lowermost part of the river of Samarcand.
The Emir Hullein had already given orders to the Emir Monfia and Ouchecara Behader, to oppose Timur in his passage; for which reason they were marching to encamp with their troops at Kuleider Atchighi, to give him battle.

Timur arriv'd there, and attacking them full, they fled, and sav'd themselves with great difficulty in the city of Samarcand.

Timur came to Sagrouge in the night, and having given time to his cavalry to rest themselves, he departed in the morning, and arriv'd in the evening at Caradgie: he set our next morning, and came down to a place call'd the camel's neck; he went thence in the evening, and marching all night, arriv'd at Kukene; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, where he staid one night. And as Kei Cosra and Behram Gelair, who sied with the Can of Gete, had brought thence seven thousand Getes commanded by Coutchoun Timur and Chiraul, and had flopp'd at Tachhant, Timur went towards that part of the country, the Can having order'd that the army and the people of the country shou'd rendezvous under Behram Gelair, who by virtue of that order ought to be Emir or governor of that city. But Timur did not find in Behram that friendship he expected: for tho' Behram had always pretended a great affection to him, after having sworn to join with him against the Emir Hullein, and by the assistance he had receiv'd from Timur's troops was establish'd in his own inheritance, and had got the advantage over his enemies; yet when this prince requested him to serve him in the condition he was in, he had no regard to his promises and treaty's, but forgot all the obligations he ow'd him, and refus'd to render
him the service he was able, tho' he might have done it with ease, since he had the dispostal of all the country, as collector of the revenues of the imperial treasury.

Timur boldly reproach'd him for his ingratitude: telling him that the union he had contracted with him was the first cause of his rupture with the Can and the Emir Hussein; that this union had been preferv'd inviolably on his side; that he had deliver'd him out of misery, and help'd him to recover the command of his Toman, which he could never have done without his assistance; that after he had been beaten by his enemys, he had been the cause of his gaining the victory over 'em; and that when he saw him have troops sufficient to assist him, he came to him: but because after all these kindnesses he had treated him with so much baseness, he did not doubt that he shou'd one day see him at his gate in the same miserable state from whence he had before deliver'd him. All this in the end fell out exactly.

The Emir Keï Coïn did not treat Timur in the same manner: for after having testify'd to him the joy he felt at his arrival, he conducted him into his palace, where he treated him magnificently, and gave him all possible marks of his good-will, promising to join with him against every one else.

The Emir Keï Coïn had the honor to be son-in-law to Togluc Timur Can, king of Gete; and the prince Toman Cotluc afterwards gave him in marriage the daughter of his cousin Bifun Timur Can, son of Abouken; and he had by this princess a daughter nam'd Rahic Can. Timur demanded her in marriage for his son the Mir-
The history of Timur-Beck.  
xa Gehanghir; and they past'd a whole month Chap. 21. in pleasures and diversions.

CHAP. XXI.

The Emir Husein sends an army against Timur, which is defeated.

The Emir Husein went into the city of Sebz at the head of a great army of the Coronas, and encamp'd at Salar Boulac. He sent before to attack Timur the most considerable Prince of his army, to wit, the Emir Moussa, the Cheik Mehemed son of Beyau Selduz, Oladgia Iton Aperdi, and others, with twenty thousand men, who marched by Samarqand to the river of Balangour. But the Emir Moussa and the other leaders of these troops, who had several times felt the effects of Timur's valor, were seiz'd with fear; which oblig'd 'em to detach from their army three great squadrons whom they fear'd before, with orders that every one should keep a particular way to wait Timur's pallasage. Malek Behader was posted in the road to Suzangheran with three thousand men; Gehanchah in Rebat-Mule with fifteen hundred troopers; and Kherman with a thousand men at Dizac to guard the pallasage of Bitti Codac.

Timur, who was not disturb'd at the great number of the enemys, being accompany'd with Kei Cofru, took with him two thousand Getes to oppose 'em. He went before with fifteen hundred men from a place call'd Cavans; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, and in the night attack'd Gehanchah, whose troops he dispers'd.
dispers'd: the next day he went to Dizae, where he attack'd Kherman and beat him; and permitted his soldiers to pillage his baggage. He laid at Dizae to give his cavalry time to rest themselves, and left there three hundred Getes to guard the spoils of the enemy. He then departed with two hundred horse only, to attack Malek Behader: he sent before him thirty of his bravest and most experience'd soldiers; four scouts went also to the right and left to make discoveries, and he follow'd em himself with a hundred and sixty six men.

When the enemy's saw these thirty men so well equipt advancing towards em with great belones, they were surpriz'd, and thought it was the vanguard of the Moguls army, that is to say, of the Getes, and that the main body was behind. This thought, join'd with the secret fear they had of Timur, caus'd the troops of Malek to fly. Our men parli'd em, and shott'd a great number; these cowards, who were fill'd with the fear which Timur had caus'd in them, approaching the Emirs Moufia and Oladgia Ion, also brake terror into them; and tho they had twenty thousand men complete, they deamp'd the same night, and fled in so great disorder, that no one flaid for his comrade, because every one being under apprehension of death, fled full speed to rejoin Huf-fin.

The prince Kei Cofru sent to inform Timur that the army of the Getes had plunder'd the Mulfulmans; that after having made many slaves, they had return'd by the way of Dizae; and that he expected Timur with a hundred men in Rebat-Mule. This news griev'd Timur, who presently went to Kei Cofru, to acquaint him, that
that it was not right to leave the Muffulmanos in the hands of the infidels.

Upon this they held a council, wherein it was resolved that sixty chosen men should be sent in search of the Getes in the mountain, to molest 'em, and perhaps put 'em to flight; in which case it would not be difficult to deliver the slaves from the hands of the barbarians. In short, these sixty men had no sooner raised a dust on the mountain, than the Getes were afraid and fled, abandoning the slaves and booty, of which our soldiers easily made themselves masters.

After this expedition they returned, and Timur crossed the Gihon, and went down to Comrat.

When the Emirs and soldiers of Hufelin, ashamed, poor, and miserable, were come to him, he fell into a great passion, and after a sharp reproof, told 'em they too well deserved the misfortune which had befallen 'em. He departed with the Can very wroth; and when he was at the white mountain, he chose ten thousand of his best soldiers, encouraged 'em by his discourse, and sent them away as scouts, with order to cross the Silhen at Cogende, and to march with all expedition to give the enemy battle.

About the same time that Timur received the news of the march of Hufelin, there fell a terrible shower of hail throughout the country; and this happened during the night, and the darkness was extraordinary, yet he mounted his horse immediately, and the Emir Kei Cosro assisted him with his forces. They departed to-

---

1. The Getes were idolaters.
2. At Kudel, or Azeria.
together at the head of fifteen hundred men, and at midnight arriv'd at the passage of Barbin; they seiz'd it, and order'd the trumpeters to be sounded, the noise of which, join'd to the fear the enemy's were in, caus'd this army, so formidable and numerous in comparison to that of Timur, to be seiz'd with a panic. It cross'd the river, and march'd all night to find Husein; the soldiers appear'd before their general with shame, and the general was afflicted at his bad fortune. During these transactions, Behram Gelair, without following the advice of Timur or Kei Cofru, departed from Tachkunt with the army of Geste, to return home, and took the road to Seiram. As the furniture belonging to Timur and Kei Cofru were with Behram, these princes were constrain'd to follow him; and when they were arriv'd at Seiram, they found em left in the village of Tekemilunt, from whence Behram was already departed.

Timur sent Sar Bouga and Aboouga Behadet to Geste to the Emir Chamfiddin and Hadji Bet, to get their assistance; and then he confer'd with Kei Cofru concerning the place where they should take up their winter-quarters, and it was resolve'd that Kei Cofru shou'd go to Otras, and that Timur with his five hundred men, on whom he very much rely'd, shou'd return to Tachkunt.

The Can and the Emir Husein consider'd, that the winter approach'd, and that with all their efforts they wou'd be able to gain no advantage over Timur, because this prince by his wise conduct had defeated all their enterprizes, notwithstanding the numerous armies they had got together; they therefore left at Samarcand Poulad Bouga with a troop of their bravest soldiers.
The history of Timur-Bee

soldiers to guard that city, and return'd to Chap. 22.
Aberulthrai to pass the winter there.

C H A P. XXII.

The Emir Hussein again seeks to make peace
with Timur.

After the winter, Sar Bouga and Aehonga
Behader, whom Timur had sent to Gete,
return'd, and brought advice that a great army
of the Getes were marching to his assistance;
and because this prince usually succeeded in his
undertakings, and defeated the greatest armies
with few soldiers, the Emir Hussein resolv'd to
make peace with him: and he the more earnestly
desir'd it, in that he learnt that the army
of Gete intended to come over to this
prince in the spring. He imagin'd he should
not be able to resist him when at the head of
a great army, since with a handful of men
he had ruin'd all his troops, and if he
continued the war, he must expect the fatal con-
sequences of it; for this reason he thought it
proper to apply himself to the doctors of
Cengde and Tachkunt, and beseech them to
prevail with Timur by sentiments of piety, and
to inspire in him, thro' their wise counsels, a spirit
of union and peace, instead of that of discord
and war. These doctors did not fail to come
and seek him: after having made vows for his
prosperity, they told him that being persuaded
of the respect he bore to men of their character,
they were to hold it a thing which con-
cern'd both religion and the state. "You
shall know," said they, "the war between you is
the
The history of Timur-Bec.

"the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and of the misery of the people; and that at present a strange army is on the point of coming into this country: the infidels will plunder the goods of the Mussulmans, and bathe their hands in their blood; and if they are conquerors, which God forbid, they will not spare even you; the hatred between you will cause strange effects, and ruin all the ancient families of the empire. We hope that, following the inspirations of him who has always given you the victory, you will change this hatred into friendship and peace, that the affairs of the empire may be refor'd to their former state, for the good and security of the people."

These remonstrances were follow'd by a dream of Timur, which at length caus'd in him a resolution to make peace. This prince dreamt that the Sihon was overflow'd, and that he was set on a plank of wood on the water; that he fell down on his face, and pray'd without intermission to be deliver'd from the danger he was in; that his surprize made him swoon away, and that when he was return'd from his swoon, he found himself on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, from whence, looking behind him, he perceiv'd a boisterous sea. When he awak'd, he interpret'd the dream after this manner: he imagin'd the sea signify'd an army, and that the deliverance he found in getting on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, signify'd that his desires would be accomplish'd in that very place.

All these reasons oblig'd him to change his resolutions, and to despise the assistance he expected from Gete: he was entirely resolv'd on a peace; but he thought that if he made use of
a mediator in it, it would take up too much time to canvass the reasons on both sides, and to keep up the right of each; that the business would be long in hand, and it was better he should go himself to find the Emir Huflein; that it would be more convenient to have a conference together in relation to the difference between 'em, because they would sooner agree on the articles of peace. For that purpose he sent to Huflein an officer whom he could confide in, called Pentheben, to let him know his design; and at length our prince departed in person to regulate his affairs himself according to his custom. In the mean while the Emir Moulla and Oladja Ito came to meet Timur on the part of Huflein, to ask pardon for all that had past; they renew'd their ancient friendship, and Timur did Emir Moulla the honor to embrace him.

After the preliminaries were settled, the peace was concluded, and these princes disbanded their army. They regal'd each other with several diversions, and then they return'd home. Timur took the road to Kech, and arriv'd at that agreeable country, where all the grandees came to kiss his feet, and receiv'd him with all imaginable civilities. He found at Kech all sorts of satisfaction and happiness, and the people of this kingdom were extremely over-joy'd to possess in peace a prince so dear and valuable to 'em.
The Emir Hussein brings an army into the field from Bedakhan.

The Cau and the Emir Hussein, on the news of the kings of Bedakhan having revolted, fail'd not to prepare an army for reducing them; and as these rebellious princes had also rais'd troops, they went to meet 'em, and the two armys were soon in view.

Malek Hussein, prince of Horat, sent some good troops from Bole, with orders to ravage the provinces thereabouts which were subject to the Emir Hussein; and Timur had no sooner advice of this enterprize than he departed for Kech with his forces to repulse Malek Hussein, in consequence of the peace and union which had been renew'd between him and the Emir Hussein.

When the troops of Malek heard of Timur's march, they return'd back, after having pillag'd Cheborgan and Bole, and all the country as far as Calm, Timur cross'd the river at Termed; but as the Coraffianians retir'd, he advance'd no farther, but went in search of the Cau and the Emir Hussein, who on notice of his coming, made a truce with the kings of Bedakhan, and immediately return'd. These princes met at Condoo, embrac'd each other, and put an end to the aversion they had a long time bore to one another. They made entertainments which lasted several days, went together to the cold country of Ileamieh; and Timur sent orders to prince Gehanghir his son, who was at Macan,
Macan, to come immediately with his family Chap., and return to the agreeable territory of Kech; which he did accordingly.

Poulad Bouga and Acbouga also revolted, Timur fortify'd themselves in the citadel of Cabul, and committed many acts of hostility. The Emir Hullein accompany'd by Timur, march'd with an army to that place to reduce 'em, pass'd by the mountain of Hendoukch, and arriv'd before Cabul. Poulad and Acbouga made preparations to defend themselves with bravery, and fortify'd the citadel.

Our army attack'd the place on every side; and gave many assaults; the besieged vigorously defended themselves from the top of their wells, calling great quantities of stones, and shooting arrows on the besiegers.

Timur employ'd all his courage in subduing the enemy, which he so effectually perform'd, that he took from 'em all hopes of safety; but thro his own and his soldiers courage a great many of his brave officers were slain. Cari Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, and some others were wounded in the attack; but the presence of Timur inspir'd 'em with so much resolution that they at length became victorious; our army enter'd the place sword in hand, seiz'd on Poulad and Acbouga, and bound their hands; and after the taking of the place, the princes return'd home laden with glory.

The Emir Hullein ask'd Timur's advice in relation to the design he had to make his ordinary residence in the city of Balc; and for this end to rebuild the citadel of Hendouan, formerly noted for the height of the walls, the depth of the ditches, and the largeness of the towers: but Timur attempted to dissuade him from this thought, and for that reason told him the
the tragical history of the Mirza Abdalla his uncle, who after the unfortunate death of his father Mir Cazagan, would reside at Samarcand, notwithstanding the counsel of the Emirs who were attach’d to his interest both by duty and inclination, and who cou’d not but reprezent to him, that thus to abandon his native country, and live amongst strangers, was thro want of prudence, because one cou’d not confide in the service or assistance of strangers: but this young prince would not hearken to the counsel given him; and at length what had been predicted happen’d to him.

Timur told the Emir Huflein that he took the same road as his uncle, and that a prince of so great a soul as himself shou’d not be guilty of a like fault, after such an example had been given him.

Tho the Emir Huflein approv’d of Timur’s counsel as very fit to be taken, and as given him thro purue friendship, yet he did not follow it, but was resolv’d to put his design in execution. He departed for Balc, at which place his misfortunes began; and tho it was resolv’d, that at their return from Cabul, Timur shou’d depart for Kech, yet he desir’d him to accompany him to Balc, which he did. Huflein was no sooner arriv’d there, than he began to build the citadel of Hendouan, and to dig the ditches: he gave orders for the men to work there with diligence, made all the inhabitants of Balc come into the citadel, and the city remain’d like a desert; which happen’d in the year of the Hegira 769.

In the mean while advice was brought that the army of the Getes was again upon its march thither. The Emir Huflein, who foresew that he was not able by himself to get over so intricate
tricate an affair as this, besought Timur to do it himself, and to march into Tranfoxiana to repulse this army, telling him all would be lost, if the troops had not for their general the most valiant prince in the world.

**CHAP. XXIV.**

Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Getes.

When the news of the march of the Getes was confirm'd, Timur departed for Tranfoxiana accompany'd by the Emir Moulls. They prepar'd themselves warmly to oppose the enemys, who were arriv'd at Tachkunt, where they encamp'd to pass the winter.

Timur and the Emir Moulla march'd to Samarcand, and encamp'd at Cara Kichlac. The Emir Husein follow'd 'em with the rest of the army, and encamp'd in the plain of Koch. There very fortunately arose a division among the lords of Getes: for Camareddin of the hord of Ouglat, Kepec Timur, and Chiraoul were united with some troops against Hadji Arkenout, who resolv'd to give 'em battle. They took horse with this design; but when they were in view, they made peace, and Arkenout return'd home; but Camareddin and Kepec Timur deceiv'd him, and retreat'd with their troops instead of following him; and then Hadji Bei son of Chiraoul cut off Arkenout's head, and by that means put the army of the Getes in disorder, and oblig'd it to march back again. Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of war, wou'd not attack 'em, but
but said, that when there was a misunderstanding between the generals of the enemy’s army, it was requisite that the sword should be left in the scabbard.

Timur and Moulla sent messengers to tell the Cen and the Emir Husein, that since the Getaes were return’d in disorder, it was proper to pursu’em; but because the kings of Bedakchan had made several interruptions during the winter on their dominions, and had pillag’d the city of Condoz, the Emir Husein thought it more advisable to march into Bedakchan, and put a stop to the designs of those princes.

Since thro’ the valor of Timur there was no further danger to be apprehended from the troops of Geta, the princes Husein and Timur rais’d fresh soldiers, with whom they march’d to Bedakchan; and when they had cross’d the Gihon, and regulated the march of the army, they went to Tücan and Ksoonchian, and encamp’d at Kechem, a place dependent on Bedakchan. Timur, who lov’d to be first in every expedition, departed post, being accompany’d by Gehanmule, son of the Emir Husein; and this last prince said with the Cen in Kechem.

On the other hand, the army of Bedakchan march’d towards the borders of the mountain Korkes, where they stopp’d; their commander imagining that not a bird cou’d pass without their permission; but when they perceiv’d Timur’s horse, they fled. Nevertheless, when they were arriv’d at the defile of Gerem, they were resolv’d again to stand their ground; but as soon as Timur’s standard approach’d, all the troops fled beyond the mountain, cross’d the river Gerem, ruin’d all the country, and seiz’d on all the pales of the river. Timur cross’d it, and conceal’d a part of his men. And when the enemy
enemy had advice that the army had pass'd it, they retir'd by the upper side of Bedakhan, encamp'd in a narrow pass of the mountains nam'd Ortongde, where two great rivers meet: but having advice that our troops were marching thither, they turn'd their backs, and abandon'd it again. They went towards Conghoralensk, and crossed at the utmost part of the Gilon; seiz'd on the other passes of the river which were on this side, and encamp'd there. The scouts of our army pursue'd 'em; but the enemy having prepar'd themselves to give battle, beat and routed 'em; they even made prince Cheili Ali, king of Bedakhan, prisoner. These wretched princes afterwards presented Timur with the horses and all the stocks of their king. Timur, on advice that a troop of the enemy which had fled was retir'd into a defile, went against 'em Gehanmule, son of the Emir Hullein, with troops. He vanquish'd 'em, and took from 'em a great quantity of spoils; but at his return the troops of Bedakhan oppos'd his passage, took possession of Tenkan, and gave him battle. Gehanmule fled, and the victorious enemy recovered all they had lost. They kill'd a great many of our men, disabled six hundred and thirty horsemen, and made themselves masters of their horses and baggage. Balkhi rode post with this news to Timur. The prince immediately took horse, and in a passion march'd to the top of the mountain; but his soldiers being fearful, would not follow him; so he was forc'd to content himself with thirteen horses, with whom he seiz'd on a narrow pass, thro' which the enemies were oblig'd to march: he fell furiously upon 'em, and beat 'em, rejoin'd his soldiers from their hands; and Timur protested that of all the battles he had been in, he had not yet met with...
so rough a one. In the mean while fifty of the enemy's infantry, cover'd with their bucklers, boldly march'd against Timur; and being within shot of him, let fly a great cloud of arrows. At the same time two hundred men came up to their assistance: but, thro' the good fortune of Timur, Etchi Booga ran to 'em, being alone, and on foot. He care'd 'em, and for that reason touch'd 'em several times upon the neck, speaking to 'em in a kind and sublime manner.

"The person you see, just be, is the great Timur: he will restore you your slaves: why do you then fight to no purpose? You know that if you are kill'd or made prisoners, you will hear the blame of having your slaves taken." When the soldiers heard the name of that prince, the respect they bore him hinder'd 'em from fighting. They confess'd their weakness, kiss'd the earth in token of submission; and two of 'em came to him, in a humble manner, to beg pardon. Timur order'd 'em to bring the next morning all the horses and bucklers they had taken from our men; and he promis'd to deliver 'em back their slaves. They consented to every thing he requir'd; and said to him, "We are your servants; whatever you command, we must obey." They then return'd home, after having wish'd him all manner of prosperity. Timur return'd to his camp. The men of Bedakchan got together all they cou'd find belonging to us, besides several presents of horses and other things: next day they laid 'em at the feet of Timur, who kindly accepted of 'em, and order'd their slaves to be releas'd. At length this great prince, by his prudence, valor, and good conduct, with thirteen men only, deliver'd six hun-

* The Tartars present always equall of 9 pices of each bin-
dred, and thirty horsemen who had been made slaves, and recover'd what an army had shamefully lost; having moreover presents made him by the enemy. He at length return'd safe to Bedakihan, where, as soon as he arriv'd, Ti-zekéli Gelaïr, and the troops which had fled, at least those which were come into that city, were sharply reprimanded. The Emirs besought him that he would defer the process against 'em till the end of the campaign; but Timur's zeal would not permit it. He order'd 'em to be brought that instant before a court-martial; and after having examin'd 'em, they were all punished with the bastinado according to their sentence.

During Timur's stay at Bedakihan, the Emir Hufief sent to tell him, that the Cheik Mehemed Selduz and Kei Cofru, after having got together all their friends and some troops, were upon their march, with their ensigns display'd; that nothing but his invincible sword was able to quench the fire of this rebellion; and he besought him to come with expedition, to settle affairs there, according to his usual good conduct. After having dispatch'd this advice, the Emir Hufief return'd with the Can to Saliferai.

C H A P. XXV.
Timur returns from Bedakihan.

WHEN Timur had advice that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz and Kei Cofru were at their ears to make war on Hufief, he took horse and departed from Bedakihan; and as every one foreknew that victory always accompany'd the standard of that prince, the rebels wrote him a letter, in which they represented the cause
The history of Timur-Béa.

Book I. cause of their discontent, and beg’d assistance of him. This letter was intercepted by the Emir Hufein, of which Timur had advice. When he was arriv’d at Archenh, he had a conference on the bank of the river with the Emir Hufein, who testified his joy on seeing him, and observ’d on his side all the ceremonies which were tokens of a kind reception. Timur, because of the friendship they had renew’d and confirm’d by oaths, expected that the Emir Hufein would shew him the letter of the princes, and not conceal his design: because the discovery of a secret is a token of sincerity: but Hufein did not answer his expectation, which made him jealous. He was no sooner got to his palace, than three persons came to him, who told him that the Emir Hufein had resolve’d to surprize and seize on him. All this was confirm’d by a private person, to whom the Can Adel Sultan had writ, that the Emir Hufein had order’d the Emir Moulla to watch an opportunity to seize on Timur; which letter he brought with him. These circumstances increas’d his jealousy, yet he had to great a soul, that he took no notice of ’em, and acted as he had done before.

All these marks of Hufein’s baseness, confirm’d by so many circumstances, did not astonish Timur: he conceal’d this letter, imagining that if Hufein had any design to betray him, he would have done it at their first interview. "Is the "Emir Moulla, say, he, able to seize me? And "can a fox make a lion his prey?"

After he had banish’d from his mind all those thoughts which might give him any discontent, he took horse, and went to find Hufein, to know of him the truth of these rumors. He met him on horseback on the bank of the Gihon: and as he was about to speak to him, there came a bark
bark from the other side of the water, out of Chap. 16, which there suddenly stept forth a man, who whisper'd to Hulfein, "The enemy is near, the army must be got ready." Hulfein, upon hearing this news, thought the best way to overcome the enemy would be to send Timur against them. He told him of it, and instantly besought him to cross the river with his troops.

Timur did as he defir'd; and when he had overtaken the scouts, he put the army in order of battle: but the enemy had no sooner heard of the arrival of the great Timur, than they turn'd their backs and fled. Kei Colfa took the road to Cair Telif, and thence to Altar, whither he was pursu'd by Zendehacham; and the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz fled to Zizi, towards Cogende, to which place Timur pursu'd him: but the Cheik cross'd the Sihon, and fled towards Fachkunt and Otrar: wherefore Timur, full of glory, immediately return'd to Kecli, where he ordinarily resided; whilst every place echoed forth the rumor of his victory.

When Hulfein had provided against the insults of his enemy's, he departed from Arsenk to Balac, where he chose the castle of Handoan for his residence.

CHAP. XXVI.

A second capture between Timur and Hulfein.

WHEN God designs a thing, he disposes the causes, that whatever he hath resolv'd on may come to pass: thus he destin'd the empire of Asia to Timur and his posterity, because he foresaw the mildness of his government.
ment, which would be the means of making his people happy. The least accident in the course of this prince's fortune hath been to extraordinary, that the wisest and most learned men were never able to fathom it; every thing fell out according to his design, thro' the assistance of the divine providence, which had resolved to settle the crown on his head. And as sovereignty, according to Mahomet, is the shadow of God, who is one, it cannot be divided, no more than there could have been two moons in the same heaven; so, to fulfill this truth, God destroys those who oppose him whom providence would fix upon the throne.

Among all the princes who had the title of sovereigns when the rise of Timur began, there was none of greater power than the Emir Husein; but his wicked inclinations soon caused his ruin, and his avarice made him deli've all sentiments of honor and virtue: on the other hand, his self-conceitiveness, and the small regard he shew'd to others, join'd to passion and imprudence in his speeches, render'd his government insupportable, and drew upon him so great an aversion from the people, that they lost all the esteem and affection they had had for him. The good intelligence he kept with Timur-Bec had so firmly supported his authority, that scarce any one refused whatsoever he demanded; and he, who declared himself his enemy, was not safe from the vengeance of Timur, but by flight. In all his affairs, both prosperous and unsuccessful, Timur assisted him as far as he was able, with an admirable courage and intrepidity: he even pursued the Can Adel Sultan, who was jealous of Husein, who he had rais'd him to the throne; this prince fled from his court, and pass'd thro' the country of Kach; but
but Timur feiz'd him after some restistance; and sent him to Hullein. Moreover, the friendship of these two princes was kept up by their alliance in marriage, Timur having espous'd the sister of Hullein: Nevertheless the latter had always design'd to deceive Timur; for tho' he had in appearance repented of the enmity he had conceived against him, and had obtained a peace with so much difficulty, and tho' their agreement was confirm'd by oaths, yet he left not off his former evasions; his unconstant humor, join'd with the malice of his relation Poulad Bouga, and of the Emir Calil, caus'd him to break thro' all his oaths, and the treaty he had made with Timur. He sent men to Kech, to make all Timur's subjects depart out of that city, and to bring 'em to Balc. And because the Emir Musaid had in a drunken fit beaten and kill'd the son of Choaortchi, and fled for it, Hullein sent messengers to bring away to Balc the wife of this Emir, call'd Chirin Bei Aga, the sister of Timur; he design'd the prince Gehanghir, whom Timur his father had plac'd near him, and order'd him to send him forth with the Emir Moula with the troops he command'd. Timur had every day new causes of jealousy, advice being brought him that a design was form'd to seize his person; on the other hand, the secret which Hullein had made of the letter of Kei Cosru, join'd with the assurance Mehemed Beyan had given him that all these advices were well grounded, as in effect they were; and the reflections he made on the present motions and former treasons of Hullein: all this, I say, convin'd Timur of the evil intention of that prince, whom it was not to suspe. In the mean while he held a council with the Emir Moula and the princes he could
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. con'd most confide in; in which he told 'em the Emir Hussein had designs against his person, and that it was prudent for him to prevent their being put in execution.

When the Emir Mousa, the other Emirs, and the principal courtiers of Timur, as the Emirs Daoud, Sar Bouga, Muan, Hussein Behader, Acheunga, Elitchi Behader, the Cheik Ali Behader, and Dolechehah secretary of liate, had heard his discourse, they unanimously agreed that he ought no longer to confide in the treaty or oaths of Hussein, since he always had design'd to deceive him. "God forbid, said they, that we should let slip this opportunity of putting ourselves in a condition not to fear him; for if we do, we shall never be able to recover it, and then repentance will avail nothing; we ought to prepare to oppose him, and employ all our care to carry on successfully so important an affair, that he may no longer have the means of hurting us." After having given thanks to God, according to the custom of the council, they concluded thus: "Since the enemy has always evil designs in his heart, it will be better to proclaim open war against him." Then addressing themselves to Timur, they said, "This perfidious prince designs to ruin you: you ought therefore as a wise man to break off all intelligence with him; by which you'll put an end to his infupportable tyranny, and stop the tears and cries of the people, who expect freedom from your hands."

The Emir Yakou and Dolechehah press'd this home to Timur, who gave great attention to 'em. And after the Emir Mousa had renew'd with this prince a promise of friendship, they conceiv'd a perfect enmity against Hussein; and excited
excited by the opportunity this conjunction afforded them, they began the rupture by the death of Ali brother of Kefer Yefouri.

On further assurance that the Emir Hulfein desir'd to violate his oaths, and had already prepar'd to execute his artifices, Timur resolves on the ruin of this enemy: But as his great soul would not permit him to make use of tricks which are suggested by weakness or necessity, he boldly declared war against him, giving out his orders for troops to be rais'd, and sending Hindou Coreora native of Caphcae, with order to obligate the Cheek Mehemed Began to return, who had fled, and cross'd the Sibon for Otrar.

When the troops were come to the place where Timur was, this prince gave his orders among the scouts and guards; he kept with him the Emir Mousta to command the rear, and departed from Keche in person, after having, according to custom, consulted the astrologers, and taken the happy moment in which he should decamp. He set out before the rest with a great number of brave men, full of zeal, ambition, and hope. As soon as he arriv'd at Casino, the Emir Mousta was surpriz'd with a panicke fear, as usual, went back from his promise, fled, and return'd to Samarcand. Timur seem'd to take no notice of this action; but sent Siorgatmich Aglien, with the Emir Musaid and Hulfein Ber-les, before the rest, as scouts; while himself commanded the guards, and continu'd his march. When these scouts had pass'd the iron gate, and were arriv'd at Termel, the scouts of the army of Hulfein, commanded by Hintlonchah and Calil, perceiv'd 'em, but they soon fled back to Balse.

When Timur was arriv'd at Boya, three leagues from Termel, he met the illustrious
and pious Souton Seid Bereke, one of the most considerable Cherifs (that is, relations of Mahomet) of the venerable Mecca. This famous Cherif, who had acquired a great reputation for his piety and learning, came by chance to this place; he presented Timur with a drum and a standard, which are the ordinary marks of sovereignty; and at length, as if inspired, he sung an hymn, which predicted Timur’s future happiness.

Timur gave Seid Bereke a very magnificent reception, he being one of the most illustrious lords of the house of the prophet. He then joined with him in an indissoluble friendship; and this great Cherif resolved to spend all his days with a prince whose greatness he had foretold; and Timur ordered that after his death they should be both laid in the same tomb, and that his face should be turned sideways, that at the day of judgment, when every one should rise up their hands to heaven to implore assistance of some intercessor, he might lay hold on the robe of this child of the prophet Mahomet.

The great confidence Timur always placed in this Cherif, who was the chief of all the other relations of Mahomet, is too well known to need proofs of it. Their firm friendship was of great advantage to the Mahometan religion, and on that account several people abandoned their error and idolatry to embrace it. This union hath continued to this day among their illustrious posterity; and it is hoped, that having begun so well, it will remain among their descendants to the end of time.

Timur departed from Boya for Jagana on the river Jaganrocque, where he ordered the Emir Yakou to assemble the troops which were in the neighbourhood. Yakou accordingly got together
ther the horse of those countries, as well of the Chapa,
hold of Selishuz, as others, and sent 'em to the
camp; he afterwards went to Catlan to levy
the troops of that country.

When the standard of the great Timur was
arriv'd at the passage of Oubadge, the Cheik
Mohemed Beyan and Hindou Corcora join'd
the army. This Cheik had the honor to salute
Timur, who crost'd the Gihon, and went to
encamp at Calm, the troops of which place
join'd ours. The Emir Oladgis Rou, whom
the Emir Hulein had plac'd in Condor, and
the Cheik Mohemed king of Bedacthan, whom
Timur had invit'd to come and join him, ar-
riv'd also with their troops, and receiv'd particu-
lar favors from Timur; and as they all hated
Hulein, not being safe against his infuls, they
were over-joy'd at the match of Timur, and the
war he had declar'd. They gave several enter-
tainments to testify their satisfaction, and load-
ed this prince with praises: "All the king-
"dom, said they, is oppress'd by your enemy;
"advance like an herc to dethrone him, and
"you will make this monarchy florish." The
Emir Kei Cofru, who had fle'd from his coun-
try of Catlan to Alai for fear of the Emir
Hulein, came also to join this army; and the
Emir Yakou arriv'd at the same time with the
troops of Catlan. In short, according to Ti-
mur's orders, there came from every province of
the empire of Zagatzi a general with his troops
to the camp, which was so fill'd that there was
no room for any more.

All the Emirs and princes of this great king-
dom promis'd obedience to Timur, and gave
publick testimonys of their fidelity in his fer-
so that nothing cou'd be a finer sight than the
camp of this conqueror. Timur sent out a great
number
number of brave men for scouts, which the Emir Husein had also done. The Cheik Ali Behader, who was of prodigious strength, had no sooner perceived the scouts of Husein, than he rush'd on 'em like a lion sword in hand. The encounter was terrible, nothing being heard in the two Mangalai but frightful cries, while the soldiers fell on each side. Catal Behader attack'd 'em in another place, and oblig'd the enemy to fly; and the Cheik Ali Behader took Chuban Serbedal prisoner. Afterwards this great army, being divided into two bodyys, march'd by the face of the mountain; the soldiers, who were always desirous to fight in his service, were fill'd with joy, and made the air echo, LONG LIVE THE GREAT TIMUR.

The army encamp'd on the banks of a river, which runs from the narrow passage of Gheza, near the citadel of Orbol. Here Timur-Bec gave Siorgarmich Agien the title of Can; and after he had regulated his army, depart'd for Balc. He met Zendehesham the son of Mehemed Coja, leader of the vanguard, who came from Cheburgan with the troops of the hord of Aperdi, and join'd him.

This army, consisting of a prodigious number of valiant men, block'd up the city of Balc on all sides, and besieg'd the citadel call'd Hendoun. There was a hideous cry among the Tartar troops; nevertheless a great many horse and foot fully'd out of the city to repulse our soldiers; and the two armies fought with unparallel'd courage till night, when both parties...
The history of Timur-Bec.

drew off. In this battle, prince Omar Chulk, the son of Timur, who was no more than fifteen years old, having given great proofs of his valor, was wounded with an arrow which pierced through his foot; and tho' the surgeons drew a hot iron through the wound, this brave young prince bore it with invincible patience. The next day the king had no sooner shown on the fort of Hulfein, than the two parties prepared for battle. Timur's army march'd at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets: and a party of Hulfein's men fallying out of the citadel to shew their valor, they began the fight, which was very bloody. Hulfein, who at a distance beheld this terrible encounter, conceiv'd his affairs to be desperate, and that he should never be able to re-establish 'em, he therefore resolved to shut up the gate of the citadel, and to abandon his fortune and all his grandeur.

The victorious Timur sent to acquaint him, that if he defir'd his life, he must submit, and deliver up the fort. Hulfein being now reduced to the last extremity, at this time acc'd with prudence: he sent his eldest son to Timur, with the Can whom he had set up: they submitted to him, besought him to spare their lives, and told him they should account themselves happy in being subject to him. Hulfein then sent his other son, and order'd him to tell Timur in the most submissive manner, that since fortune had forsaken him, he fore-knew that the kingdom would be Timur's lot, and poverty his; that therefore he would resign his crown, renounce the riches, grandeur, and other pleasures of this world, being resolv'd to lead a private life, overwhelm'd with griefs and misfortunes, and to request nothing of him but a free passage out of the citadel, in order to go a pilgrimage
pilgrimage to Mecca. Timur granted his request, and order'd that no one shou'd molest him, but that he might depart in freedom at the time he propos'd, and retire whither he pleas'd.

The Emir Husein sent again to satisfy Timur that he would go out the next day; and request'd he would promise him that no one shou'd undertake any thing against his life. Timur granted it; but Husein was so accustom'd to break his word, and therefore jealous that Timur would not keep his promise, that he went out of the citadel the same night with two servants. His affliction indeed had so overwhelm'd him, and he was so full of jealousy, and under so much surprize, that he had forget the place he was to go to; neither had he a soul devout enough to perform the pilgrimage he promised. After wandering for some time he arriv'd at the old city of Balc; and when morning was come, his fear of death, which he was conscious he had deserv'd, made him get upon the minaret ¹ of the principal mosque, where he hid himself. By this were fulfill'd the words of Gelaleddin Rumi in his poems, "That a camel which got upon a minaret, cry'd out, "I am hid here, pray don't discover the place I am in."

As the time fix'd by fate for the death of Husein was come, the concern he was in to hide himself was in vain. A soldier, who had by chance lost his horse, and been every where to seek it, was advis'd to get upon the minaret to try if he cou'd not perceive it from

¹ A high steeple built near the mosques in Turkey, where the cryers with a loud voice proclaim the times of prayer.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. vi.

thence. He went up, and saw the Emir Husein, whom he knew. This prince, who in his prosperity had never shown the least generosity to a soldier, hung down before the man a handful of pearls, and promis'd if he would save him from the danger he was in, he would not fail to requite him according to his power; he besought him with the greatest importunity, and made him swear he would not discover him. The soldier promis'd he would not, and went down the minaret; but immediately ran to Timur, to whom he told the adventure, not forgetting the circumstance of the pearls, nor the in-treatys Husein had made; he ask'd pardon of Timur for the action, and told him, that because he had the honor to belong to him, he cou'd not keep it secret, but was oblig'd to give him this important advice.

The Emirs and soldiers had no sooner heard of this, than they ran to the mosque. Husein, who saw 'em from the top of the minaret, de-foard of his life: he came down very much afflicted, and hid himself in a hole: but by chance the tip of his garment was seen; so that he was discover'd, and brought to Timur with his hands bound. This prince would not break his promise, but said to the Emirs who were near him, "I renounce the right I have of taking away his life, and erase the sentence of his death, by which I might revenge my self."

When he had dismiss'd him from his presence, Kei Cobru, prince of Cbitan complained of the wrong which had been done him, in that Husein had put to death his brother Kei Cobur; he therefore besought Timur to deliver him into his hands, that justice might be done for the crime he had committed in taking away his brother's life. Timur, to appease Kei Cob-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book 1

In, told him he ought to abandon this prosecution, for that his brother's blood would be reveng'd without his having a hand in it; and on that occasion he cited a verse of the poet: Leave him who hath offended you in the hands of time, for time and fortune will avenge you.

Nevertheless, the remembrance of the ancient familiarity, as well as the alliance between Timur and Husein by the marriage of the illustrious princes Turcan Aga, caused so great a sorrow in Timur's mind, that he melted into tears. Upon which the Emir Oladgia Itou, a man of years and great experience, imagin'd that as Timur bore so great affection towards Husein, he might escape from the danger he was in, and when an opportunity was once lost, they would repent of it: he therefore made signs to prince Kei Colru, and the Emir Masaid, to go out of the assembly; which they did without asking leave of Timur, and taking horse, they follow'd the Emir Husein, soon overtook him and flew him: which punishment being due to him according to the strict rules of justice, the protection of Timur avail'd him nothing.

The body of this prince was laid in the tomb of Santon Coja Ucache.

At length the army made themselves masters of the forterefs of Hendedoum; the two sons of Husein, Confaid and Noremz Sultan, paid for their father's faithlessness, for they were burnt, and their ashes call'd into the air; his two other sons, Gehan Mule and Calil Sultan, fled into India, where they perish'd. The Can whom Husein had fer up was also put to death. They brought to Timur the ladies and domesticks of Husein, as also all the treasure and riches he had amassed with so much solicitude and
and avarice. Among the ladies of this prince's seraglio, Timur kept for himself the princesses Serai Mule Canum, daughter of Cazan Sultan Can, Olous Aga, daughter of Beyan Selduz, Ilam Aga, daughter of Refer Yefouri, and Togi Turcan Catum. He gave to Behram Geilair the great queen, Sevenig Cotlue Aga, daughter of Turmechirin Can, Hufein's first wife; he gave Dilehadaga to Zende Hacham, and the princess Adel Mule, daughter of Kei Cobad, prince of Qazan, to the Emir Yakou Beria; he distributed the other ladies of Hufein's palace in the same manner, and gave the daughter of this prince to Eltchi Bouga, brother of Taban Behader.

Timur order'd that the inhabitants of the city of Balc, who had flur themselves up in the citadel of Hendowan with Hufein, should return to the old city, and rebuild it for their dwelling-place. The citadel, after it had been pillaged, as well as the palaces of Emir Hufein, were all raz'd even to the very foundations; and every thing that belong'd to him was so entirely destroy'd, that there might remain no footsteeps of him.

The end of the first book.
BOOK II.
The advancement of Timur-Bec to the throne of the empire of Zagatai. The marriage and death of Mirza Gehanghir, his eldest son. Seven famous expedi-
tions against the Gutes. The conquest of the kingdoms of Carezam and Coreassana; of the empire of Capchae, and grand Ruskia. The establishment of Tacumich Can on the throne of Capchae. The birth of Mirza Charoe son of Timur. The conquests of this emperor in Mazendran, Azerbijana, the country of Fars, which is the true Persia, and in Irac Agami.

CHAP. I.
The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.

AFTER the taking of the city of Balc, all the Emirs, princes and generals of the army of the empire of Zagatai, the Cans of Termes, and the prince of the Cherifs, Seid Buteke, (who, as we have related in the former book,
book, had predicted Timur's advancement to the throne, assembled in this city, and with unanimous consent chose Timur to fill the imperial seat of Zagarai. Nevertheless they waited for the proper season to perform the ceremonies of his coronation; and as soon as that time came on, Timur ascended the throne, placed the crown of gold on his head, and girded himself with the imperial belt in presence of the princes of the royal blood and the Emirs, who all kneeled down before him, and having wish'd him prosperity, made him sumptuous presents, sprinkled handfuls of gold and precious stones upon his head, according to custom, and gave him the title of Sabeh Caran, which words signify the emperor of the age and conqueror of the world, and from that time all the country was subject to his laws.

This prince was then thirty four years old, being born in the year 730; this great action happening in the year of the Dog, one of the twelve years of the Mogul calendar, answering to the year of the Heg. 771, in the month of Ramadan, in which month the alcoran came down from heaven, according to the opinion of all our doctors.

This prince was at first named Timur by his father the Emir Tragai; which name signifying Iron, was given him because of his extraordinary strength; but he was afterwards called the Lion and Conqueror.

In short he hath almost always been invincible, and those who have hated him, or made war on him, have been only the instruments of aggrandizing the honor of his throne, and the glory of his triumphs.

* This custom continues to this day, not only at the coronation of princes, but also at the marriages of private persons.
The history of Timur-Bec.

He began his warlike actions in the city of Balc, which had belong’d to the Emir Huflein; the inhabitants of which place he treated with the utmost rigor, binding some in chains, and beheading others; he destroy’d their houses, and either rooted up or burnt the rest of the country; seiz’d on their riches, which he distributed among his officers, and made their wives and children slaves.

Thus there remain’d no more rebels in that country; the people enjoy’d peace; and there was nothing to be fear’d but from luxury and effeminacy.

As soon as Timur was upon the throne, he open’d the rich treasures of the Emir Huflein, which have been already mention’d, and was very liberal; he particularly distinguish’d himself by his civilities towards the governors of towns, the generals of the army, the Emirs and principal men of the state; enlarging their commissions and honors: at length he dismiss’d them all, ordering ‘em to the places of their residence, that they might administer justice to their subjects.

CHAP. II.

Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortress of that metropolis.

After the taking of Balc, Timur made prince Mourad, son of Tchougam Berlas, governor of it; and having a design to return home, he march’d towards Kech, after having built a bridge of boats over the Gilion*, which is...
is but eight leagues distant from Balc; and Chap. 2 which having happily crossed, he arrived in the delightful residence of the country of Kech, and encamped in the plain of Couchmich, on the banks of the fine river of Cochea. This prince, as he used all his authority to increase the joy and pleasure of the great lords of this country, so he procured to the enemies of the kingdom all the disquietude and trouble he possibly could, during the two months he stayed in these delicious countries. He there ordered carpets to be spread, and feasts prepar'd; giving himself up to pleasures, and sitting upon the throne in his native country, the city of Kech.

The country being deliver'd from the scourge of war, the favorites and officers of the house of Timur, and all those who were attached to his interest, were loaded with gifts, and rais'd to considerable posts and honors. In short, this prince cares'd the army, and particularly the generals; these he cloth'd with robes of honor, after having enrich'd them, and confirm'd the princes in their Tomans, and the commanders of a thousand men in their Hezares.

The Emir Daoud was of this number, and to him was committed the post of Deroga, that is, governor of the city of Samarcand, and chief of the council, whom we commonly call Olave Imaret Divan, or chief of the Emirs of the Divan. The Emirs Yakou, Seifeddin, Abbas, Esbender, Alemcheik, Alasie Coutechin, Ardachir Coutechin, Comari Einac brother of Temouke Coutechin, had considerable commands assigned them in the army, being made Tavatchis*

---

* Lands which furnish a thousand men.

† Tavatchis among the Tartars are lieutenants-generals.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. which are the first poets under the crown among the Turks.

He made Sar Bouga, Hulbein Berlas, Aschoua, Hadji Mahmonodeh, Ketchi Behader, and Dobertsha Behader, Emirs of the Divan; that is, counsellors of state.

He appointed the following brave men, Castai Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, CabanBehader, Dene, Bauchiah, Carahine, Cunne, Apachi Kette, Caxan Bouga Arlan, and Douza Behader, to be captains and lieutenants in his army; and he constituted these illustrious persons, Castai, Cheik Ali, and Akturnur, to be chiefs over the others, making them also his own lieutenants. And in this manner he fix'd every one of his courtiers in the employment which best suited him, and even the meanest officers had great offices, and were advance'd to high dignity.

He then departed for the city of Samarcoand, which for its charming situation, the freshness of its gardens, the strength and neatness of its buildings, and its delightful rivers, makes the small cities in the world jealous of its beauty. This he made the seat of his empire, and the place of his residence.

He caused the walls of the city to be repair'd, and a fortrefs to be erected; he built stately palaces and near publick edifices; assigning the care of this great city to the Emirs of his court.

He appointed the Emir Arsbouga superintendant of the buildings; and while the public affairs went on in a regular course, Timur

* The author calls those Turks in this book which we in Europe call Tartars.
The history of Timur-Bec. 

...purge the empire from the disorders which had crept into it; insomuch that plenty soon flowed in this city, and all the earth was charmed with the justice of Timur's government. In short, the favors and immunities he granted to the inhabitants, and the moderation and equity with which he govern'd 'em, cause'd a vast number of people to settle there, that even Grand Cairo and Bagdad envy'd its prosperity and glory.

The Emir Moulla, who thro' different bad left the court, at the time when Timur depart'd for Bala, and was return'd to his own country, having learnt that this city was conquer'd by our hero, fled to Turkestan. Timur being inform'd of it, dispatch'd Genghi-Coomchin in pursuit of him; and when this general was come up to him, he fought and overcame him, and oblig'd him to retire into the mountains. He there remain'd a vagabond, till the Emir Carlogach, brother of Husain, having pursued him, contriv'd him to alter his road, and to return to the southern countries, whither being follow'd, he at length resolved to cross the Ghouk with his two wives, and to fly for refuge to the prince Zendo Hacham at Cheburgan, in order to excite him to revolt. This unfortunate man listen'd to the rebel Moulla, which prov'd of ill consequence to him, for he soon after lost his life, and his principality of Cheburgan fell into the hands of another.

A city of Corfussia, near the Ghouk and Bala; long, 1320
In. 75. 45.
C H A P. III.

The Couroultai, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, conven'd by Timur's orders.

In the month of June, the same year, the emperor gave instructions for the Couroultai to be held. The Emirs of the Tumans and Hexares came before the throne, according to the orders they had receiv'd.

The princes and kings came also; Zende Hacham, son of Mehemed Coja Aperdi, was the only person who did not obey the orders. Timur, by an express, threaten'd him with punishment if he did not come to the Couroultai. As soon as the envoy met him, he said, "You must come before the emperor's throne, if you would testify your fidelity." Zende Hacham was deceitful on this occasion, pretend'd submission, and answer'd him, "I glory in obeying the orders of the emperor: wherefover he requires my presence, I shall be ever ready with my buckler and sword in my hand; and if he would put me to death, his will be done."

He honor'd and care'd the envoy, and promised immediately to follow him; but he did not keep his word; and a person who came from thence made appear to the emperor, that Zende Hacham was not obedient to him, by the following relation: The Emir Bairamcha Erlac, and his son Yetlandegi had formerly sided with the Emir Husein against Timur; but being sensible of their errors, they were pleas'd with the
The history of Timur-Bec.

the success of this prince; and having learnt the news of his victorys and coronation, were so over-joy'd that they departed immediately from Coratana, to render him their services.

Zende Hacham having advice of it went to meet them; and having carry'd them to a place agreeable for its coolness call'd Dalbeiaia, he regal'd them magnificently; and when the fumes of the wine had got into their heads, feiz'd on both father and son, and binding their feet with irons, committed 'em to the care of his brother Pir Mehemed, whom he order'd in the presence of a great many persons to lay them at the foot of the throne of the emperor Timur, tho at the same time he had privately charg'd him to put them to death. Pir Mehemed carry'd them half a day's journey from the place where they had been entertain'd; and having murder'd them, return'd the same night to his brother Zende Hacham.

As soon as the emperor heard of these violences, he order'd the Emir Oladgia Iton, a relation of Hacham, to endeavor by his good counsel to bring him to his duty, threatening him else with a war, which might bring inevitable ruin upon him.

But as this old man had great experience in all affairs, and knew perfectly the humor of the princes of his blood, he remonstrated to the emperor that it would be in vain to give advice to this rebel, and that he cou'd not do it without being expos'd to an open affront, if his coun-

fel shou'd be despis'd by a rash young man, who ow'd respect to his age: but if his majesty approv'd of it, he wou'd give the commissi

* A province E. of Persia, and S. E. of the Gihon.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II.

his son Coja Youfet. The emperor was satisfy'd with his excuse, and sent Taban Behader with Coja Youfet to Zende Haacham, to persuade him to return to his duty, and to bring him to court. But being arriv'd at Cheburgan, this presumptuous and proud prince, without considering the consequences of his proceedings, seiz'd and bound them in chains.

CHAP. IV.

Timur marches to Cheburgan at the head of an army.

Timur having advice of the impudence and violence of Zende Haacham, was so enrag'd that he immediately caus'd the horse's tail, and imperial standard to be erected, and departed from Koch with an army to reduce him to obedience.

When he had cross'd the Gihou, Zende Haacham, who had fortify'd himself in a castle in those quarters named Schider, that is, the white fort, thought at first to have continu'd his rebellion; but the army having invested him in that place, the sound of the Courke; the noise of the kettle-drums, and the great trumpet Kerrena, joint with the martial cries of the soldiers, terrify'd him so much, that he could find no other remedy, than supplications and groans. He therefore address'd himself to his relation, the Emir Oladgiga Iton, and besought him to intercede for him. The Emir Oladgiga

Footnote:

1 A kettle-drum which is beat at the beginning of the fight.

†
The history of Timur-Bach.

Iron discovered so much goodness and humanity, as to present himself before the imperial throne, where after having groaned and wept, he meekly told the emperor, that Zendo Hacham, sincerely repenting of his evil action, interceded for him to pardon his crime; and he joined his entreaties with those of that prince, that it might please the emperor to decamp and disband his army, so that Hacham being recovered from his surprize, might come before the throne with a sword and banner chief in his hand, to be received into the number of Timur's servants.

Timur remembering the saying of Mahomet, that blessing always attends the words of old men, was pleased with the intercession of Ola-phia Iron; he granted what he asked, and abdicated from the blood of Zendo Hacham, who came out of the citadel, delivered up the Emir Moulla, the author of this confusion, to the servants of the king, and sent Islam his younger brother to serve Timur.

After this happy success, the Emperor took horse to return home, he disbanded his troops, and returned to the city of Seba, the place of his birth, where he not only pardoned Moulla his faults, but also loaded him with favors; and to comfort him for the grief he seemed to have for his fault, gave him a sumptuous banquet, and distinguished him from many others, by honoring him with magnificent veils, and the command of a lord and province.

* It was a custom among the Tartars to carry in their hand a naked sword and a banner chief, when they appeared before their prince, to signify that they were ready to be in his defense, and to lay down their life if he required it.

* Seba is the same place as Debr.
CHAP. V.

Timur sends an army to Balc and Termel.

As Zende Hacham was desirin'd to a miserable end, the excess of his imprudence and pride prevented his reaping the benefit of the emperor's goodness towards him; insomuch that altogether and rebellion. He drew over to his side the prince About Moali, tho' all his friends, and even policy itself, counsel'd him not to be seduced; and these two princes concert together how they shou'd pillage the countrys of Balc and Termel.

When Timur had notice of it, he dispatch'd Caza Behader, and Argoun Chah, native of Bursdale, with an army of valiant men, all greedy of honor, and foremost in the most dangerous actions, and whose leaders had help'd to advance Timur to the throne.

When the Emirs were arrived at Termel with the army, they found a bridge of boats built by the inhabitants of the country over the river Amouye; but some of the enemys, having cross'd it, in order to get away, had demolish'd one end of it during the night; so that the other rebels, who were dismay'd at the sight of the imperial troops, and fled with precipitation,

* A city in Transoxiana between the Gikon and the river of Sagian; long. 100°. lat. 37°.
* A town of Transoxiana upon the bank of the Gikon, at the foot of a mount of the same name, towards Carchi.
* Amoura is the Gikon or Oas, which takes this name while it passes to Amou.
being ignorant of the condition of the bridge, were overtaken by the troops who pursu'd them, and discharg'd a great number of arrows upon them; hereby the greatest part of these unfortunate rebels, threatened both before and behind with death, perish'd by the sword and waters. Nevertheless, as some were got over to the other side with Zende Hacham, this prince was accompany'd in his flight, and he gain'd entrance into Cheburgan, with design to defend himself in that fortress till the last extremity.

CHAP. VI.

Timur sends the Emir Takou to besiege Cheburgan.

TIMUR having learnt that Zende Hacham had fortify'd himself in the citadel of Cheburgan, order'd the Emir Yakou to march and besiege it, which this general, having cross'd the Gilion with the army, did in form; he there pass'd the winter, and Zende Hacham dar'd not appear till spring; but then he came to himself again, and having had recourse to his friendship with the Emir Yakou, he went out of the fortress upon his promise of being civilly us'd; begg'd his protection, and ask'd pardon for his fault. His excuses made the Emir treat him handomely, and promise to use all his interest with the emperor in his favor; he brought him to court, where the Emirs received him with all manner of civility. The Emir Yakou agreed with the princes to carry him to salute the emperor, and kiss the borders of the imperial carpet; they desir'd no other intercessor for the pardon of his crime than the love and clemency
The history of Timur-Rec.

Book II. mency, which emperors usually have for their subjects.

The generous Timur vouchsafed him the honor to speak to him, and told him that he had forgotten his faults, and granted him his life: but it was his own province to preserve it, and not to desire what it was impossible for him to attain; because the crown which he had sought after is an honor which God grants out of his rich treasure to whomsoever he pleases; which is an effect of his boundless mercy, and not to be attained by care or anxiety.

After Timur had afforded Zende Hakham of his protection, he honored him with his counsel; cared for him, and made him a present of many curious pieces, as belts of gold, Arabian horses, camels, lots of mules, and an infinite number of cattle; and even increased his former dignity. Then Zende Hakham wholly devoted himself to the service of Timur, and was lifted among the officers of the court.

CHAP. VII.

Timur marches an army into the country of the Geter.

Timur proposed to march into the country of the Geters, and in the year of the Heg, which answers to the year of the Hegira 777, and of Jesus Christ 1380, he departed at the head of his army.

1. Geter a kingdom, which lies on the East Turchistan; on the South the river Silvan; on the Wall Caschir, and on the North part of Turchistan. It fell to Zagatu, son of Genghiz Can, as his share.
The history of Timur-Bec.

As soon as he had crost'd the Sihan, the Emirs Gomce and Ozenkizumr submitted to him, so that their hords and countrie were entirely at the disposial of this Prince, who gave the government of them to Kepee Timur, and return'd victorious to his capital city.

Some time after he had advice that Kepee Timur, full of ingratitude and pride, had revolted from him; wherefore as Behram Gelair, after what had happen'd at Tachkunt, and his being check'd by this prince, became obedient to him, and had been enrol'd in the list of the officers of the imperial throne, he was order'd, as well as the Emir Abbas, Katal Behader, and the Cheik Ali Behader, to make war on Kepee Timur, and by the sword to put an end to this rebellion.

All the Emirs and other brave warriors readily obey'd this order, and march'd with great resolution. When the armies were in view, the soldiers of the Toman of Behram Gelair, with the content of their captain Berekedgey, an old enemy of Behram, conspire to betray him, and feign to his Person; but the Emir having advice of it, kept in the middle of his corps-du-garde, and hinder'd the execution of their design. In the mean while Katal Behader, having made some useful propositions with regard to the light to Cheik Ali Behader, which he thought not fit to hearken to, imagin'd the Cheik did like his proposal merely that want of courage; he therefore in a passion drew his sword, and having crost'd the river Aiche Caden, alone attack'd the enemy's ranks, of whom he rout'd some; but as their number was very great, they had entirely defeated him, if the Cheik Ali Behader had not follow'd him, and sav'd him from the danger he was in; after which he reproach'd him
book II. him for his rash action, and they join'd one another again. These actions deserve the greatest admiration, as they could never have happen'd but thro' the good fortune of the invincible Timur, under whose conduct they carry'd on the war.

The Emirs made peace with the enemys on the bank of the same river, and then return'd home. They severly punish'd the soldiers of Gelair, who had form'd a design to betray Behram. But when they had the happiness to frustrate Timur, he was displeas'd at their return, and blam'd them for having made peace.

CHAP. VII.

A second expedition of Timur against the Getes.

TIMUR, who was never pleas'd till he had finish'd what he had begun, was troubled at the Emirs making a peace with the enemy, by which they had lost the advantage of a battle.

To repair this fault, he resolv'd to go in per to the country of the Getes; for which reason he sent orders every where to levy a great number of soldiers; when that was done, he join'd them to the old troops, and all rendezvous'd near Samarcand. The emperor had scarce march'd by Seiram* and Penki, with his numerous and formidable army, but in less than a month he became

* At own on the frontier of Gete, North of the Siron, long. 99. 27. lat. 44. 41.
The history of Timur-Bec.

victorious; for the army of the enemys fled at the first rumor of his march. This prince went as far as Senghizi Agadje, leaving with his soldiers a vast number of slaves and great booty; and at length arriv'd at Adoun Couri with the spoils he had gain'd.

In the mean time the following accident happen'd. The Emir Moulla and Zende Ham, notwithstanding the favors Timur had a thousand times bestow'd on 'em, form'd a fresh conspiracy against him with Abou Ifae, and swore upon the Alcoran, that as soon as they arriv'd at Cara Suman, they would seize on him while he was hunting. Every thing seem'd to smile on 'em, and when they were pleasing themselves with the ridiculous thoughts of their shameful project, they did not reflect on the consequences of it.

The prince Aboulmali, son of the Can of Terman, and Cheik Aboulleit Samarcatdi, who had also conspir'd against Timur, were no sooner come into their measures, than a person who was privy to the design, presented a memorial of it to the emperor.

As soon as he had read it, he order'd the conspirators to appear before him; when they came, they were try'd and convicted of the crimes of treafon and rebellion.

But because the queen Serai Mule Canum, was the sister of the Emir Moulla, and the princes Akke Beghi was betroth'd to one of his sons, the emperor said to him, "The crime thou hast committed is great; but because we are related, I pardon you, and will not re-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. "Venge my self: and thus you may say, it was your alliance with me, and extreme old age which saved your life; for had it not been for that, I shou'd have order'd your head, which intended evil against me, to have been separ-
ated from your body."

He also told prince Aboulmoasit, that no harm shou'd come to him notwithstanding his folly, because he had the honor to be of the family of Mahomet; but it was necessary he should be banish'd this country. He also commanded Cheik Aboulleit to retire to Heudjaz. But as to the son of Keder, as he was brother to the wife of Hadji Seifeddin Berias, this lord had recourse to the emperor's clemency, interceded for him; and sav'd him from all harm. After this Timur order'd that Zende Hacham shou'd be bound, and carry'd to Samarcand, where he was kept close prisoner in a dungeon.

At length Timur return'd to Samarcand, the capital of his empire; and he had no sooner dismounted his horse, than he gave the government of Chebargan, and the places Zende Hacham possessed, to Beyan Timur son of Aebouga.

2 Arabia Pars, in which Mecca is situated.
CHAP. IX.

The embassy from Timur to Hussein Sohi, king of Carezam.*

As soon as Timur had deliver'd the empire of Zagatai from rebellion and tyranny, he employ'd his time in governing it according to justice; but having learnt that Hussein Sohi, son of Yanghadai of the Hord of Gonkegrat, had made himself master of the countries of Cat and Kivac, he turn'd his thoughts to the settling of that affair: to which end he sent Alafe Tavatchi with a handom retinue to this prince, in quality of ambassador, to acquaint him that Cat and Kivac belong'd to the empire of Zagatai; that he did not act fairly in seizing on them, as he had done for these last five years, because they were without a prince; and that he must deliver them up with all their dependences into the hands of the officers and commissioners of the state, that union and peace might be kept up between the two crowns, and he enjoy Timur's protection.

When the ambassador arriv'd at Carezam, he faithfully acquitted himself of his commission to Hussein, which he urg'd with the most forcible arguments: but this prince perfir'd in his resolution, and without considering the valor of the soldiers of Zagatai, the consequences of which he ought to have fear'd, he answer'd, That he had conquer'd these countries with his sword,
Book II, and that Timur might recover 'em the same way, if he cou'd.

The ambassador upon his return reported this answer to Timur, which appear'd so unreasonable, that he was exasperated, and at the same time resolv'd to march at the head of an army against Hulfein Soi. But the pious and learned Moula Gelaleddin, native of Kech, who was Mufti * to our great prince, did not like that the vanity of a single man shou'd be the cause of a great empire's ruin; and thereupon having made his submission to Timur, he besought him to let him go to Hulfein Soi, to advertise him of his imprudent carriage, and to admonish him to spare the lives and fortunes of the Mussulmans.

The emperor granted the petition of Moula, and gave him leave to go to Carezem, to settle this affair. As soon as he arriv'd there, he began to give those general advices, which experience'd and learned person's, the Imams, and other wise men, ordinarily use to appease seditions, and quench the fire of war; and he accompany'd 'em not only with arguments, but even with citations out of the Alcoran, and the Layings of Mahomet: yet all his eloquence, how sublime soever, did not succeed.

Hulfein Soi flignted his counsels, and had the boldness to imprison this virtuous Mufti in the citadel; upon which Timur order'd his troops immediately to rendezvous before Samarcand.

* Mufti is the chief priest, who decides the affairs of the law.
CHAP. X.

Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carezam.

In the spring of the year of the Hegira 773, which answers to that of the Mouse, the emperor assembled his army, distributed his treasures, and made presents worthy of the greatest kings. Having done this, he departed from Samarcand, hunted in the plain of Carfchi, and encamp'd at Chahamian; Malek Cayaeddin Pir Ali, son of Malek Azeddin Husein, who, after the death of his father, in the month of Zileade in the year 771, was proclai'md prince of Herat, of the kingdom of Gour, Comhelian, and their dependences, sent thither Hadji Vezir in quality of ambassador to Timur, with many presents of Arabian horses, carriage-mules, and other mules for riding, a great many fluffs, belts and garments. Among the presents was a fine horse spotted like a tiger, call'd Cone Aglen, with a saddle of gold.

Hadji Vezir, on his arrival, having had the honor to kiss the royal carpet, did in a very humble manner inform Timur with how much sincerity and affection Malek his master had always been attach'd to his interest. Timur was intirely satisfy'd with this declaration; and having present'd the envoy with a vest and other

1 A country famous for a victory Timur formerly had obtain'd over the Gerni.
2 A province in the middle of Persia.
things becoming his grandeur, he wrote a letter to Malek full of kindness and good-nature, lending with it a vest of honor, as a mark of the great trust he repos'd in the prince of Herat: after this expedition he order'd the Emir Yakou Berlas to set out for Condoz, Bacalan, Cabul, and the neighbouring places, to govern all that country: he gave him the hord of Bourouldai, and appointed troops to conduct him thither.

The Emir Seifeddin Berlas was left with the government of Samarcand, and the direction of the affairs of that country. Then Timur march'd at the head of his army for Carezom, being excited to it, not only from a desire of acquiring glory by his arms, and dispensing justice to the people, but also by a verse of the Alcoran, which gave him hopes of succeeding.

When the flanard had pass'd by Bocara, the standard was come to a place nam'd Sepaye, situated on the bank of the Oxus, they met the enemies scouts, whom they attack'd and vanquish'd—having bound their hands, they brought them to the camp, as the first fruits of the victory they wou'd probably obtain this campaign; and there they were all beheaded.

The troops continu'd their march, and arriv'd at the town of Cat. Behram Yefaou and the Cheik Musid were at this place under Hullein Sofi; the one in quality of governor, and the

---

1 A mountain near the Ghion, in the kingdom of Bashkiran.
2 A frontier town, N. E. of India, long. 105. 41. 34.
3 The ruin of the Mahometans, on undertaking any considerable affair, it is to open the Alcian, and read the first verse of the first page they meet with, whereas they forced their good or bad fortune; which usage is among them call'd Alcian. The verse which Timur met with was, The victory is certain.
4 A town in Transoxiana, long. 71. 41. 77.
other of a judge. They order'd the gates to be shut up and barricado'd, and having prepared the machines of war, they put themselves in the best posture of defence they were able.

The imperial troops having invested the town, assaulted it with their utmost vigor. And as the attacks were going forward, and both sides were hot, there was no time for treating of peace; arrows and stones fell from the town upon our army like rain, while we had not so much as one engineer in the camp. In the mean time Timur said it would not be to his honor that the siege should be raised without making himself master of the slave of Huslein Sofi, who was commander of the town: he therefore immediately order'd the troops to fill up the ditch with faggots and other wood, and would be present at this work himself. He commanded Cootchei Malek to go down into the ditch; but fear seizing him, Timur gave the same orders to the Cheaux, Comari, who immediately perform'd 'em.

Mubacher and Taceja follow'd the Cheaux, and the soldiers did the same, advancing towards the breast-work. Cheik Ali Behadar was the first who laid his hand on the said work, and would have mounted it; but Mubacher envying him that honor, took hold on his foot, and both of 'em fell to the earth. However, Cheik Ali return'd, and had success; on which one of the enemy's came with his lance in his hand to repulse him; but this

* By this slave he means Behram Yashoul, all the subjects of Afrianic princes, being called slaves.
* Cheaux signifies an aide-de-camp.
brave man snatching it from him, broke it, and struck him upon the head with his sword. Then the soldiers having forc'd a passage on all sides, entered the town, seiz'd the governor and principal inhabitants; and put the greatest part of those who defended it to the sword, as also of the inhabitants, whose wives and children they carry'd away for slaves, after having pillag'd whatsoever they cou'd find.

The next day Timur taking compassion on the slaves, order'd 'em to be set at liberty. He then departed from the camp to Carezem. As he remembered the cowardice of Goutchei Malek, who was afraid to enter the ditch, he command'd him to be bannimado'd, according to the law of Genghiz Can, call'd Yafac'. He was then ty'd to the tail of an ass, and sent to Samarcand.

Cayafezdzin Tercan⁸, of the race of Cachlic, (who had been made a Tercan by the emperor Genghiz Can) was made a Mangalai by Timur, as also was Coja Youlef Oladgia Iron. The Mangalai are those who command the vanguard. Timur sent 'em before with some other brave men, and when they were arriv'd at Djezun Corlan, they found Mangheli Coja and Calec with a troop of the enemies.

Our valiant men began the fight, and carry'd the victory as usual; they put the enemies to

⁸ These laws are set down at length in The history of Genghiz Can, page 79.
⁹ A Tercan is a person who for his good services is so highly advanc'd in the emperor's friendship, that whatsoever fault he commisss, the emperor takes no notice of it, that is, he is permitted to do anything the emperor does. Those only are made Tercans whose virtue has been approved, and their services great. See The history of Genghiz Can, p. 49.

Tercan is also the name of a herd in the country of Zagatal.
the rout, and pursued 'em with so much vigor, that they killed the greatest part of those who fled. At length the emperor commanded his army to decamp with expedition, and to make inroads on all sides; which was obey'd so punctually, that all the provinces of the kingdom of Carezem were ruin'd.

Hussein Soli not being in a condition to defend himself, thought only of securing his persons; wherefore he enter'd into the city of Carezem, from whence he sent an express to demand quarter, and to beg pardon for himself. The envoy said it was a sense of his fault that had excited Hussein his master to try by all means to gain the friendship of the officers of the emperor, that so the fire of war might be quench'd. But the traitorous Kei Cofru Catlan sent a private messenger to Hussein, advising him to trust no body, nor make any propositions of peace, but to prepare his army for battle, and march out of the town, because he would join him with his Toman, and abandon Timur. Hussein rely'd on the peridious Kei Cofru; he march'd out of the city with his troops, follow'd by a great many of the inhabitants in arms; and after having beat the kettle-drums, they rais'd a great cry, call'd Souroun, which is the signal for the battle to begin.

The army was rang'd in order on the banks of the river Caoun, two leagues from the capital of the kingdom. As the greatest part of Timur's troops were gone out in parties to plunder the provinces, there remain'd but few near this prince. Nevertheless he drew up as many as he had in order of battle; and having commanded 'em to beat the kettle-drums and sound the trumpets, he march'd against the enemy.
When he came within sight of them, he encamped on the bank of the Caspi, which separated the two armies. When they were ready to fight, Apatchikelte, Pechei, and Socrar Djiorgatou must'd with their horses into the water, and crossed the river, and the enemy attack'd 'em briskly. Cheik Ali Behader, with five others, also crossed the river: he fell furiously upon Goja Cheikzade, whom he put to flight. Carai Behader and Akimur Behader did the same: and Eltechi Behader had follow'd their example, if he had not been drown'd in crossing the river.

The invincible Timur would also have pass'd the river, if the Cheik Mehemed Reyan Selim had not oppos'd it, and spoke to him as follows: "Prince, it is now our business to fight; your place is the throne, and it is fit you should take your rest." Immediately the Cheik spurr'd his horse into the water, from whence he got out again unhurt. The prince Aboulmeali, son of the Can of Terned, follow'd him; and these brave men who were skill'd in conquering, attack'd the enemy in several places, and repuls'd 'em even to the gate of the city, which they were constrain'd to enter. This oblig'd the victorious army to encamp round the walls: while the troops who had been making of inroads, return'd laden with spoils. Then the siege was resolv'd to be carry'd on in form, and all the passages of the town were block'd up against the enemy.

Hussein Sohi remain'd some time in the fortresses, so full of remorse and chagrin, that finding no remedy for his ill fortune, he dy'd thro' despair.

After his death his brother Yloph Sohi was establish'd in his place.
CHAP. XI.

Timur makes peace with Yusoup Sofi, who succeeded Hussein; and demands in marriage the princess Cauzaade for the prince Gehanghir his eldest son.

Yusoup Sofi, not having committed those insolences which his brother Hussein had on the subjects of our prince, found the means of approaching him by supplication and obedience. His brother At Sofi, son of Yenghadai, had a daughter by his wife Chukur Bei, the daughter of an Usbee Can. The name of the young princess was Sevitt Bei; but she was commonly call'd Cauzaade, that is, the daughter of a sovereign. The poets say, that since the time of Adam, there has not been born of the race of the Cans a virgin of so great a beauty, and that she had the genius of an angel, and the body of a fairy.

The great Timur believ'd so fine a lady the fittest match for his son Gehanghir*, and that this marriage would be a certain omen of his future elevation to the sovereign power. This made him receive with pleasure those tokens of respect and submission which Yusoup Sofi gave him by his envoys.

Timur consented to the peace, on condition of the marriage. This Can esteem'd him-

* The same as Joseph.  * This is, conqueror of the world, self
Book II. self fortunate; and as he accepted it with all imaginable satisfaction, he desir’d the emperor to prepare an equipage suitable to the grandeur of this prince, and told him he would send her to his court as soon as the imperial orders should be deliver’d him.

The affair being concluded in this manner, hatred and discord were chang’d into peace and perfect friendship. The imperial army march’d home out of the country of Yloph Soh; and as soon as Timur arriv’d at the place of his residence, he immediately order’d that Kei Cosru Catlani should be apprehended, and brought before the tribunal of criminals, and that the Emirs should demand his prosecution.

This order was executed, his crimes were proved, and his intrigues with Hulfcin Soh examin’d into; and being convicted, he was carry’d bound to Samarcaud, and deliver’d into the hands of the officers of the Emir Hulfcin, who put him to death, to revenge the murder of that prince: and the emperor gave the Toman of the province of Catlan to Mehemed Mireke, son of Chir Behram, a relation of Kei Cosru.

Timur pass’d the winter in the enjoyment of honors and pleasures; and he particularly employ’d his time in rendering justice, and doing good to his subjects.

* Between the Gihon and the kingdom of Badakshan. It has a city of the same name.
CHAP. XII.

Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezem.

We read in the last chapter of the Alcoran, called Souret Ennas, that we ought to beseech God to keep us from the conversation of malicious men, as much as from the temptation of the devil; because the company of wicked persons is the principal cause of the corruption of the world, as we see in the following relation.

When Kê'î Corîn Catlâmî was apprehended, his son Sultan Mahmoud departed from the court with Abû Isbâ, son of Kédèr Yeâouri; and Mahmoucha Bocari; and retir'd to Ysouph Sòli at Carezem. They spoke publicly in an assembly where he was to promote sedition, corrupt this prince, and make him break the union he had contracted with Timur, which they did with so much cunning, that Ysouph dar'd to violate the treaty he had enter'd into.

In autumn he made inroads into the country of Car, which he laid waste, and dispers'd the greatest part of the inhabitants; but he did not consider the crime of which he was guilty, viz. breaking treaties so soon.

When the winter was over, in the month of An. Dom. Ramadân of the year 774, which answers to the year of the Ox, the emperor assembled all the troops of the countries of Nakcheb, Kech, and without the city of Carâchî; and when

* Carech is a city, and Nakcheb is a country, which are often taken for one another; as is also Nefel.
they were ready, he march'd towards Carezem; and as soon as he had pass'd the sandy desert, Yloph Sofi was overcome by his fear of Timur's approach. He then repented of the fault he had been guilty of, and sought all means imaginable to obtain pardon. He made use of intercessors to Timur; and at length, after having renew'd the treaty, contented to prepare a pompous and magnificent equipage, suitable to the grandeur of the prince's Canzade, who had not the least hand in her uncle's crime, and promised to send her forthwith.

Timur, who was of a merciful temper, dispatched letters of pardon, and at the same time disbanded his army, and return'd to the city of Samarcand, which was the residence of the imperial throne. After which he gave orders that preparations should be made for the marriage.

CHAP. XIII.

The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princess Canzade.

IN the month of Chawal in the year 775, which answers to the year of the Leopard, spring being come, Timur sent to Carezem the illustrious prince Valghiar Berias his relation, and who sprang from Lula son of Caracchar Noviazi, and the Emirs Daoud and Ozom Oludjia Iftar. These princes departed with presents worthy of their emperor, to demand the illustrious princess Canzade, and to conduct her to Samarcand.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Yloph Sofi, at their arrival, gave 'em a magnificent reception, and paid 'em all imaginable civilitys; their entry was pompous, and he neglected nothing which might shew the respect he bore to 'em.

They behaved themselves in like manner towards him, with all the kindness which cou'd be expected from 'em: they offer'd the presents they had brought, which where gold mony, rubys, musk, amber, velvet, gold and silver brocades, silk, China satins, and other curious stuffs; vehicles of the gold of Carai, adorn'd with precious stones, magnificent habits, women slaves, and the finest horses.

Yloph Sofi, after having made a magnificent feast, and treated the ambassadors like emperors, accompany'd Canzade a great part of the way, and sent her to Timur with an attendance worthy the greatest princes. He presented her for her portion a very rich crown, and a throne of gold, bracelets, ear-rings, necklaces, girdles of gold, precious stones, several rings, boxes and coffers full of emeralds, rubys, pearls, clothes and furniture in boxes, with locks of gold; besides several magnificent beds, canopies, pavilions, tents with one and many pillars; and also with furniture of several sorts, sufficient to fill many caravans.

The ambassador sent an express post to Samarcand, to let the emperor know they were at some distance from the capital; who being inform'd of it, resolv'd to give a magnificent reception to Canzade. For this reason he order'd Corrizca Catoun, wife of Caidu Can, and all the other ladies, as well as the princes and Emirs, to receive her with all the honors usual on the like occasion, and particularly to wait on her at her entry.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. On this order all the great lords went to meet her, and shew'd an extraordinary joy, sprinkling on her head abundance of gold and precious stones.

The air was fill'd with the most odoriferous smells, and the ways cover'd with carpets and brocades. The Cherafs, Cadis, doctors or Moultas, and the Imams, with all the principal officers of the empire, went to pay their devoirs to her, while every one pray'd to God for her prosperity. Then they made their compliments, according to the orders given 'em; and every day there were sumptuous feasts and fresh marks of magnificence.

She was every where entertain'd with plays, and had presents made her of perfumes; the ground was cover'd with the most beautiful flowers; and as the people were fill'd with pleasure, because of the peace and security they enjoy'd from the justice and clemency of the emperor, all imaginable grandeur and magnificence appear'd among 'em in token of the joy they receiv'd from the presence of so glorious a princefs. But this scene of pleasures and grandeur shone with brighter luster in Samarcand than in any other place, this imperial city being adorn'd with all imaginable pomp; in so much that every thing there was surprizing, and melancholy was entirely banish'd thence, as well as from all the other parts of the empire.

Plays and diversions reign'd thro all the city; every place partook of these pleasures, and musick charm'd the ears of all.

The princefs's bed, as beautiful as that of Caidafa, the queen of the Amazons, was en-

* She resided at Berdas, capital of the kingdom of Aras, sixty two leagues distant from Tolla, capital of Georgia.
rich'd with celestial graces and blessings. In fine, the magnificence of this happy entry rais'd the city to so great a pitch of glory, that it caus'd a jealousy where the queen Balkisu, had reign'd.

The marriage of the prince Gehanghir with the princess Serin Bei, surnam'd Canzaad.

THE officers of the emperor's household began to make all necessary preparations for solemnizing the nuptials. An infinite number of canopys, tents, pavilions, curtains, carpets, magnificent beds were got ready; a particular pavilion was erected for the emperor, the favorites and great lords, the ceiling of which, in form of a cupola, appear'd like a heaven full of shining stars; the outside seem'd cover'd with gold, and the inside was enrich'd with precious stones: the ring and ball at top were made of amber, and surrounded with letter balls of the fame; and the room wherein the marriage was to be consummated, was parted by a curtain of gold brocade.

The emperor sat on a rich throne, plac'd in the imperial tent, and was so magnificently dress'd that he resembled the sun. Several kings, princes, and Emirs of the army came to the porte to partake of the general joy; and every one indulg'd himself in pleasures.

The emperor Timur appear'd further magnificent by his great liberality. He had order'd
Book II. many apartments to be fill’d with curious pieces of gold, precious stones, velvets, and other apparel: he made to great presents to all the court, that there was every day one of these apartments empty’d.

In the midst of all this pomp and pleasure, the emperor commanded the most learned astrologers and expert philosophers to assemble together, and examine the state of the heavens. They punctually executed this order; and after having oblied’d all the circumstances, and made choice of the happy moment, in a private apartment, in presence of the great lords of the kingdom, they ty’d the nuptial knot, and got ready the contract of marriage between the princes and the Marza Gehanghir, according to the custom of the Mahometans; then they anointed the marry’d couple, and sprinkled over their heads abundance of pearls and precious stones; and when night was come, which resembled the night of Cadre*, and which was the most considerable and glorious that had happen’d for an hundred years before; the prince and princes retir’d into the secret chamber, where the marriage was happily consummated. This great feast was celebrated in the year of the Hegira 775.

* The night of Cadre is that in which (as the Mahometans imagine) God sent to Mahomet the first chapter of the Alcoran by the angel Gabriel.
CHAP. XIV.

Timur marches a third time into the country of the Getes.

On the first day of the month of Chahbar, in the year of the Hegira 770, Timur march'd at the head of his army for Samarcand. When he was encamp'd at Rebar, it was exceedingly cold; the sun disappeared, and so much rain and snow fell, that the tempestuous weather made the soldiers unfit for service, so that they could take no care of their horses, their own lives being in danger. This occasion'd the death of many of the men, as well as of the horses.

Timur feebly afflicted at this misfortune, order'd his army to decamp from Rebar, and return to Samarcand, where he laid two months, till the violence of the cold was abated.

In the month of Chawaf, which was the beginning of the year of the Hare, he resolv'd to bring his army into the field, and march against the Getes.

He sent his son Mirza Gehanghir at the head of the vanguard, accompany'd by the Cheik Mehemed Beyan ScIenz, who commanded the squadron of the prince's guard, and by Adelchash son of Behram Gelair, to whom he had given the hord of Gelair after his father's death.

When they had got beyond Seiram, and were arriv'd at Jaroun, they seiz'd on a man whom

1 A town of Gete.
Chapter II.

They sent to Timur to be examined. They asked him where Camareddin, the prince of the hard of Ouglar, was. He told them he had raised an army, and was encamp'd in a place nam'd Gheuk Tanus, or the blue hill, which he waited for Hadji Bei, not at all expecting Timur's army. Upon which the prince immediately order'd the vanguard to halter their march thither, resolving himself to follow with all expedition.

Camareddin, on advice of it, retir'd with his troops into an inaccessible place, thinking himself not safe where he was encamp'd. The place he had retir'd to was call'd Birlei Gourtin*, where are three defiles of mountains extremely steep, and three great rapid rivers. Camareddin cross'd two of the defiles with his army, and encamp'd in the third, after having made entrenchments and barricades in the way.

But the prince Gehanghir, having an army compos'd of men who understood the art of war, resolutely march'd at their head, and at the sound of kettle-drums attack'd the enemy. When a great many of these unfortunate men were slain with arrows, they fell upon the reft sword in hand, till night came on, when they fled. The next morning our brave men not finding any of the Gates in the camp, vigorously pursu'd 'em; and at sun-rise Timur coming up with the reft of the army, sent the Emirs Daoud, Hufleim, and Outelicara Behader, to endeavor to overtake 'em. These captains swam along the stream of the river Abeile; but Hufleim fell into the water, and was drown'd. When the others were got upon the enemy's lands, they pillag'd their goods, par-
The history of Timur-Bec.

don'd the cantons, which submitted, took away their arms, and sent them to Samarcand.

Timur went to Baitac, with design to destroy the enemies, and sent the Mirza his son with a great army to give Camareddin battle, and seize on his person. The prince departed, according to order, at the head of his troops, and ruled the cantons of the Geres which were in Outeh Ferman. They found Camareddin in the mountains, pursu'd him, drove him out of his country, and made him abandon his troops; they ravag'd all those parts, raz'd his palaces, and among other ladies, seiz'd on the wife of prince Chamfeddin*, nam'd Roman Aga, and on his daughter Dilchadaga. Gehanghir sent an express to inform the emperor his father of it, who had staid fifty three days at Baitac.

When he receiv'd this news, he departed from the camp, and ascended a mountain call'd Cara Casmac, where Gehanghir, at his arrival, kill'd the emperor's feet, and presented him with carpets, horses, and a great quantity of other booty; after which he procured for the princes Dilchadaga the honor of saluting the emperor.

Timur quitted this camp, went to Atbachi, and thence to the country of Arpaazi, where he staid some days to refresh himself. Moba-rakehah Mecrit†, who commanded a thousand men in this country, and was one of Timur's oldest friends, testify'd his respect so much by diversions and feasts, that he entirely gain'd

---

* Or rather Camareddin, King of the Geres or Moguls.
† Mecrit was one of the most eminent nations of the Moguls in Gunghita Can's time.
the heart of this prince; and so truly attach'd himself to Timur's interest, that he gave to his son Codadzid, as a particular favor, the government of Salar Aglaen and of Hulain, who dy'd this campaign.

CHAP. XV.

Timur's marriage with the princess Dilshadaga, daughter of Camareddin king of the Gutes. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd.

Timur, excited by a verse of the Alcoran, wherein God permits men to marry four wives, resolve'd to elopse the princess Dilshadaga.

The officers of the court prepar'd entertainments and other diversions, that nothing might be wanting in the feast. Wine, concerts of musick, and whatever might contribute to the heightening the pleasure of so signal and happy an action, according to the exact observation of astrologers, were in abundance at the camp. There was a numerous assembly; and at length this great monarch, following the custom of his ancestors, took for his wife this charming and virtuous princess.

The time of rejoicing being ended, he decamp'd; having march'd by Yaff Daban, he went to encamp at Uzhunt, whither the princess Cothie Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister, came. She departed from Samarcand, accompany'd by the princes, Emirs and officers of her household; she had the honor to salute the em-
emperor, and make her presents to him: and Chap. 4.
then the partook of the diversions of the court.

Adelchah son of Behram Gelair, pretending himself a faithful servant to the prince, gave him a friendly entertainment, presented him with some fine horses, and render'd him all imaginable civilities. But these were only testimonials of a feign'd friendship; for he had another design in his heart, which was to have surpriz'd Timur during the solemnity of the feast; but this prince, who was under the divine protection, having obser'ved many marks of his ill-will, found out the treason by the motions of the conspirators. The living conjectures he had of it, caus'd him to leave the assemby, and take horse to return to the camp.

Mehemed Beyan Soldox ¹, Adelchah Gelair, and Turcan Erst, had resolved to seize on his person; but as they cou'd find no opportunity of doing it, his good fortune turn'd the hate they bore him into grief and despair; and this monarch, by God's assistance, return'd imperfect health to his capital city.

Then he gave leave to the troops to retire to their quarters; and pass'd the winter at Zendgie Seral ², two leagues west from Carfchi.

During this winter, Adelchah and the other conspirators having a sense of their fault, came to court, and confess'd their crime. Timur having learnt the circumstances, politickly pretend'd to have known nothing of it, and at the same time highly care'd Adelchah.

---

¹ The families of Soldox, Gelair, and Erst, were the chief among the Mogus in Geonhaz Can's time.
² A colla and pleasure-houte.
Winter being past, the troops were commanded to get together, in order, as was pretended, to make war on Carezem. The princes and Emirs readily march'd out of all the provinces; and as soon as they were arriv'd at the imperial city, Timur order'd that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz shou'd be apprehended and prosecuted. And as at his examination his crime was fully prov'd, he was put into the hands of Herimule Selduz his relation, whose brother he had unjustly slain; and this man reveng'd himself upon him, by putting him to death.

Ali Dervich and Mehemed Dervich, being equally guilty, were also put to death; and Timur gave the government of the Toman of Selduz, to the brave Akittur Behader.

C H A P. XVI.

Timur marches a third time to Carezem; and returns on the revolt of Sar Bonga and Adelchab.

IN the beginning of the spring of the year of the Hegira 777, which answers to that of the crocodile, Timur's good fortune, and his wife conduct in foreseeing the success of affairs, caus'd him to resolve on a journey to Carezem, his valor making him to prefer the fatigues of war before quiet and repose. He left the Emir Aebouga governor of Samarcand, and sent into the country of Gete the Emirs Sar Bonga, Adelchah Gelair, Catai Behder, Efitchi Bonga, and other commanders of thousands, with thirty thousand horse; and enjoin'd them to use all their efforts and care in search of Samarcadin, with
with orders to put him to death wherever they should find him.

On the other hand, he march'd with the imperial standard and a great army towards Carezem; being in a place call'd Sepaye, situate on the bank of the Gihon, he saw Turcan Eral, who came from the other side of this river at the head of his troops, and seem'd willing to join our camp; but having some apprehensions and foresight of his death, he immediately returned to his hord near Corzouan. Timur order'd a captain nam'd Poulad to pursue him with some troops, and to march day and night; who having pass'd by Andeoud, overtook him at Fariah on the bank of the Sihon. Turcan and his brother Turmich would not give ground, but resiled 'em. Our men receiv'd 'em with bravery, and both sides fought like lions; but at length the enemies gave way, were defeated, and contrain'd to fly. The victorious army pursu'd 'em; Poulad alone overtook Turcan, who finding his horse tire'd, got off, and struck down that of his enemy with the butt-end of an arrow, and let fly another before Poulad was able to get up, but it went thro his cap without wounding him. Poulad rush'd on him with violence, so that they struggled a long time, till at length Poulad having flung Turcan on the ground, cut off his head, crying out, Long live Timur; and he return'd with great joy. Aman Serbedal, who had been sent after Turmich the brother of Turcan, also seize'd on him and flew him: So the heads of these two brothers were laid at the foot of the throne.

* The same town as Omea.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II.

Among the Emirs whom Timur had sent to Gere, Sar Bouga and Adeflah, finding the country not in a condition to resist them, form'd a design to revolt, and conspire'd with Cetat Bekheder, Elchei Bouga, and Hamdi, whom Timur had left governor of Aandecan. They got together their hords of Gelair and Capchac, and march'd towards Samarcand, which they believed; but the inhabitants defended themselves so valiantly, with their arrows and darts, that they were oblig'd to raise the siege. Acbouga, governor of the place wrote to Timur, who had already march'd by the town of Car, concerning the siege: when he was arriv'd at Khas when he recei'd the news, he immediately return'd, and having given the command of the vanguard to his son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he order'd to march'd with all expedition, he follow'd him with the rest of the army. As soon as he was come to Bocara, he rang'd all the troops in order of battel, and went to encamp at Rebat Malek. Mirza Gehanghir overtook the enemy in a place call'd Kermina: each party put their troops in order, kettle-drums were heard on all sides, and the fight began. After a brave engagement the prince was victorious; the enemy run away in disorder: the confederates retir'd into the desarts of Capchac, and fled for refuge to 't Qorouc Can; and the officers who escap'd out of the battel lift'd themselves in his service.

Timur after this victory return'd to Samarcand, and divided the hord of Gelair, with his lands.

* A town of Zagaur on the frontiers of Turkestan, long. 103 lat. 43.
* Emperor of Capchac, descended from Toutris Can, son of Genghiz Can.
The history of Timur-Bec.

and demefus, among the princes who remain'd faithful to him; and made the prince Omar Cheik his second son governor of Andecan.

Sar Bouga and Adelchah remain'd in the service of Ourous Can; but the spirit of rebellion again excited 'em. They laid hold on an opportunity, while Ourous Can was gone to a pleasure-house, to fly from his court: and thro' their natural ingratitude, (lew Ourchibi) lieutenant of this Can, and then came to the country of Geze to Camareddin, whom they persuaded to join 'em in making war upon Timur.

C H A P. XVII.

Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Geze.

WHEN Sar Bouga and Adelchah had met with Camareddin, they did not cease to inflame him against Timur: And, having persuaded him to join 'em, he brought an army into the field, and march'd to the country of Andecan, where the Hezare of Coudac abandon'd prince Omar Cheik, and came over to the enemy. Omar Cheik fortify'd himself in the mountains, and sent a man nam'd Dachmend to the emperor, to inform him that the enemy with a great army had entirely ruin'd Andecan; and moreover he gave him an account of all that had happen'd. This news so incens'd Timur, that he immediately march'd towards Geze, of which Camareddin having advice, retir'd from the place he was in, and commanded his household and herd to leave Arzachi, whilst he remain'd in ambush with four thousand horse. Timur
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book II. Timur coming to that place, ignorant of the
march Camareddin had laid, sent his Emirs with
all the army in pursuit of the enemy. Five
thousand of the most valiant men were conducted
by the Emirs Musaid, Cara Behader, and Cheik
Ali Behader, who consulted how they should
proceed in the destruction of the enemy, and
concluded only to perform actions of bravery.
Upon which they march'd, and so there re-
main'd no more than two hundred men with the
emperor.

Camareddin being inform'd of this, laid hold
on the opportunity, and briskly fall'd out of
the ambuscade with his four thousand men word
in hand, and fell upon Timur; but Timur re-
membring the passage of the Alcoran, How often
have few troops vanquish'd great armies thro' the af-
fection of God! was neither troubled nor afraid;
but on the contrary encourag'd his soldiers by
this short speech: "Victory is the gift of God,
and a multitude of soldiers don't always gain
the advantage: my friends, we must fight like
brave men; the least cowardice on our side
will make us lose the day, for in the present
conjuncture we are oblig'd to risque every
thing."

He had no sooner ended his speech, than he
spur'd his horse against the enemy; he enter'd
into the field of battle, and on every side laid
about him with his sword and battle-axe, turning
himself wherever occasion presented: every
attack he overthrew those who oppos'd him,
and spelt abundance of blood: he penetrated
even into the heart of the army. Thus this
valiant emperor, with his lance, war-club, sabre
and net, defeated many of the enemies, and led
captive their generals.
In short, this prince, being oblig'd to expose his person, behaved himself with so much bravery, that nothing but the divine assistance could excite such courage in any man. His soldiers bravely seconded him, and in that battle did all that could be expected from the consummate valor of the most dauntless heroes: in fine, notwithstanding their small number, they defeated four thousand valiant men, who were fill'd with a desire of revenge; which could not have been accomplished by human strength alone, but by God himself, who was pleas'd to give the victory to this great prince.

Timur imagin'd one night in a dream he saw the face of Cheik Kauncheddin Cliteh, in one of those visions which are esteem'd prophetic, and are of forty-six kinds. He dreamt, that being in the presence of this holy man, with great respect he humbly beg'd of him to pray to God for his dear son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he had left sick: and the Cheik answer'd him, Be with God; but shake nothing to him concerning his son. When he awoke he knew that the prince was not so well as he wish'd; wherefore he was so disquieted that he order'd his secretary of state, nam'd Poul Corlac to depart with all haste from Senghul to bring him word how he was. When this man was departed, Timur had another strange dream relating to his son; which very much encreas'd his melancholy: he therefore said to the Emirs and officers, "I believe I must be entirely parted from my son, hide not from me the condition he is in." They all fell on their knees, and swore they knew nothing concerning him.

In the mean time he decamp'd, and met Camareddin at Senghezigadje; gave him battle; and the latter was again defeated and constrain'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II

strain'd to fly. The Emir Ouchcheara pursu'd him closely, and after a long pursuit oblig'd him to return immediately with eight men only. Being surrounded by many of our soldiers, his horse was kill'd by their arrows, and himself wounded in divers places, insomuch that he cou'd scarcely get away on foot. Poulaud also in the fight had an arrow shot into his hand; and as in their return a place was by chance set on fire, this lord fatigu'd himself so much in endeavouring to extinguish it, that the fickness occasion'd by his wound increasing, procur'd his death.

CHAP. XVIII.

The death of Mirza Gehanghir, Timur's eldest son.

TIMUR, being return'd from Aracoom, and having cross'd the Sihon, that is, the Jasartes, arriv'd at his imperial city of Samarcand, where all the great lords of the empire, the Chertifs and others, were cloth'd in black and blue garments; they wept bitterly, cover'd their heads with duff in token of sorrow, beat their breasts, and rent themselves according to custom, and then went to meet the emperor in great haste.

All the inhabitants with their heads uncover'd, and with blackcloth and black felt about their necks, and their eyes bedew'd with tears, came out of the city, filling the air with cries and lamentations. "What a pity is it, say they, that the pious and just conqueror Gehanghir, appear'd only as a rose, which is blown away by the wind! What pity is it that death hath thus
The history of Timur-Bec.

"thus call into the grave, this prince, who Chap. 8. could so easily bring his desigins to perfec-

As soon as Timur arriv'd, and obfer'd the
genent confternation, he no longer doubted of
the death of his fon, which his imagination had
already represented to him.

Every thing then became melancholy and dis-
agreeable to him, and his cheeks were almost
always bath'd in tears: he cloth'd himself with
mourning, and his life became uneasy to him.
The whole kingdom, which us'd to be overjoy'd
at the arrival of this great emperor, was turn'd
into a place of sorrow and weeping.

All the army, cloth'd in black and blue,
fat down in token of their grief; the greatest
lords cover'd their heads with duff, their eyes
flow'd, if one may fo say, with tears of blood;
and their hearts were pierc'd with the deepell
grief.

Tho' the emperor was affected in an extra-
ordinary manner with the losse of his fon: yet
while he knew that the destruction of all be-
ings was a necessary evil, that there was no
man of eternal duration, and that every thing
which belong'd to God must return to him
again, he found some consolation in his grief,
and, at the same time perform'd several acts of
piety for the repose of his fon's soul, as en-
dowments and publick works: he prepar'd, as
usual, funeral requils and banquets, in which
the poor were treated, and he distribut'd other
alms among 'em.

The body of the deceas'd prince was carry'd
to Kech, where he was bury'd, and a magni-
ficent mausoleum erect'd for him. He lived
twenty years, and left two sons, one of whom
was call'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, born
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. of the princess Catzade; and the other, the
Mirza Plr. Mehemed son of the princes Baci-
mulki Age, daughter of Elias Yefouri, born for-
ty days after the death of the prince Gehanghir,
which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 777,
which answers to the year of the Crocodile.

Seifeddin Berlas had no sooner heard of this
misfortune, than he became averse to all world-
ly things, and besought the emperor to permit
him to pass the remainder of his life at Hud-
gear, in the sacred place of Mecca.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur's fifth expedition against the Getes.

The emperor was so afflicted at the death
of his son, that he laid aside all thoughts
of public affairs; but the principal Emirs and
princes of the blood assembled before the throne,
and hils'd the ground. They represented to
him, that as the wisdom of God had made
the good order of the world dependent on the
absolute power he had given to sovereigns,
to maintain their people in peace; so if his
great heart was revol'd to please the Divine-
being, he con'd think on no better means of do-
ing it, than by rendering justice to his subjects,
since the wifefk of men, Mahomer, hath said,
"That he prefer'd the fruits of one hour em-
ploy'd in rendering justice, to sixty or seventy
years spent in divine worship."

* A province of Arabia.
Timur gave serious attention to what these princes laid, being fully persuaded that it flow'd from a sincere affection to him; he therefore began to apply himself to the affairs of the empire, and immediately order'd the army to get ready to march.

At the same time advice was brought that Adeleah Gelair was in the mountains of Carathec, accompany'd with few persons; which caus'd Timur to send Berar Coja Kukeltack, and Elachi Bouga, with fifteen horse only, to endeavor to find him. They departed from Samarcand in the evening, and continu'd their march every night till they arriv'd at the town of Otrar, where they chose the fittest men to go into the mountain in search of this rebel, whom they found in a place nam'd Azouma, where they seiz'd on him, and put him to death according to law.

Azouma is a tower built on the top of the mount Caradge, a place design'd for a guard to the country, because one may observe from thence what is done in the plains of Capheac.

Sar Bouga, who had also been disobedient and revolted, repent'd of his faults, and return'd to court after two years absence. The emperor pardon'd him, and gave him the government of his own people, that is, the hord of Gelair.

Soon after Mirza Omar Cheik, Emir Acbouga, Casai Belader, and the other Emirs receiv'd orders to march against Camareddin, and to use all their efforts to subdue him. These Emirs departed from court, and made
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. Such haste that they met him at the borders of the country of Couraton, where they gave him battle, and struck such terror into his troops, that they fled in disorder, after the example of their general; and soon after the victorious army return'd laden with spoils and slaves, as usual.

CHAP. XX.

Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Gedes against Camareddin. Tocatmich Aglen, descended from Touschi, son of Genghiz Can, arrives at court, and puts himself under the protection of Timur.

The troops were no sooner upon their return, than Timur resolv'd to march in person into that country, the same year; and for this purpose Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Mousha, a confidant of the emperor, gave the command of the vanguard of the army to the Emir Abbas and Akhtmir Echuder, and sent 'em away according to the prince's orders.

These captains march'd day and night, and were so fortunate as to come up with Camareddin at Bongam Afghoul, where they put him to flight after a furious battle, and then ravag'd his country, and reduc'd his subjects to

---

* In the country of the Grees.
* Capochec, call'd by the Europeans the Grand Tartary, which contains all the country intermixt between lesser or Crim Tartary and Turkestan. This empire was given to Touschi Can, by his father Genghiz Can the conqueror of it, as his fief.

obe-
obedience, and Timur himself afterwards pursu'd him as far as Courtcar.

At this place the emperor had advice that Tocatmich Aglen, jealous of Ourous Can, had withdrawn himself from under his protection, and was coming over to him. Timur gave orders to Toumen Timur Uzber, to take care of the ceremonies of his entry, to go and meet him, and load him with all the honors and cares he imaginables; which was punctually executed.

Timur then march'd towards Outagon, in order to return home: from thence he came to Uzhurt; and continu'd his march towards his capital, where at length he fortunately arriv'd.

Toumen Timur brought thither Tocatmich Aglen, who was presented to Timur by the principal lords of his court. He shew'd abundance of joy at his return, and did not forget any of the ceremonies and honors which a prince of his merit and birth could expect; for after having entertain'd him magnificently with all sorts of diversions, he gave him, as well as his officers, so many presents, that it would be difficult to number 'em. They consist'd of gold, precious stones, arms, habilis, magnificent belts, rich stuffs, and a great deal of furniture, horses, camels, tents and pavilions, kettle-drums, standards, mares and flares; and then he did him the honor of calling him his son.
CHAP. XXI.

Timur gives Tocarmich Aglen the principality of Otrar and Sabran; and assists him in making himself master of the empire of Capelac, which he claimed as his right; the Ourous Can, descended from Genghiz Can, was in possession of it.

The generous emperor gave the government of Sabran, Otrar, and Saganac, Seirain, Serai, and other towns of the empire of Capelac, to prince Tocarmich, who was no sooner established there than Cohluc Bouga, son of Ourous Can, emperor of that country, brought an army into the field against him. The desire which these princes had for fighting, was the reason that the armies were not long before they came to blows, and fought as if they were resolved to conquer or die.

Cohluc Bouga was killed by an arrow in the fight, nevertheless Tocarmich Aglen was defeated: the enemys plundered his country, and constrained him to quit his government, and to retire towards Timur, who received him with greater honor than at first, and after having ordered a new equipage to be made for him, and given him fresh troops, sent him away.

When Tousta Cays, eldest son of Ourous Can, heard that this prince was on his return
to Sabran, he join'd many other princes of the race of Toulchi* Can, son of Genghiz Can, as also Ali Bei, and several Emirs, who resolv'd to revenge the death of Coche Bouga on Tocamich Aglen. The army they brought into the field was very numerous, and compar'd to pillars and grasshoppers. In short, when Tocamich Aglen had rang'd his army in order of battle, in view of the enemy, the fight began, and the troops of this prince were put to flight: he himself fled to the banks of the river Sihon, where he threw himself into the water to save himself. He was pursu'd by Cazandgi Behader, who let fly an arrow wherewith he wounded his hand. When he had crost the river, he alone enter'd into a wood naked and wounded, and call himself on the ground to get some rest: but he was soon relieve'd by Andecou Berlas, an old expert captain, whom Timur had sent to give him his advice in the enterprise he was carrying on, and to instruct him how to govern his own country.

The night oblig'd this captain also to enter the wood: he there heard a doleful voice, which very much affected him: he sought for the person who was lamenting; and at length found Tocamich naked and wounded, who was recover'd from a swoon he had a little before fall'n into. After he had got off his horses, he comforted him as well as he was able; told him how much he was concern'd for his misfortune, and gave him somewhat to eat and drink, as also a garment, such as scouts commonly carry, to serve on occasion in a jour-
Book II. He then took all possible care of him, and conducted him to Timur, who was encamp’d without Bocara when they arrived.

When Timur knew the condition Tocatmich was reduc’d to, he receiv’d him with all the clemency which so great an emperor was capable of shewing; and order’d another equipage to be made for him, as magnificent as either of the former.

In the mean while an Ensir of the country of Touichi, nam’d Aidecon, of the band of Mangout, came from the court of Oourous Can to that of Timur, and brought advice that this prince had drawn his troops into the field, and was marching against the invincible emperor, and fought every where for Tocatmich. About this time also Kepee Mangout and Touloudgian came to court in quality of ambassadors from Oourous Can, and made an harangue to the emperor, the substance whereof was as follows:

"Tocatmich has kill’d my son, and is fled for refuge to you; you ought to deliver up this prince, who is my enemy; if you refuse to do it, I declare war against you, and there remains nothing for us to do but to meet in the field of battle."

Timur made this answer: "Tocatmich has put himself under my protection, and I will defend him. Return to Oourous Can, and tell him, that I not only accept his challenge, but my preparations are already begun, and my valiant soldiers have no other employ than the trade of war: they are lions, who instead of living in forests, have their residence in camps and armies."

C H A P.
CHAP. XXII.

Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Ourous Can, emperor of Capchac and Grand Russia.

As soon as the emperor Timur had dismissed the ambassadors of Ourous Can, he ordered the Emir Ali to make preparations for war, and to bring an army into the field; and the Emir Yakou to take care of the government of the royal city of Samarcand, during his absence.

The troops of the empire of Zagatay were soon got together, and Timur at their head, march'd to attack Ourous Can, towards the end of the same year of the Crocodile. They pass'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in the vast plain of Otrar.

Ourous Can having assembled all the troops of the empire of Touchi, march'd to Saganac, twenty-four leagues distant from Otrar. These vast armies being in sight, were ready to make great havoc, when a prodigious cloud overshadow'd them, and shower'd down a prodigious quantity of rain and snow, which was follow'd with so excessive a cold, that the limbs of the men and beasts lost all motion. The weather continued thus almost three months, during which time the armies were in view, and neither capable of action.

Timur could not quell the impetuosity of his courage; he was desirous to be in action, and commanded Cetat Belander and Mehemed Sultan Club, who were retir'd from the court of
Book II. of the prince of Herat, and were attach'd to him, to march with all haste to attack the enemy during the night. Following this order, they took five hundred men with 'em to make inroads. They met Timur Melik Aglen, son of Ourous Can, with about three thousand horse. This encounter happen'd late at night; but morning approaching, the battle began. Fear and valor had each of 'em a great share in this action, and the victory was a long time in suspense; but at length the troops of Timur gain'd it, as they were accustom'd; and the enemy was put to the rout. Elchi Bouza was wounded in the hand, and the prince Timur Melik Aglen in the foot by an arrow; and the Yarek Timur and Cazai Behader were both slain, the victorious troops return'd to the camp in triumph.

Mehemed Sultan Chah had orders from the emperor to depart, that he might gain intelligence of the enemies, which he did, and brought to Timur a man whom he had seiz'd: the Emir Moubacher, who had receiv'd the like order, also brought another he had taken. Timur learnt from both of 'em, that the enemy had sent two of their bravest men, one nam'd Olough Satkin, and the other Kutchuk Satkin, with a hundred horse, to learn news of the state of our army. They were by chance met by Akimur Behader and Alshdad, who came from Otrar, where they had distributed the victuals for the army. Akimur, excited by the good fortune which never abandon'd the great Timur, march'd vigorously against 'em,
and in the mean while to deceive them, made Chap. 22.
use of a warlike stratagem: he pretended to fly; and this motion of our men gave fresh courage to the enemy, who were already advance'd, but Akimur soon after returning to the charge with his men, beat back their soldiers, who thought themselves conquerors, and entirely broke their ranks. Those who were not slain, fled, and hid themselves in pits and caverns of water. Kepektchi Wachi, Akimur's nephew, kill'd the young Satkin; and Indouchah seiz'd the eldest, whom he brought to Timur, who, for his service distinguish'd Indouchah from the other captains by particular favors. They had then advice that Ourous Can, despairing of his projects, was return'd home, and had left Karakefei in his place; which oblig'd Timur to march in person against the enemy; but as he found that Karakefei was also retir'd with his troops, he finish'd the campaign, and return'd with his army to his camp near the city of Kech, where he flaid seven days.

C H A P. XXIII.

Timur's irruption into the country of Ourous Can: Tocatmich Aglen plaz'd on the throne of the empire of Caplich, otherwise call'd the empire of Tocchi Can.

As soon as the season would permit the army to be brought into the field, the invincible Timur took horse to make war on Ourous Can. He gave the conduct of his vanguard to Tocatmich, who likewise serv'd as a guide, and march'd day and night with so much expedition
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II.

The inhabitants of which he found asleep, having no notice of the march of our army. The town was pillag’d, and the soldiers brought away a great number of horses, camels, sheep, and slaves; and, what was a further mark of Timur’s good fortune, before this action Ourous Can died, as soon after did Toucta Caya his eldest son.

Timur immediately furnish’d Tocatmich Aglen with every thing requisite for government, and establish’d him sovereign in Capchae and the rest of the empire of Touchi; and after having prepar’d him an equipage worthy of an emperor, he left him in that kingdom. He also made him a present of the famous spotted horse named Conc Aglen, a horse of the finest metal and spirit, and which he greatly esteem’d for his extraordinary swiftness. And on making this present, he thus address’d him:

"This horse will serve you on several occasions; for you may easily overtake the enemy when you pursue him; and no one will be able to overtake you if you are oblig’d to fly."

After this expedition, the emperor resolv’d to return to Samarcand; whereupon he left Capchae, and fortunately arriv’d at the heart of his empire, in the beginning of the year of the Serpent, and of the Hegira 778.

But the affairs of Capchae did not long continue so quiet as he had left them; for soon after his return, he receiv’d advice that Timur Meilik Aglen, son of Ourous Can, having fix’d himself on the throne of Touchi, had brought a powerful army into the field to make war on Tocatmich: in short, their armies came in view, and after several skirmishes, Tocatmich was again
again entirely vanquished. Nevertheless, he saved himself from all dangers, by means of the host the emperor had presented him; yet all his troops were dispersed, and he alone came to the court.

Timur, thro' his wonted goodness, again recruited his losses, and in the end of the year 1379 sent him back to Saganac, guarded by several great Emirs, among whom were Tummen Timur-Uzbec, and his son Balti Coja, Ouzunkitmur, Cayaeddin Terran, and Benhi Courchin, whom he ordered to re-establish him on the throne of the Cans.

These princes obeyed, and placed Toecarmich Agloen upon the throne in the city of Saganac, with all the ceremonials observed at the coronation of Cans; and according to custom they sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones.

CHAP. XXIV.

The birth of Prince Charoc, son and heir to the emperor Timur.

In the middle of the same year of the Serpent, when the government of Timur seemed to have arrived at the summit of its felicity, many of his officers bearing the titles of kings and Cans, there were composed several poems and other pieces on his prosperity. Some observed that this conqueror had for his courtiers none but kings; while others related to what a high degree God had gratified his desires, and how favorable fortune had been to him.

They
They cited several passages of the Alcoran*, which perfectly agreed with his good fortune; they thence foretold the birth of the son whom God would give him, because of his virtues, and the justice with which he govern'd his subjects.

This charming infant was born in the city of Samarcand, the seat of his empire, on Thursday the fourteenth of the month Kabilaker, in the year of the Hegira 779; and what most pleas'd the emperor was, that he saw in this beautiful and happy prince the continuation of his family, which should remain in the possession of the empire to the end of time.

In short, he discover'd an extraordinary joy at the moment Mehrebane, his mother brought him into the world, and when he was presented to him, he knew by examining the features of his countenance, that the sun of his good fortune had already cast his rays upon this beloved infant.

He was brought up with great niceness and care by the ladies of the seraglios; his body by degrees became of a proper size: they adorn'd his clothes with the finest oriental stones, and he had always held over his head a canopy of rich embroidered velvet.

There is a prayer in the Mehnevi's, which was made use of to beseech God that he would be pleas'd to make the throne of Timur happy under the government of this young prince, that

---

* The Mahometans read the Alcoran as a book of prophecy, and pretend to find predictions in it.

* The name of Sereh Moule, which signifies a well-doer.

* A celebrated book of Mahometan theology in verse, composed by Mouler Roum, chief of the sect of Dervish Mevlevis, who always carry this book in their hands.
The history of Timur-Bec.

He would render tributary to him the seven climates of the universe, and that at length he might become emperor of the whole world.

The most learned astrologers, observing the situation of the heaven at the time of his birth, declared that this prince then'd accomplish all his desires, and arrive without opposition to the highest pitch of grandeur and sovereignty. They explain'd in his favor all that astrology was able to teach men upon the horoscope and birth of a great prince; they reason'd on everything which concern'd the planets and other stars, on their constellations and influences as far as they related to him; and in short on the agreement between their predictions and those of the Alcoran; the detail of which would be too long and troublesome to the reader. This chapter having been compos'd only as an account of the august birth of the prince Charoe, we shall make no mention of his actions till the third book.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur sends Tocatmich Can to attack Timur Melik Can, emperor of Caphbac.

The first time that Tocatmich Aglen, after having abandon'd Ourous Can, came to put himself under the protection of Timur, he was accompany'd by Orchitmur, to whom this emperor as a reward for his services shew'd many favors, because in his absence Ourous Can had pillag'd all his goods, and given his revenue to another; and when Tocatmich was defeated by Timur Melik, Orchitmur was made prisoner of war, and carry'd to Timur Melik, who gave him
him his life, and even his liberty. But some
time after, this captain being in misery, call
himself at the feet of Timur Melik, and be-
ought him to restore to him his lordship and
troops, that he might be in a condition to serve
him. Timur Melik refused it, and told him, he
did not care whether he remain'd in his ser-
vice or not. Then Orktinmur fled, tho' it was
winter, and came to seek protection from the
great Timur: he had the honor to kiss the car-
pet of his throne at Samarcand, and to receive
from him many peculiar favors; he gave him an
account of Timur Melik's manner of living;
that he spent both night and day in debauches;
that he slept till ten o'clock in the morn-
ing, which is dinner-time, no one daring to wak
him whatever affairs of importance requir'd it;
that his subjects had no longer any hopes of
obtaining favor or protection from him; and that
all the people of the empire of Touchi Can
were very desirous of Tocatmich for their so-
vereign. The emperor therefore sent messengers
to Tocatmich at Saganac, to advise him to
march with all expedition to attack Timur Me-
lık, who had pass'd the winter at Caratal. To-
catmich, in obedience to this order, brought
an army into the field, and march'd against the
enemy.

As soon as he came near Caratal, the army's
were rang'd in order of battle; they fought,
and thro' the usual good fortune of our emperor,
the Can Timur Melik was defeated, and Tocat-
mich Agien at the same time took possession
of the throne of his ancestors in the empire of Cap-
chac, and immediately sent Ourous Coja to car-
ry the news of the victory to the great Timur.

This prince was so pleas'd at this news, that
he spent many days in rejoicings: and to render
the joy universal, he releas'd those who were in chains. He honor'd Ouros Coja with a veil and a gilt belt; and having made him a present of several jewels, sent him back to Tocarmich, furnishing him with horses and money for his journey.

Tocarmich Can return'd to Saganac, where he stay'd during winter, and as soon as the spring appear'd, rais'd a great army, and march'd towards the kingdom of Serai and the country of Memac, which he again conquer'd.

His power increas'd so considerably, that, thro' the good conduct which Timur had inspir'd in him, all the kingdom of Touchi Can was reduc'd to his obedience; and thus he follow'd this politic maxim, That he who is ambitious of greatness, shou'd associate himself with fortunate men, because prosperity is not to be acquir'd but from the star of them who enjoy it.

CHAP. XXVI.

Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph Sohi, king of Cazan.

WHilst Timur pass the winter at Otrar, to observe Oiros Can, Yosaph Sohi, king of Cazan, taking advantage of the absence of this prince, sent an army to Bocara, which ravag'd the country, and carry'd away all they could find, without considering what might be the consequences of this irruption. This action oblig'd Timur to send Dgelarem to

* In Capanac, upon the Volga.*
Book ii. he in quality of ambassador, to acquaint him, thence having contracted an alliance with him, be thought it very strange that he should commit hostilities in the country of Bocara without any cause given.

The ambassador acquitted himself of his commission, but Yousph Soh gave orders that he should be seized, and put into prison; of which Timur being informed, ordered one of his secretaries to write to him about it.

This officer, instead of inquiring much more in the letter which was of little, look more noble: he began with praising God, and with some considerations on the ordinary conduct of his providence with regard to princes; then he let him know the maxim of princes, which was, to esteem the persons of ambassadors sacred, which was the reason they were always exempt from death, and even from prison, if the sovereign to whom they were sent, had any regard to the law of nations, and the ambassador had the prudence not to commit any considerable faults, and should behave himself inoffensively: moreover, that whoever shall have a contrary opinion, falls in judgment; since it is remarked in the Alcoran, that ambassadors are sacred, and only obliged to execute their masters orders: in short, that he should rather have sent back the ambassador without abusing him; which if he did not, he would soon be brought to repentance, and feel the effects of the most cruel vengeance ever mention'd in history.

When he had read the letter, it was sent to Yousph Soh, who, without consulting whether it was reasonable, put the messenger in prison; and was again to imprudent as to endeavor to kindle the war; for he sent Touf Bogai, sirnam'd the robber, with a company of men of
The history of Timur-Bec.

his own stamp, to carry away the camels of the Chapans Turcomans, which he knew were then about Bocara.

During this year of the horse, the Emir Hadji Seifeddin Berlas return'd from his journey to Mecca, and had the honor to salute the emperor, to whom he represented the state of the kingdoms of Iran*, the governors of which had acted like absolute sovereigns.

In the same year also Timur was marry'd, according to the law of the prophet, to the princess Touman Aga, daughter of the Emir Moulla; and the sincere love he had for her was the reason that at her desire he adorn'd the city of Samarcand with many fine monuments; among the rest he built a pleasure-house without Samarcand towards the west; he also destroy'd the twelve gardens which were built in imitation of the twelve signs of the zodiac, in order to make them one. He order'd a magnificent pavilion, embellish'd with all possible ornaments, to be erected; insomuch that thinking this the most pleasant place imaginable, he knew of no name which would suit it better than that of Bagh Behiche, the garden of paradise. Timur then went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai.

* All the country between the rivers Oxus and Tigris; i. e. Persia and the neighbouring countries.
CHAP. XXVII.

Timur’s fourth war in Carezsm: death of Joseph Sofi; conquest of that kingdom.

JOSEPH, or Youseph Sofi, Can of Carezsm, excited by his pride, would keep no correspondence with Timur, but imprudently committed several rash actions. This boldness gave cause to Timur to revenge himself, and get ready an army to make war on Carezsm; which happen’d in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 780, which answers to the beginning of the year of the Sheep, when the sun enters into Pisces. Thus having passed the winter in the quarters of Zendgir Serai, he began his march, and arrived at the frontiers of Carizme or Carezsm.

His army invested the town of Estusilk. The general at the same time caus’d the kettle-drums to be beat, and the soldiers made the usual cry which is call’d Sournoun: they built a fortress over-against the town for greater security; made entrenchments on all sides, and fortify’d them, and every morning fail’d not of making the great cry.

Partys went out, according to the orders given ‘em, to pillage the territory of Carezsm on every side, from whence they brought away all sorts of booty: they ravish’d the handsomest virgins in the country, made many slaves, and carry’d away all the horses, camels and sheep they could meet with.

In the mean time Joseph Sofi thought proper to write the following letter to the emperor: "How
How long shall the world suffer persecution and ruin for the sake of two men only? and how many thousands of Muslims shall perish thro' their quarrel? It would be better that we meet alone in a particular field, and prove our valor; for then tripping in the divine assistance, we shall know in whose favor fortune and heaven will declare.

Timur was pleas'd in that Joseph Sofi had sent such a letter to him; and said it was what he most earnestly desire'd. He therefore order'd his armor immediately to be brought him; he put on his light cuirass which he us'd in duels, girded on his sword, hung his buckler on his arm; and in this posture, with the imperial helmet on his head, marched towards the town. The princes and lords of the court cast themselves at his feet, and told him it was not reasonable so great a monarch shou'd fight a duel; but he had no regard to their speeches, and continu'd his way. Hadgi Seifeddin Berla, full of affection to him, which transported him beyond all bounds, took hold of the horse's bridle, to strive to conquer the stubbornness of the emperor: he cast himself at his knees, and told him he ought not to be guilty of exposing his royal person, and fighting as a private man, when he had so many officers. "If the emperor said he, thou'd fight duels, what need is there of so many brave warriors?" Timur was wroth, reprimanded Seifeddin, and drew his sword to strike him; but the Emir quitted the bridle, and retir'd. The prince tripping entirely in God, went alone to the borders of the ditch of the city; he cried with a loud voice, that Joseph Sofi might know he was come, to answer the challenge, and had kept his promise; and that he ought to meet him,
that he might see to whom God would give the victory. Fear seized Joseph Sofi, who repented, and was not as good as his word. Timur cried out again; and to excite Joseph, told him that death rather than life was his due, who broke his word; he said many other things to shame him, and oblige him to come into the field: but Joseph prefer'd life before his honor, and was so abash'd that he cou'd make no answer. Timur waited a long time; but at length having no answer, return'd to his camp, where the bravest admir'd his intrepidity.

About this time there were brought from Termes to Timur the first melons of the year; his natural goodness made him resolve to send some of 'em to Joseph Sofi, supposing it would be thought uncivil if he did not let that prince partake of 'em, seeing he was so near him; wherefore he order'd some of 'em to be carried to him in a bafon of gold. The Emirs told him a bafon of wood might serve; but the emperor would not suffer it, and they were carry'd in a bafon of gold to the borders of the ditch. They demanded from the wall what there was in the bafon; the bearer answer'd that there were some new melons which the emperor had sent to Joseph Sofi, and then he return'd; some of the besiegers took the bafon, and carry'd it to the Can, who thro' his want of senfe, order'd the melons to be call in to the ditch, and gave the bafon to the porter of the town.

After this action one of his generals nam'd Hadgi Fally'd out at the head of a good number of troops, who were of the bravest warriors of Carestain; but the Mirza Omar, with his officers and soldiers, fell upon 'em with their swords drawn,
drawn, and swam over the water. This action kindled the war on all sides: at length there was a general fight; all the field of battle was cover'd with dead bodies, and look'd like a mountain of slaughter'd men, as well on one side as the other, and the combat did not end till night: in it were perform'd actions of the utmost valor; but at length the army of Carezen tir'd with fighting, thought it advisable to fly and enter the town.

Elteh Bouga, and Anoucchouan son of Ab-bouga, having distinguish'd themselves by an extraordinary valor, were wounded; of whom the former was heal'd, and the latter died.

Timur gave orders for the siege to begin; the army was employ'd in placing the battering rams, and playing them against the walls; and the machines design'd to call millstones and other stones, were made use of with such success, that the castle of Joseph Sofi was nearly ruin'd; and fear seiz'd him he was oblig'd to go for shelter to some other place.

The siege continu'd three months and sixteen days, during which time the marks of victory daily appear'd on Timur's side; and the discomposers of the mind, which are astonishment, fear, inquietude, affliction, anger and envy, seiz'd on Joseph Sofi with so great violence, that at length falling sick, he lost all courage and died, bewailing his misfortune.

This event was esteem'd the most considerable of any that had happen'd to Timur, since the prediction was fulfill'd which he spake when he went alone to the walls of the town to invite this Can to the duel which he had propos'd, and afterwards refus'd to answer by not appearing; by which it was manifest that he deserv'd death
Book II. death rather than life, as the emperor had predicted.

At the same time they briskly attack'd the town on every side, and at length enter'd it by the breaches they made, norwithstanding the brave resistance of the besieged, who defended themselves to the last.

A treasure of pearls and precious stones, which belonged to the brave Erkendge, were taken away, tho' not without opposition, by the soldiers whom Timur's good fortune assisted: the other troops pillag'd all the riches of the town, and kill'd many of the inhabitants with their swords and arrows; and the publick edifices were ruin'd.

All the Cheriifs, doctors, and learned men were sent to the city of Kech, as also the tradesmen; together with a vast number of women and children.

This noted victory happen'd in the year of the Sheep, and of the Hegira 781; the same whereof was dispers'd thro' all parts of the universe. The conqueror Timur, accompany'd with victory and triumph, return'd to the seat of his empire, and some time after went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai, where all sorts of diversions were prepar'd for him.

* The author in several passages intimates as if Timur had the spirit of prophecy.
CHAP. XXVIII.

Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Asferai.

Historians report that the city of Kech was formerly the place where the most learned doctors of the Mahometan law assembled, and that three venerable Imams, celebrated by the feats of which they were the chief, and for the new opinions they had introduced, dwelt in this country: one of ‘em was Abou Mehemed Abdai, native of Kech; another was Abdalla, native of Samarcund; and the third Abou Abdalla Mehemed, of Bocara.

At the same time men of learning came from all parts to this city, for the improvement of their knowledge. Aboul Huslein Mullem of Nichabour came according to the example of other virtuous men, and advance’d his studies under the famous Abdai. The learned Moullas came thither in great numbers; and as the study of the sciences was then brought to perfection, they firm’d this city Coubbet Elilmi Veledeb, that is, the dome of science and virtue. It had also the name of Chebet Sebz, the green city, because of the verdure and freshness of its gardens, and a meadow famous for its rare and curious plants.

At the end of the year 781, which answers to that of the Monkey, the emperor charm’d with the beautys of this city, the purity of the air in its plains, the deliciousness of its gardens, and the goodness of the waters, made it his ordinary
Book II. dinary residence in summer, and declar'd it the
second seat of his empire; wherefore he built
building of there new walls, and a new palace which he nam'd
the palace of Aferai, because the walls of it were exceeding
white and very high. The foundation of these
buildings was laid in an hour fitted for the most
fortunate horoscope; and the palace was built
so exquisitely fine and beautiful, that no other
could compare with it. Timur then divided
the city among his Emirs, and the troops of
his household.

CHA P. XXIX.

The Emir Hadji Seifeeddin sent ambassador to
Herat, to Malek Cayseddin Pir Ali, king
of Currassana.

The emperor being in his winter-quarters,
sent a messenger to Malek Cayseddin
Pir Ali, prince of Herat, to let him know that
at the beginning of the spring, the Emirs and
other princes of the empire were to be present
at the Couroultai, or diet, to which he had
summon'd 'em; and that his presence there was
also requir'd. The messenger at his arrival at He-
was us'd with all imaginable civility and respect
by the prince Pir Ali, who told him, that if the
Emir Seifeeddin would do him the honor to
come thither, he being a servant of the em-
peror, and friend to the Emir, would confide in
his protection, and the friendship between them,
and depart with him immediately to testify his
obedience. He spoke to the messenger after this
manner, because he lived in fear of Timur;
but the emperor granted what he desi'd, and
in the year 781. sent Seifeddin Berlas to Herat, where he was received by Pir Ali with all imaginable honor. Pir Ali kept him a long time on pretence of putting in order the presents he should carry, and to make preparations for the journey; but his design was only to furnish the city with victuals and other necessaries, and to finish the fortifications of Herat, which he had cause’d to be encompass’d the preceding year by a wall of two leagues circumference, and which consequently enclosed the suburbs and gardens without the wall of the old city. Pir Ali persuaded himself, that thro’ the care and precaution he had taken he should be secure against all events. The Emir knowing this prince’s designs by his conduct, presst him no more, but put himself in a condition to return to court; where as soon as he arriv’d, he represented to Timur what he was able to find out of the designs of Pir Ali by his manner of acting.

At the same time Ali Bei, son of Argoun Chah John Garbani, return’d to his obedience, according to the orders he had receiv’d, and came to the foot of the throne. The emperor pardon’d all his past faults, gave him a handsom reception, and distinguisht him from his equals by particular favors; he even consented to the marriage of the daughter of this Bei with Mirza Melhemmed Sultan 1: he was entertain’d with feasts, and had presents made him of veils and other things; and Timur had several conferences with him in relation to his design upon Herat.

It was concluded that Ali Bei shou’d be in readiness to go thither in the beginning of the spring; which he gave assurance of by his pro-

1 Son of Gel naughty; son of Timur.
C H A P. XXX.

Mirza Miran Chah, son of Timur, marches into Corassana, to make war on Malek Cayafeddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.

That it was Timur's ambition of universal monarchy, which caus'd him to undertake such glorious actions, is unquestionable; and as he cou'd not find his equal in valour and conduct, among all the princes his contemporaries, he rais'd his empire to as high a degree of power and glory, as it was possible for any to attain to.

He has been often heard to say, what highly favor'd of this ambition, that it was neither agreable nor decent, that the habitable world shou'd be govern'd by two kings; according to the words of the poet, As there is but one God, there ought to be but one king; all the earth being very small in comparison of the ambition of a great prince.

About this time many rebels had seiz'd on several provinces of Iran 7; and every one setting up for monarch, had declar'd himself sovereign of the country he posseis'd, and fortify'd it, that he might become wholly independent. These unaccountable enterprizes exceedingly displease'd Timur, whose power visibly increas'd; and

---

* All the country between the Oxus and Tigris, that is, Persia and the neighbouring countries.
after having brought into subjection the countries and kingdoms of Taurum, which Genghiz Can had formerly divided betwixt his two sons, Touched Can and Zagarat Can, he left 'em in the care of his lieutenants, and resolved to conquer the empire of Iran or Persia.

In the autumn of the year of the Hen, and of the Hegira 782, he constituted governor of Coraslana his dear son the Mirza Miran Chah, who was then but fourteen years of age: he gave him, to be near his royal person in quality of officers, the Emir Gehanghir brother of the Emir Hadji Beras, the Emir Hadji Sefleddin, the Emir Aebouga, the Emir Ofman Abbas, Mehemed Sultan Chah, Comari brother of Temouke, Tahan Behader, Orois Bouga brother of Sarbouga, Pir Husein Beras, Hamza fon of the Emir Moufia, Mehemed Cazagan, Sarac Eteke, and Muzaffer fon of Oncheura, and other Emirs, with fifty companys of horse, whom he chose out of his imperial army, and order'd to decamp for Coraslana.

The army cover'd with an extraordinary dust, which darken'd the air, arriv'd at the bank of the Gihen or Oxus; over which by order of the prince, a skilful engineer, who was in his train, built a regular bridge of boats.

The Tartar troops cross'd the bridge, and pass'd the autumn and greatest part of the winter at Balic and Chebargan, where they refted themselves; but towards the end of the winter they took from Malek the town of Badghiz, where the soldiers had as a reward for their conquest a great many horses, furniture, and

* What is call'd the Grand Tartary from the Oxus, to Muffcovy, Siberia and China.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. other riches, which were pillag'd thro the valor of the young prince, infomuch that the army became rich with the spoil of the enemy, equip'd it self, and provided every thing necessary.

When the sun was come to the middle of Pisces, Ali Bei sent an express to Timur, that if the victorious standard shou'd march to Herat, he would be so gracious as to permit him, his faithful servant, to attend him in quality of guide.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur's army marches to make war in Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran.

Towards the end of the year of the Hegira 782, which was the beginning of that of the Dog, the emperor Timur perceiving the agreeable season of the spring drawing near, sent orders to all parts to raise troops, that he might execute his design to pass into Iran; and he departed from his camp in a happy moment, before all the army was got together.

The troops came one after another to the imperial army, which consisted of the brave Tartars of Touran, as well as the skilful Turks, and the choicest soldiers of the east, Cattan, Termed, and Vilagheh; and Timur crossed the Gihon with all the army.

He order'd a bridge to be built over the river Dizac, and all these motions, which were made with extraordinary dispatch, caus'd an in-

* It falls into the Gihon or Oxus, and passes by Corassistana.
expressible terror in Coraffiana; for the de-
far and plains were entirely cover'd with
tents, standards, foot and horse, arms and
baggage.

When Timur was arriv'd at Andecoud, his
devotion prompt'd him to visit the illustrious
Santon Babafienou, who was of the number of
those Dervises, who make profession of folly.
This person, in an enthusiastic fit, flung a breast
of mutton at the emperor's head; who imagi-
ning this a good augury, said, "I am assur'd that
"God will grant me the conquest of Coraffiana,
"because this kingdom has always been call'd
"the breast or middle of the habitable world."
This prediction had its effect: the prince de-
parted from Ancoud, accompany'd by good for-
tune and prosperity; and in the encamping and
decamping of this vast army, the noise of kettle-
drums, the sound of the great trumpet Kerrena,
of the cymbals and Gourca, and the din of bells,
struck such terror into the inhabitants of this
great country, that every one was in a con-
fusion.

Malek Mehemed, brother of Malek Cayafed-
din, was then in the fortress of Senacs; as soon
as he had advice of the march of the army, he
so much confidèd in the emperor's good nature,
that he came before the throne, where he had
the honor to kiss the imperial carpet, and to re-

* The salt is full of this kind of Samuans who are natural
fools or blockheads, or at least pretend to be so; the Mahome-
tans have extraordinary veneration for 'em, esteemed 'em
false. They tell us that God loved 'em before their creation, and
on that account did not SIM 'em with reason, so that they are
incapable of offending.

* The author says, that noise was so terrible, that it seem'd
as if the day of judgment was come.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. receive many careles and presents. When after a long march the army had pass'd by Meveroud, commonly call'd Morgab', they at length encamp'd at Teheledalie, eleven leagues from Herat.

The emperor sent an express to Ali Bel to desire him to raise troops, and forthwith to join his army, according to the league made between 'em; but he refuse'd to obey, and not only did not come, but by a shameful treason and pride, which promptid him to attempt what he was not able to perform, he caus'd the envoy to be seiz'd. As Malek Cayafeedim Pir Ali had that day taken the town of Nichabour from the Serbedals, and had part of his army in that country, Timur march'd to Jam and Coufoupa, that the troops which were there might not be able to join Malek. When the emperor was at Coufoupa, Pehlevan Mechii, the governor of it, went to meet him, and had the honor to kiss the carpet; which was the reason the inhabitants of this province receiv'd no molestation from the army.

Timur, who always highly esteem'd those who profest'd the true religion in its purity, went to Taibad to visit the learned and virtuous doctor Zeineddin Aboubelekre Taibadi, who at that time was famous for the strictness of his morality and great authority. The prince had a long conversation with this Moulla, who was the most pious man of his time; he receiv'd good advice relating to his conduct, and at length took leave of him, and march'd with the army to Herat.

A town of Comilla, long. 97. lat. 36°.
C H A P. XXXII.

Reduction of Fouchendge, a town of Corassana.

When the imperial standard arriv'd at Fouchendge *, the troops had orders to belevege this town; the soldiers accordingly invented it; and tho' it had abundance of water in its ditches, they were not discourag'd, but spent three days in preparing their arms, and building the machines necessary for the siege. The fourth day in the morning, Timur order'd all the army to march towards this place, and vigorously to assault it, and strive to reduce the enemy. The soldiers prepar'd themselves for strange actions, and as soon as the Gourgne * was founded, they made the terrible cry call'd Souroun, and every one regardless of his life obey'd the emperor's orders; they cross'd the ditch upon planks and rafts, came to the foot of the wall, and discharg'd their arrows against the enemys, of whom they made a terrible laughter.

Timur often march'd round the town without his cuirails, having only a vell on, to excite the soldiers to fight, who at the sight of the prince were recruited with fresh vigor.

Stones and arrows were shot from the top of the wall like rain, and Timur was struck with two arrows.

* Long. 94. Lib. 74.
* The same as Gourgne.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. Mirza Ali, son of Emir Muaid Erelas, who resembled Timur, Aicoumne Belcout, Omar son of Abbas, Mubacher and other brave men, march'd with unparallel'd valor and intrepidity towards the ramparts, which they overthrew; they got upon the wall, and the arrows and stones, which rain'd upon our soldiers, did not lessen their courage.

The valiant Cheik Ali Behader, and his younger brother Gofru Boquet, with Mirek, son of Eltchi, and other warriors, cross'd the ditch, and assaulted the gate of the town; they came to blows with the enemy, and fought with so much vigor that they vanquish'd them, and found means to open the gate: on the other hand, the vast army, having made breaches on all sides, enter'd the place, and put to the sword all those who had escap'd out of the hands of the others. Then they pillag'd the town, and carry'd away whatsoever was valuable.

This action gave extraordinary pleasure to the officers of Timur; because it was the first conquest they had made in Iran.

This town of Fouchendro was very much esteem'd for its strength, being surrounded with high walls and a good rampart: its other fortifications were so strong, that no traveller had ever seen any citadel comparable to it: its outer parts were guarded with a deep ditch full of water: it was furnish'd with a great many men arms, and machines, and had plenty of victuals. Yet notwithstanding all these advantages, it was taken by our victorious soldiers at the first assault; which seem'd to foretell that all the kingdoms of the empire of Iran should in a short time be brought in subjection to the invincible Timur. But that this good fortune might not pass unmixt with some adversity, Elias and several
The history of Timur-Bec.
several soldiers fell into the ditch, and were drownd'd.

C H A P. XXXIII.
Reduction of Herat, capital of Corestana.

When Timur had taken Fouchendge, he march'd toward Herat, the Malek Cayaefeddin in his pride, and by reason of the strength of the walls which surrounded his capital, the many friends he had, and the succors he expected, had prepar'd arms and all things necessary for his defence.

The victorious army was no sooner arriv'd, than the troops began to ruin the gardens, after having beat down the walls; they then inveted the city on all sides; and as soon as the signal was given by the drums beating, and the soldiers had made the great cry Souroun, it was order'd for precaution that entrenchments shou'd be made over-against the walls of the city. This order was immediately obey'd, and Timur, accompany'd by his ordinary good fortune, mounted his horse, and rode several times round the city, to examine the out-parts, and obferve the strongest and weakest walls.

The enemy, who were ready to fight, open'd their gate; and at the same the troop of Gouris, efticem'd the strongest and most valiant men of Iran, made a sally upon our soldiers, but after a bloody conflict retir'd.

The inhabitants had no sooner heard of this, than preferring the safety of their houses, which were adorn'd with fine porcelain earth of Chelam, to the fatigue of war, they no longer

* A town N. of Ipshan, and four days journey from this city.
defended themselves, but thought only of saving their lives.

When Malek re-enter'd the city, he endeavor'd to change this resolution of the inhabitants: he resolve'd to make a second sally, and sent the Deltals, that is, the public cryers, into all the quarters of Herat, to order all the inhabitants to repair forthwith to the breach-works of the walls, and to take particular care of the city; but notwithstanding the cries they made in the markets and streets, every one was deaf, and would not obey 'em.

Malek seeing he had no other refuge to fly to than that of submission, sent to the emperor the Sultana Catoun, daughter of Taghitimur Can his mother, with his eldest son the Emir Pir Mehmed, accompany'd by Eskender Cheiki, who was reported to have been of the race of Birgen*, to acquaint Timur with his submission, and to beg pardon.

The merciful prince receiv'd 'em handsomely: he presented Malek's son with a robe of honor and a rich belt; and having comforted 'em, sent back the mother and son, with order to tell Malek he must depart out of Herat; for if he should be so presumptuous as to defend himself, and the city should be taken, he would be the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and the death of the inhabitants, and repent his so doing. Timur kept with him Eskender Cheiki, that he might inform himself of the affairs of the country, and of what had happened in the city; and at the same time this prince went to dwell in the

* A prince of the ancient Persians, the son of Khos and of the sister of Koulim.
Kloche of the garden call'd Bagzogoun, that Chap. 30. is to say, the garden of the crows.

Malek Cayaedelin the next day made preparations for his departure; and the day after, having laid aside his pride, he went out of the city to seek Timur: he kiss'd the imperial carpet upon his knees, as a token of his sincere submission, and beg'd pardon for his fault.

Timur pardon'd and cared for him, gave him a seat of honor, and a belt set with precious stones, and then dismissed him.

The day after, the Genoels, ancient Moullas and Imams, accompany'd with the greatest lords of the kingdom, came out of the city: they had the honor to kiss the carpet, and made the custom'd vows for the emperor's prosperity.

This great conquest happen'd in the month of Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 781, which was that of the Dog with the Moguls; and the victorious standard was carry'd from the imperial camp to the meadow of Kehdeftan, call'd of Herat, where they stay'd some days: during which time Timur order'd that the treasures and other riches which the Gouris kings had amassed for several years, should be carry'd away. It is remarkable that there were in this city all sorts of treasures, as silver money, unpolish'd precious stones, the richest thrones, crowns of gold, silver vessels, gold and silver brocades, and curiosities of all kinds. The soldiers, according to the imperial order, carry'd away all their riches upon camels.

Timur then order'd the old walls of Herat to be raz'd, as also the new walls which Malek had built: which was accordingly executed.

* A pavillion, in the gardens in form of a cupula, built of wood, handsomely gilt, and sometimes of marble.
A tax was laid on the inhabitants of the city, in consideration of their being stay'd, and in acknowledgment of the good treatment us'd to-wards 'em; which was paid in four days.

Moulla Cotbeddin, son of Moulla Nazameddin, who was chief of the Imams and doctors of this kingdom, had orders to quit Herat, and to dwell in the town of Sehz, with two hundred considerable old men: and Timur Tach, nephew of Acheunga, governor of Terned, was order'd to accompany and settle 'em there with their families.

The gates of the city, which were cover'd with plates of iron, adorn'd with sculptures and many learned inscriptions, were carry'd to Kech, where they remain to this day.

Malek had in possession another place, which he thought impregnable; it was call'd Echhilge, and sometimes Amameb, the government of which he had given to Emir Gouri, the youngest of his sons, who was accounted in Herat the bravest, wisest and most experienced lord of the kingdom. The emperor order'd Malek to bring him to court, and at the same time prohibited his entering into the citadel, and threaten'd to make him repent it if he did so. This prince went to the walls of Echhilge, as he was order'd; and having resolv'd to comply with this difficult proposal, he had recourse to his prudence, and conducted himself so well in this affair, that by his fine speeches he persuaded his son to come out, and he brought him to court: where he had the honor to kill the imperial carpet. Timur gave him a handsom reception, highly faver'd him, and presented him with a royal veil.
CHAP. XXXIV.

The army marches to Tous and Kelat.

TIMUR, being highly pleas'd with his success at Herat, sent Gehanchah Yakon with troops, to conquer the towns of Nichbour and Schzmar; but as the affair of Ali Bei disquieted him, he march'd in person to Kelat and Tous; and when he was arriv'd at the tomb of About Muleim Meroumi *, he got off his horse to make a visit to it, according to the custom of pious men, besought God to assist him, and to give him strength sufficient to conquer his enemies.

The news of the emperor's march troubled Ali Bei; his heart was a long time divided between hope and fear; but at length, notwithstanding the confusion he was in, he resolv'd to obey; he came with expedition to Timur's camp to submit, and had the honor of killing the carpet of the throne. Coja Ali Muzid a Serbedal, who was governor of Schzmar, having advice of the army's march, came also immediately to court. The emperor receiv'd 'em with his ordinary clemency, and after having loaded 'em with favors, gave them a belt and sword, as also a robe of honor; and thus these two princes were treated in a more obliging manner than they even dar'd to hope for.

* General of the army of About Abbas, first Caliph of the house of the Abasites, and to whom these princes ow'd their advancement to the Caliphate.
Timur at the same time took horse to march to Esferain, which was in the hands of the lieutenants of the Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran. As soon as he arriv'd there, he gave orders for dispatching the siege of this town; the soldiers had no sooner fix'd their站着 in the camp where they design'd to prepare their machines of war, than hanging their bucklers upon their necks, they march'd forth with to the walls, in which they made considerable breaches, and enter'd the town: they put to the sword a great number of people, and destroy'd all their houses, the most considerable as well as those of least value; so that there remain'd to that great town only the name of Esferain, which it cou'd not be depris'd of.

Timur sent an ambassador into Mazendran to the Emir Veli, to tell this prince, that if he come before him without resistance and with expedition, to obtain the honor of kissing the carpet of his throne, he would distinguish him from his equals by imperial favors, and raise him above 'em; but if, thro' his stubbornness, he should refuse to appear, he would by that means become very unfortunate.

This prince treated the ambassador with all manner of civility, gave him a handsom reception, kis'd the letter which was presented him, laid it upon his head, profes's'd his submission, and promis'd to come to the throne in a short time, and employ all his care in meritng to be of the number of the emperor's servants.

* Otherwise called Nemoradigan, a town in Corassia, between Nichabour and Juran, dependent on Nichabour; long. 91° 31′ 30″; lat. 35° 44″.
The history of Timur-Bec.

When the ambassador was upon his return, Timur went to a pleasure-house nam'd Ogou Yaton Yailac, an agreeable place for the summer, where he stayed some days to give time to his soldiers to bring up their horses, and to refresh themselves in a delicious meadow there, after the fatigue they had undergone.

During these transactions they put to death the band of robbers, inhabitants of Courache, of whom we have before spoken, who were so bold as to kill the Emir Hadgi Berlas, and his brother Aidlecou, very near relations of Timur. This emperor gave the principality of this country to Mehemed Dervich fon of Aidlecou, and to Ali Dervich grand-fon of the Emir Hadgi; and at present it belongs to their family.

CHAP. XXXV.

Timur returns to Samarcand.

The emperor having made several regulations as to the policy of the kingdom of Corallana, which he had reduce'd to obedience; he dismiss'd Malek Cayafeddin prince of Herat, and the other princes and governors, each of whom he confirm'd in their respective governments. Emir Cheik Sebzuari, who before the conquest of Corallana had quitted Malek, and put himself under the protection of the emperor, having had the good fortune for some years to serve this prince, was honor'd with the highest post in the town of Sebzuar; and Taban Behader was made governor of that country.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. country: after which the emperor happily return'd to his capital city.

This monarch being on his return thither, went to pass the winter in the proud city of Boesra, where loaded with grandeur and glory, he pass'd his days in pleasure; and the Mirza Miran Chah his son, who by his order was gone to Serac, having feiz'd on Mehemed brother of Malek Cayaedddin, sent him to Samarcand, where he remain'd during winter.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bai, son of the Emir Moussa.

To verify what is said in the Alcoran, that there is no joy without sorrow, nor marriage without mourning, Timur, in the midst of his prosperity, was afflicted by the death of Tagi Can his daughter, also call'd Akia Beghi.

This princess was marry'd to Mehemed Bai, son of the Emir Moussa: she had scarce her equal in beauty and virtue; her mind was adorn'd with the brightest graces, and her behavior attracted the love of all: in short, she was endow'd with such charming qualities, that the emperor her father lov'd her tenderly. Nevertheless her constitution decaying, she was seiz'd with a pining sickness, by which she walked away; infomuch that the fatal moment arriv'd, in which princes as well as peasants, the powerful as well
The history of Timur-Bec.

well as the weak, are oblig’d to submit to the decrees of fate: all the care that was taken to relieve her was useless, and she gave up to the angel Israel her life, which she had only in trust, leaving behind her a son nam’d Sultan Haftein.

The emperor Timur, who boasted that he was able to withstand the shock of misfortunes, was so afflicted at her death, that he forbade every one his presence; so that grief having seiz’d the heart of the people, they rent their clothes, cover’d their heads with dust, and tied black felt about their necks.

The funeral obsequies were perform’d according to the maxims of the Mahometan law; her body was wath’d upon a table of gold, enrich’d with pearls and precious stones; they then laid her in a coffin of aloes-wood, and recommend’d her soul to God. The coffin was carry’d to the city of Kech, where it was laid in a magnificent tomb. The emperor, after this was over, having receiv’d the formal compliments of all the court, distributed victuals and alms among the poor in great abundance.

In the mean while advice was brought from Coraffana, that Ali Beel, in conjunction with the Emir Vell, had brought his troops into the field against Ali Muaid, and besieg’d him in the town of Sebzuar.

Timur, highly afflicted at the decease of his dearest daughter, had no regard to the affairs of this world, notwithstanding the ambition he had formerly shewn; wherefore he took no notice of this advice, nor seem’d any way affe...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. setled with it; in short, he continu'd in this mood, till the prince's Cotlie Turnan Aga, his sister, who could not bear the thoughts of his spending his time after this manner, came to him: she professed how much she sympathiz'd with him in his grief; but at the same time she gave him some agreeable advice, and told him, That since there was no remedy for the misfortune which caus'd his sorrow, he ought not entirely to abandon the care of the affairs of the empire; that this neglect would bring disorder into his town, and make the poor people despair: that it was better to free his mind from inquietude, which was prejudicial to him; and to shew that his zeal had no other aim than that of well-governing the empire, and remedying the necessities of the state.

"March, says she, towards Mazendran* and Kelat, to chastifie those proud rebels, who have had the insolence to depart from their obedience: treat 'em in such a manner, that it may serve for an example to others; spare not their lives; pillage their houses; and in short, let 'em receive a punishment adequate to their crimes, that the innocent fall not into misfortune and trouble, by departing from their duty at the instigation of the wicked."

The words of this princess had the desir'd effect on the emperor's mind, who knew they proceed'd only from pure friendship; they roused and animated his virtue; and at the same time he resolved on his march to Caraffana and Mazendran.

* A province S. E. of the Caspian see.
* A town S. of Mazendran, between Maran and Tour.

CHAP.
C H A P. XXXVII.

Timur's second expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Persia.

The emperor order'd his troops to be got together, tho' it was the middle of winter; and his army being in a readiness, he march'd from Bocara towards Iran. He pass'd the desert, and arriv'd at Amouye upon the Sihon, where the engineers had no sooner built a bridge of boats, than this conqueror crossed the river at the head of all his troops, entering a second time upon the territories of Iran or Persia. It is said, that at that time Asia trembled from China even to the borders of Greece.

Having pass'd by the country of Macan *, the army encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Kelar. Mirza Miran Chah coming from Seracs †, with his army join'd the imperial camp, and Malek Cayeseddin also join'd it with the troops he brought from Herat. But Ali Bei, instead of following their example, got the start of the army, and shut up all the inhabitants with his family and effects in the fortress of Kelar.

Yet the emperor was indulgent to him, and in consideration of the alliance between 'em, would not immediately take occasion from his fault to be angry with him; but sent a mef-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. longer to him to know the cause of his fear, and to tell him he might come to court with full assurance that no act of hostility should be used against him; but if he would not obey, he must acknowledge himself the occasion of all the misfortunes which should happen to him; and that he should be blameable for it. But as the time was come when the prosperity of Ali Bei must have an end, he did not consult his reason, but defied the counsels with which the emperor, thro his clemency, honor'd him, and had recourse to this passage of the Alcoran, I will fix to a mountain, which will scale me: and thus relying on the mountain of Kelat, which he imagined inaccessible, he did not come to the imperial camp to offer his service to the emperor.

Timur decamp'd in the territory of Kelat, and went down to Coran, which was dependent on Abiverd, and order'd it to be proclaimed in his army that he was about to march to Mazendran against Vell: notwithstanding which he took a different road, and turn'd to Kelat, imitating in that king Behmen, whom the author of Chah Name mentions in his verses, who designing to march to the country of Zabul to conquer it, gave out that he should go to the left hand, but at the same time went to the right.

Ali Bei and his men obtain'd fresh vigor, on advice that the imperial army would march to Mazendran; whereupon he sent out of the forts, and into the meadows the horses, flocks of

---

* A town formerly call'd Bayred, N. of Corfiana near Tous, in the defect of Kivas; Long. 53° Lat. 37° 30'.

* A general history of Persia, written in ancient Persian.
sheep, and other beasts which had been shut up in it.

But Timur, instead of going to Mazendran, returned to Kelat with the army, which ravaged all the country; and over against the gate of Kelat, call'd the gate of the four villages, a dome was rais'd, under which was fix'd the emperor's throne, and the standard was erect'd near it.

The army, almost affright'd of the compact, invested Kelat on all sides; the Mirza Mirza Chah encamp'd over against the gate of Dehla; the Mirza Ali, son of the Amir Muzafful Eral, in the passage of Lohra; the Amir Hadgi Seifeddin pull'd himself in the defile of Argoun Chah; and the Mirza Omar Chich planted his standard at another gate. Fear seiz'd on Ali Bei, who being in an ill posture of defence, was obliq'd to have recourse again to the goodness of the emperor; to whom he represented by a submittive letter, which he got to be laid before him. That being confound'd at his bad actions, he dar'd not come to call himself at his feet, to implore his clemency, before he had begg'd pardon; but if thro' his royal goodness he would forgive him, and take the trouble to come to the gate of the town, accompany'd only by a few men, he would come out as his slave, to call himself at his feet, and ask pardon for his faults. Timur granted the petition of Ali Bei, and having appointed a day to go to the gate of the town, he did not fail to be there with five horsemen only.

The walls of Kelat were built upon the brink of a high mountain, in which there was a narrow passage by the side of the walls among the rocks; which way was shut in by a gate, and join'd to that of the town.
Book II. Ali Bel having notice that Timur was come to the appointed place with but a few men, his malice, or rather his ill fortune, excited him to betray him, and to surprize him by some villains who lay in ambuscade in the way, and whom he had order'd to kill the prince, if they should have an opportunity.

In the mean while the traitor did not keep his word, not imagining that he whom God protects can receive no damage from any one, whatever artifice should be made use of to destroy him. In short, as if the villains had been blind, they could not come out of their ambuscade, nor even hold open the door of the place by which they must have put in execution the orders given 'em; so that Timur having laid a long time at the place appointed, return'd to his camp without receiving any harm.

As soon as Timur was come down from the mountain, all the generals flock'd to salute him; and every one paid his compliments to him upon the danger he had escap'd.

When the treason and faithlesness of Ali Bel was fully known by his breach of promise, the emperor was enraged, and commanded a general assault to be given, and the bravest men of the army to mount the walls of Kela in those places which should be mark'd out for 'em. The troops advance'd, and without fear of death, did all that could be expected from courage and resolution.

In the beginning of the month of Rabiuleval, Heg. 78, which answers to the year of the Hog, the emperor order'd that the soldiers of the troops of Morrit * and Bedakhan, the most able men in the world to march over mountains, and surmount the difficulties of narrow passages, should scale the walls. The same night
night they obey'd, and got on the top of the Chapuy-
mountain, and at the sound of kettle-drums and
trumpets came to the gates of the town. Timur
hailed thither also with a troop of his most valiant
officers who march'd before him, among whom
were the celebrated Akimur Behader, and the
brave Ainoutmur, who briskly repuls'd the
enemys they met, and got upon the mountain.
Omar Abbas and Muhacher, who were got
up before the others, expected their comrades
under a kind of vault, where the soldiers of the
town attack'd 'em; but Timur immediately sent
thither a troop of the bravest men of the army,
who with their swords put 'em to the rout:
the victorious troops, after having entirely beat
the enemy, return'd from the mountain, and
the vanquish'd demanded quarter.

Ali Bei, reduce'd to the last extremity, sent to
Timur to beseech him that the soldiers might
give over the slaughter, on condition he shou'd
come out the next day to make his submission,
and assure him of his obedience. He promis'd
this in an agreement which he sign'd, and con-
firm'd by an oath; and as a security for his fide-
licity sent Nicrouz and Mehemed Choik Hadgi,
who were the principal Emirs of the board of
Youn Garbani*, with his sister Can Sultan,
who had been promis'd in marriage to Mirza
Mehemed Sultan.

These envoys call themselves at the feet of
Timur with the greatest humility, and inter-
ceded for Ali Bei: the emperor, thro' his ele-
mony, granted them what they desir'd, and
being willing to lay hold on the agreement of

* The same as the province of Toun, in Coreazan, near
Andizan, mention'd by Alrugeda.
Book II. Ali Bei, and give credit to it, he at the same time sent orders to his troops to cease the slaughter, and to Nieroux and Mehemed to follow him to his camp, which they obey'd.

The next morning, at sun-rising, Timur took horse, and went to the gate of the town; Ali Bei was then constrain'd to come out and submit: he confess'd his faults, and begg'd his life Timur was again so generous as to pardon him, and even to grant him the favor he request'd, which was to exempt him from coming to court that day, on his promising not to fail coming the next, to have the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne.

But as the end of Pir Ali's good fortune was near, despair wou'd not permit him to act with reason, nor shew any honor in his conduct. This unfortunate prince again built castles in the air, and intended only base actions: he employ'd the night in fortifying and barricading the passag Lohra, and some other passages, by which the troops of Timur had scale the mountain; and he fitt himself up in this inclosure of rocks, that he might avoid keeping his promise.

Timur departed fourteen days after, and went to the fortresses of Cahecha, between Baverd and Kelat; the emperor gave orders to rebuild it, and the soldiers so industriously apply'd themselves to it, that in two days and nights it was entirely rebuilt: he gave the government of it to Hadji Coja, and fortify'd it with a strong garrison. He sent to the other side of the country Siorgatmich Can, Mirza Ali, and the brave Cheik Ali, with the troops of their Toman, to guard the road to Kelat, and to block up the passagges with so much precaution, that this place shou'd be a fort
fort of a prison, from whence no one cou'd go Chap. 38: in or come out to carry any refreshment to the prince.

### C H A P. XXXVIII.

**Reduction of the town of Terchiz: in Corassana.**

TIMUR, by his good conduct, having in effect render'd Kelat a sepulchre to his enemies, took up a resolution to reduce Terchiz, and in order thereunto march'd thither with his army: he pass'd by Yassi Dapan, and arriv'd at Cabouchan, from whence he sent to Samarkand the princes Dilchadaga, who was indisposed. As soon as the conqueror was come to Terchiz, the troops rang'd themselves round the place. This famous fortress being among mountains, was almost inaccessible, and fai'd to have been impregnable, because of the extraordinary height of its walls, and the excessive breadth and depth of its ditches.

The garrison of Terchiz was at that time compos'd of Sedidians, so call'd, because the Emir Cayafeddin had given the care of this place to the Emir Ali Sedidi, who had brought em in; and these Sedidians were for the most part Gouris, men famous for their valor and skill in defending places. This town, by their good conduct, was furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines, great store of victuals, and a

---

* Long. 22. lat. 34.*

* A town dependent on Nichaibur in Corassana.*

**Vol. I. Q**

**brave**
Book II. brave number of soldiers, who were resolved to defend themselves to the last. When Timur had seen 'em in action, he complain'd to Malek Gayafeddin of their resistance, and told him, that these men whom he had put into this place, being under his command, he wonder'd they should continue in rebellion, since himself had submitted to his orders and obey'd him.

Gayafeddin said, they did it thru ignorance and want of good sense; and therefore he would go and confer with 'em. in short, he went to the foot of the walls to command 'em to submit; but notwithstanding his injunctions and counsels, they would neither obey him nor desist out of the place: so that the emperor was obliged to besiege it in form. When he had sent out his orders to the army, the officers caus'd it to be invested on all sides; the Tatars and Huzares repair'd to their posts, and forthwith 'em, and at the same time began the attack.

Every day Timur did round the place, and examine the out-ports: the engineers with all expedition rais'd battering rams and other machines necessary for the siege, and presently got 'em in a readiness: the miners and pioneers rais'd, the ditches; and at length undermin'd the walls, while our warriors assail'd 'em on every side, and perform'd many glorious actions. The besiegers bravely resist'd 'em, and shew'd so much courage, that it is impossible to imagine such fury in warriors. The attack and the defense were sustained with equal resolution; but at length our soldiers, receiv'd every day fresh succours, so ruin'd the walls and breach'd the works by the stones which were cast, and by the battering rams and other machines, that the place was almost destroy'd.
The history of Timur-Beg.

And as the prosperity of Timur was the certain effect of heaven, which humane strength and the most heroic valor are not able to resist, the Scythisans, being terrified by seeing their affairs reduced so low, lost all courage, and begged for quarter. The ever-merciful emperor granted what they asked, and even used good words to encourage them; yet they went out of the town very much afraid, tho' they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet; they were enrolled in Timur's service, and acquitted themselves in a very becoming manner.

This monarch knowing their valor, cared for them, gave them lordships, and made them governors of towns and other places on the frontiers of Persia. As soon as they were gone out of Terchis, Mirza Miran-Chah conferred on Sarah Erke the government of the place.

---

CHAP. XXXIX.

The arrival of an ambassador from Fars, or the true Persia, at the court of Timur.

Elaledin Chah Cheja was at this time sovereign of the country of Fars, that is, of the province of Chiraz and Persepolis. He was the flower and glory of the family of Moutzaffer, who used to be mediator in public treaties. This wise prince, thro' the inspiration of his good fortune, made haste to testify his friendship to the officers of the emperor; and sent to court Omer Chah, who was one of the principal Emirs, with a letter, which, after the usual compliments, assured Timur of his services and sincere friendship. He loaded this ambas-
book II. balladore with presents, which were curious precious stones, as also pearls worthy to be presented to emperors; gold rings, gold money, rich stuffs, rarities of great price, Arabian horses, excellent mules for running, cover'd with saddles of gold; and many lots of mules, fix in a lot, with harnesses of great price, carriages adorn'd with silk stuffs, choice furniture, a great scarlet canopy, a royal pavilion, a tent, and a great umbrella, which were of rich and sumptuous stuffs, with divers ornaments.

Omar Chah, being arriv'd at court, had the happiness at his audience to kiss the carpet. After having made the usual compliments, he presented to the emperor the letter, and presents from his master, which he distributed among the officers. This prince receiv'd him with the greatest respect, and confer'd several favors upon him: he present'd him with pieces of gold, veils of honor, and horses; and after having answer'd Gelaleddin's letter, sent him back very well satisfy'd with his negociation; and with the obliging expressions he had receive'd. Timur commanded one of his officers to accompany him, whom he loaded with curious presents for the king of Persia; and he order'd this envoy to demand in marriage of Gelaleddin the princess his daughter for his grandson, Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Mirza Gehanghir, to perpetuate and strengthen their friendship and alliance.
CHAP. XL.

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

WHEN the imperial officers had got Terekchiz register'd in the roll of conquests, and Timur had plac'd his governors there, he caus'd his army to march to Mazendran. He pass'd by the road of Roughi, and order'd his forces to march to Keboud Jaeme, and to Chamian. The Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran, surpriz'd at this news, sent the Emir Hadj, and others of his greatest favorites, to the imperial camp, with several horses, whose harnesses were new; as also curiosities of several sorts.

His letter was presented to the emperor, whom he besought to excuse him from waiting on him that day, and to order his army to leave his country, that to his poor servant finding himself in security, might again rejoice in his good fortune, come to court with expedition, and have the honor of spending the remainder of his life in his interest and service. Timur, thro' an excess of goodness, granted the demands of his letter; and dismiss'd his envoy with satisfaction.

In the mean while advice was brought from Kelat, that Cheik Ali Behader, having diligently examin'd the passages of that place, had mounted the walls in the night, accompany'd only with a few faithful domesticks, without mentioning it to the Emir Ali Bei; but that he had mistaken his way thro' the darkness of the night; that he had met with a high arch from whence
whence he was persuaded by the enemy, who assailed them with all diligence, and getting possession of the passes, put themselves in a condition to repulse them. Cheik Ali bravely attacked them, and the two parties made the greatest noise, the usual signals for a battle. The fight was bloody, and the soldiers were so animated against one another, that they would listen to no other words than those which encouraged the slaughter of the enemy. In short, many warriors on both sides were killed, but as the quivers were emptied, some persons, thro' a religious motive, laboured at an accommodation, in which the goodness of God, they succeeded; and Ali Bei spake to the Cheik Ali Behadir: they embraced one another in token of peace and friendship, and Ali Bei obliged the other to pray with him, where he received all imaginable civilities and handsome entertainment; they conversed together for many days, Ali Bei hoping, thro' the intercession of the Cheik, the emperor would pardon his past faults.

Timur having agreed to the prince of Mazendran's request, because he had voluntarily submitted, marched towards his capital. He passed by Chamigan and Tchamagan, and encamped in the meadow of Radeeck. At this place the Cheik Ali Behadir, and those who accompanied him, joined the imperial camp; and this general procured for Ali Bei the honor of killing the imperial carpenter, having a sword and a handkerchief in his hand. The Cheik knelt down, and beheld the emperor to grant his pardon to Ali Bei. Timur did so, and afterwards caressed and made him several presents.

This action of the Cheik very much pleased Timur, and increased his reputation at court.
The history of Timur-Bec.

he gave him Rudecan, in quality of a lordship, and Siorgal.

This monarch also gave Sehzuar to Ali Muhald Serbedal, and ordered that Malek Cayafeeddin, and his children, as well as Ali Bei, and his men, should be conducted to Samarcand. He then distributed all the country of Yom Garbani to his Emirs; but he ordered the inhabitants and families in it to be conducted to Tranfioxiana.

CHAP. XLI.

Timur marches to Samarcand, Death of the empress Dilchadega, and of the princess Cotlac-Turcan Aqa, Timur's sister.

TIMUR having no more enemies to fear in the kingdom of Coriana, and the lieutenants of Mirza Miran Chah being established in the possession of the towns and other places of the country; he gave leave to the troops to march to their quarters, and departed with expedition for the capital city of his empire.

When the inhabitants of Samarcand saw the court, which was finer than ever it had been before, in their city, they were exceedingly overjoy'd.

They bound Ali Bei, prince of Kelat, as well as the Emir Gouri son of Malek Cayafeeddin, and Malek Mehemed his brother, and sent'em to Andecan, to Mirza Omar Cheilli. The lord of Yom Garbani was also sent to Tach-

* Siorgal is a gift the king makes to any one of a lordship, which he and his heirs enjoy for ever.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. Hunt, and Malek Cayaseddin, with his eldest son Pir Mehemed, were kept at Samarcand.

During the winter the following affair happened at Herat. The two sons of Malek Faereddin and of his brother, making no figure in Herat, when this country was taken, nor during the government of Malek Hulfeen, or of his son Malek Cayaseddin, liv'd in extreme poverty; but when Timur conquer'd Herat, these princes represented to him their misery, and told him, that having the honor to be his servants, they took the liberty to let him know that they were cousins-german to Malek Hulfeen, father of Malek Cayaseddin; that these two princes had made themselves masters of their effects, and that they cou'd have no hopes of recovering 'em but thro his protection. The emperor was touch'd with their misfortune, and gave the government of Gour to the eldest, nam'd Malek Mehemed. About the same time a Gouri, nam'd Aboufaid Elphabhed, a man of dauntless courage, who had been put in irons by the order of Malek Cayaseddin, and remain'd in prison ten years, was releas'd by the favor of Timur.

Towards the end of the year of the Hegir 784, the Mirza Miran Chah, having pass'd the winter with the Emirs upon the bank of the river of Morgals in a place nam'd Yendi, which the Persians call Pentehdeh, that is, the five villages; it happen'd that Malek Mehemed governor of Gour, thro his folly and ignorance, with a troop of Gouris more ignorant than himself, march'd to Herat, and was join'd in the way by Aboufaid Elphabhed; and when they were arriv'd in the city, another band of rascally fellows, highwaymen, and vagabonds also join'd 'em; and being assembld together,
they committed great disorders and unheard-of acts of injustice, cruelty and abomination. The governor, intendants, and officers of the Emirs retir'd of their own accord into the fortresses of Ernafeddin, the gates of which the rebels burnt; which to much astonish'd the garrison of the Turks, that without taking care of any thing, they flung themselves off the walls, to endeavour to save their lives: but there was no quarter granted 'em, and no one cou'd save himself from the hands of the rebels.

The Mirza Miran Chah having advice of these disorders, sent with all expedition the Emirs Selfeddin and Aebouga with some troops to Herat, and himself march'd thither afterwards with an army.

When the Emirs arriv'd, the Gouris advance'd to repulse 'em, and gave 'em battle at the end of the street of Khatvan; but they were defeated, and many of 'em slain. Some of 'em fled into the city, and dispers'd themselves during night: and as the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd about that time, his troops drew their swords to chastise this rabble, and flew to great a number of 'em, that they built a very high tower with their heads, as an example for the future to seditious persons. ¹

When the emperor heard of this news, which was brought him by the Mirza Miran Chah, he gave orders that Malek Cayafeddin, who was imprison'd in the fortresses of Samarcand, his brother Malek Mehmed, his grandson the Emir Gouri, and Ali Bel Youn Garbani, shou'd be all put to death.

¹ This circumstance ought not to surprise the reader, nor appear to him incredible, there actually being till this day at Iliphan, capital of Persia, such an edifice built of the skulls of wild bulls.
In the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the Mouse, the most illustrious princess Dilvedadaga, wife of Timur, pas'd from this world into the other; and some days after her decease, dy'd also Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister, famous among the princesses in her time for her piety and charity, which consisted in founding of hospitals, mosques, colleges, and many other publick works for the assistance of the people, who all by this means partook of her bounty.

She was bury'd near prince Cotfam son of Elabbas. The emperor was highly afflicted at this los's for a long time. Every one paid his complements of condolence with the usual ceremonies; and he did several charitable things for the repose of the souls of the deceased, and gave abundance of alms to the poor who deserv'd 'em: but because his natural good nature caus'd in him an extraordinary sorrow, which kept him too long from the care of the affairs of state, the Cherif, doctors, old men and religious, among whom were Seid Bereke, Coja Abdimaliek, and Cheik Zade Sagpezdgi, presented themselves before him, and comforted him by an agreeable conversation drawn from the tradition and discourses of Mahomet, from the Alcoran it self, and from many pious historians; who excited in him the desire of taking upon him the care of the people and army, and of rendering justice. In short, he approve'd of this maxim, as he had done before, that an hour only employ'd by a prince in executing justice, was of more importance than the worship given to God, and the prayers made during one's whole life: so that being at last comforted by the verse of the Alcoran, which tells us, That we must return to God, because we are his: he
The history of Timur-Bec, he for the future employ'd all his zeal in the regulation of the state and religion.

C H A P. XLII.

Timur sends a sixth army into the country of the Getes.

The emperor having learnt that there were disorders committed in some places of the country of the Getes, commanded Mirza Ali to march thither with an army, to destroy the seditions people of that country, the greatest part of whom were not Mahometans; he recommended to him principally to pursue Camereddin, the author of those troubles; and then he went to Kech. On advice of Mirza Ali's departing with his army, the people of Behrin laid an ambuscade to surprize him, and succeeded so well in it, that they plunder'd all his bag-gage, vanquish'd, and oblig'd him to return to the emperor.

The emperor at the same time, to revenge himself on these rash people, sent the Cheikh Ali Behader, Seif Elmullone, Atilmich, and Argoun Chiah Edchi, with troops to make war on 'em; and as he heard no news from 'em so soon as he expected, he sent after 'em the Emir Ge-hanehan Yakou, Elchi Booga, Chamfeddin, Outcheara, and Saintemaure Behader, with ten thousand horse: but these Emirs were scarcely come to Atacum, when they met those upon their return who were sent before 'em, and had overtaken the people of Behrin, of whom they had kill'd a great number, pillag'd their country, and made many slaves. But as the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. the Emir Gehanchah had orders to seek out Camareddin; he oblig'd the former Emirs to return with him to that expedition. They went together to Issigheal, and from thence as far as Chevóopa, in search of Camareddin; but not being able to find him, they return'd to Samarcand in autumn, and had the honor to salute the emperor.

C H A P. XLIII.

Timur marches to Mazendaran, and thence to Sistan.

Timur having resolve'd to march in that season to Mazendaran, gave orders for the raising of fresh troops, to render his army more formidable. When all was ready, he took horse at the happy moment, according to the observations which were made; and having reviewed all the troops, and displayed his standard, he march'd towards Mazendaran. After having encamp'd and decamp'd many times, he arriv'd at Termed; and order'd that the victuals for his army shou'd be brought thither. This prince caus'd a bridge to be built in a narrow passage, where having crost the river of Morgab, he encamp'd on its banks; the Emir Yahou, governor of Cabulistan *, had the honor to lift the carpet in the camp, where he gave an account of the affairs he had in charge, and at the

* This province, whose capital city is Cabul, hath on the S. Zebulatestan, on the N. Sadakhan, on the E. the kingdoms of China and Corea, and on the W. Those of Birmian, Core and Bavec.
The history of Timur-Bec.

same time deliver'd orders from the emperor, relating to the government of his frontiers.

During these transactions, advice was brought that the Toman of Niconikari, which inhabited a place fit for the summer season, design'd to revolt; and that Cheik Daoud Sebzuari, whom Timur had honor'd by making him chief of Sebzuar, had been guilty of so much ingratitude and insolence, as to kill Tahan Behader governor of that town, by which action he declar'd himself a rebel; that the Mirza Miran Chah, having notice of it, had sent the Emir Aebouqa of Herat at the head of an army to Sebzuar, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin had follow'd him with fresh assistance; that they had besieged Sebzuar, and put abundance of the rebels to the sword; after having taken this town; that the Cheik Daoud fled, and retir'd into the fortresses of Bedrubad, situate on the ridge of a mountain, where he had fortified himself; but that the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin, and Aebouqa, had actually besieged it. Timur had no sooner heard of this rebellion, and that of the country of Sijtan, than he sent the Cheik Ali Behader and Ounchara Behader, at the head of a great army, against the Emir Veit, prince of Mazendran, that they might encamp near him, and reduce his frontiers to obedience; and himself march'd towards Sijtan.

His army encamp'd at the beginning of the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 785, before the town of Herat, the inhabitants of which, as we said before, were join'd with the Gouris rebels; and the emperor himself march'd to Sebzuar, where he encamp'd. This fortress was attack'd according to his orders, and many breaches were made; the Cheik Yahia Corasani being appointed to direct the miners, the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. the place was so ruin'd, that the greatest part of those within perish'd, and the Cheik Yahia was crush'd to pieces under a wall which fell down.

There were near two thousand slaves taken, who were pelt'd alive one upon the other with mortar and bricks, so that these miserable wretches might serve as a monument to deter others from revolting, who knowing the vengeance of this conqueror, shou'd not bring themselves into this inevitable misfortune, which their pride might tempt 'em to.

When the emperor was satisfy'd with this revenge on the inhabitants of Sebzuar, he regulated his troops, and sent the vanguard to Siffin; whether he afterwards march'd with the rest of the army, which consist'd of a hundred thousand warriors compleat.

The prince Chah Gelaedddin of Feraah having a design to come to Timur's court, had no sooner advice of the march of this monarch than he went out of his fortresses, and came with submission before the imperial standard, with a spirit of sincerity and submission; he made presents to Timur, which indeed were but mean, considering the prince to whom they were presented; for no one was able to make those which were worthy of him; but they were suitable to the ability of Gelaedddin, who well knowing it was his interest to be in favor at court, acquainted the emperor with the resolution he had taken of sacrificing his life in his service.

Timur order'd Ali Timur Behader, and other captains, to make inroads in the neighbourhood of the town of Siffin, and pillage that country. They executed this order with expedition, and so much vigor, that the gates of the town were beaten to pieces; and as soon as the army had pass'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

chap. xliv.

Town of Sistan, besieged, and taken.

The emperor having ranc'd his army in form of a crown round the place, advance'd to the gate of the town with a troop of chosen men, in whom he cou'd confide, and got upon a hill of land, Chahchahan Tageddin Sistan, with many others, came out from Chah Corobeddin to find the emperor, whom they had the honor to salute: after having given assurances of their obedience and submission, they besought Timur to permit 'em to pay him a tribute and the ordinary customs; but during this conference with the emperor, the besieged came in multitudes with good troops, and prepare'd themselves for the fight. Timur, who knew of their design, plac'd two thousand horse in ambush, and order'd Mehemed Sultan

1. Near a lake in Sistan, to which it gives its name.
2. A town and province. The town, otherwise call'd Zaring, is situated in long. 07. lat. 32. 70. on the river Sena-rod, which is a branch of the Hindon, which discharges it into the lake of Zere. This province, which is part of Corbiana, is otherwise call'd Sedgegan and Numous.

Chah
Book II. Chah to advance with a few men, and begin the fight; but at length, on pretence of flying, to turn to the right with what cavalry he had. This order was executed: and the enemies, who were only foot, growing precipitous on this height, sail'd not to pursue 'em vigorously as far as the place where the ambush was laid; but the scee horse fell on 'em with fury, and there was a bloody battel. The enemies infantry wounded many of the horsemen with their swords, and abundance were slain; but the lances kill'd a great number of the enemy, and the rest were closely pursu'd even to the gates of the town. The approach of night put a stop to the battel; but the next morning, the crys and trumpets were heard on all sides. The emperor in person commanded the main body; and under him Mirza Miran Chah, the right wing, being assisted by the great Emirs, among whom were Hadgi Seifeddin, Azbeuga Behader, and other princes of the royal blood; and the left wing was led by the Emir Sar Bouga, who had near him Codulal the son of Hulfein. Our troops march'd round the place, and having in a manner block'd it up, beat their kettledrums, to signify that it was time to begin the attack; they continu'd to sound the trumpet, and having made the great cry, dug a ditch before 'em, and there fix'd palisades, and did many other things till night came on.

Then two thousand of the enemy fell out to surprize the besiegers; and having agreed to attack the quarter of the Emir Chamfeddin Abbas and Behrat Goja, they cross'd the ditch, being favor'd by the night, and advanced as far as the tents, and even to the middle of the camp, where they slew some horses and camels. But our captains, who were willing to engage these
The history of Timur-Bec.

these rash fellows, hitt'd them to cross the ditch, and discharg'd so many arrows on 'em, that they hitt'd a great number, and wounded the rest, who with great difficulty retreated into the town.

The army march'd the next day to the place, and attack'd it on all sides. The attack was answer'd by those who sall'd out to repulse the besiegers: but the standard of the prophet being display'd, the Mirza Ali with five hundred horse fell upon the enemy, and repuls'd 'em as far as the town, which he enter'd with his battalion: nevertheless he was releas'd by the brave men of the country of Zabol, who having no longer any thoughts of saving their lives, but only of performing heroic actions, not only releas'd him with extreme valor, but being succour'd by a troop of others who follow'd 'em, shot the gate upon our warriors, and kept 'em close in the town. This action rekindled the fury of both parties, and reviv'd in the Zabulians the memory of the history of the son of Dafan.

Aktimur Behader, having advice that the gate of the town was shut upon the Mirza Ali, ran thither full speed with a thousand horse, the most valiant soldiers of the army. They cut the gate to pieces with their swords, slew the guards, and dispers'd the soldiers who had shut the gate on our men; by which means the Mirza Ali went out of Sifian in triumph, with those who were under his command, and came to the imperial camp.

* Roufien, the son of Zal, surnam'd Dafan, born at Zabol, of which place he was king; the greatest hero the history of Persia ever mention'd.
Book II.  Chah Cotobeddin, king of this country, not being able to defend himself against an army so numerous and formidable as that of Timur, found himself obliged to submit; he came out of the town to ask pardon of the emperor, and made the following speech: "Great prince, in vain I strive to defend myself against you, whose mighty arm is able, if I may so say, to bend mountains. Of what use will it be to me to tempt fortune, who has rais'd you to such a height, that you seem able to command even her? No, my lord, I see no other means of saving my life than by flight. But what place is there for me to retire to, where I may shelter my self from your vengeance? since every one obeys your power? There is no asylum under heaven in which I can better trust, than your royal clemency. Yes, my lord, I have fled to save myself from you, but 'tis to you I have fled."

The emperor not only pardoned him, but even distinguished him from the other princes by his favors.

After this action, Timur having on a plain coasts without sleeves, mounted his bay horse, and with fifteen men only rode to the left wing of the army to review it; but at the same time he had advice that between twenty and thirty thousand of the populace of Sifian, the their prince was gone out of the town, and had presented himself before the imperial throne, being arm'd with bows and arrows, had slid down the walls, holding by one another's hands, and had the boldness to march against the victorious army: which oblig'd Timur to turn towards the body of his army to command 'em; but as the enemy let fly a great number of arrows, Timur's
min's horse was wounded. The emperor was no sooner come to his tent, than he put Chah Cotobeddin in irons; and having rang'd his army in order, he was about to march in person to the fight; but the most affectionate Emirs took hold on his horse's bridle, and on their knees represented to him, that he had many years to live under his auspicious fortune, and as long as any of them remain'd, he ought to undertake no action, in which the least danger might be suspected. Timur, at the pressing instances of his officers, had no sooner turn'd his horse, than all the Emirs fell to furiously upon the enemy, with their arrows and swords, that they cur'd them in pieces, crush'd a great number of 'em under their horses feet, and wounded others, who with difficulty retir'd into the city, the gate of which they shut with the utmost expedition. The victorious soldiers pursu'd their victory, gave a second assault, mounted the breast-works; and having made many breaches, enter'd the place, of which they made themselves masters, ruin'd the houses and public edifices, put to the sword those horse who were not slay'n in the fight, and in short raz'd the walls of this fine city, the inhabitants of which they kill'd, both men, women and children, from persons of a hundred years old, to infants in the cradle.

The emperor stay'd there some days, during which time they carry'd away the treasures of the kings of Sifian, and all the precious stones, other riches, and curious pieces of great price. The soldiers took even the very nails of the gates, and burn't every thing which cou'd be combust'd with fire.

Some fabulous authors report, that in the country of Zabulistan a voice was heard, which...
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. advertiz'd the soul of Roustem of all these disorders in these words: "Lift up thy head, behold the condition of thy country of Persia, which is at length reduc'd by the power of the Tartars."

This conquest was made in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the mouse; the year being in capricorn.

They then sent the Chah, that is, the king of Siffin, Cotobeddin, to Samarqand, as also the generals of the army, and governors of the provinces. The town of Ferah was the place of the retreat of the Cadis, doctors, and other lawyers. The brave soldiers who had a share in gaining the victory, enjoy'd the emperor's favors above others; and the government of this province was given to Chachahan.

Roustem had always conquer'd the Tartars, and they could never make themselves masters of any town of Iran when he was alive. He was general of the Persians, king of Zabul under Cyrus and other emperors; and he slew Estendiar, who is thought to have been the same with Xerxes. He liv'd very long, and in four or five reigns. See in the Chah Nami.
C H A P. XLV.

Timur marches to Boff.

AFTER the taking of Sifian, the royal standard was carry'd to Boff *, and the troops in their passage conquer'd the fortress of Tak, which they raz'd to the ground.

And when they were encamp'd on the banks of the river of Hirmen †, they destroy'd an edifice call'd the bank of Roustem; and left no footsteps of that ancient monument.

The army pass'd by Kuke gala, where they had advice that Toumen Nicoudari, was advance'd to the quarters of Kidge ‡ and Mecran, which he closely besieged. Timur judging it convenient to oblige Toumen to return, the Mirza Miran Chah was nam'd for that purpose; and to destroy this rebel, Mireke Mehemed, son of Chir Beliram, the emperor's favorite, sent to accompany the prince the Emir Hasgi Seifeddin, Cheik Ali Argouni Beralas, Sevindigic Behader, and other Emirs. They march'd day and night; and when they had pass'd the desert, they found Toumen with his men of the herd of Nicoudari, encamp'd in the meadow of Coran.

Toumen no sooner had advice that the imperial troops were arriv'd, than he mounted his

---

* A town of the kingdom of Sifian, on the frontier of Zabul; long. 100. lat. 23.
† The same as Hindmand.
‡ A town in the kingdom of Mecran; long. 99. lat. 27. 50.
Book II. horse, and came into the field ready for battel. The Emir Seifeddin his old friend, considering his great age, entertain'd him with all possible respect and civility; he enquir'd of him the state of his health, and strove by the most obliging expressions to bring him over to his duty, assuring him he had nothing to fear from the emperor, but might come with courage to the foot of the throne; and he pray'd him to use no hostility. But fate was wholly set against Toumen; he had no regard to his friend's advice, but began the fight, where he was soon kill'd by a lance, and his head was sent to the emperor.

Timur with the army march'd by the upper part of the river of Hirmen; and as it was for the advancement and honor of monarchy, that whoever should be guilty of disrespect, or commit any insolence against Timur, should receive a punishment suitable to his boldness; it happen'd that the prince of Mam Caton, who had wounded Timur in the hand with an arrow, when he return'd from Siffin accompany'd by the Emir Hufein, at this time came to the court with presents; but at his arrival, he being known to Timur, whose anger was excited, and who would never let treason go unpunish'd; as soon as he was gone out from his presence, he commanded him to be seiz'd, and shot to death with arrows; which punishment appear'd too mild for so great a crime. The victorious troops in their march made themselves masters of the town of Mam Caton, and of Calaisire, which signifies the red fortres.

There were three thousand of Toumen's subjects got together in the town of Hazarpez, the residence of the sede of Touhai, who had flour

* A company of a hundred men.
up the passages of the mountain, and fortify'd themselves. As they did not observe the Mus- 

fulman laws, they committed so many disorders, that the Mahometans were weary of their 

insults, and resolv'd to besiege the town.

The troops on their arrival began to attack it; and at length our valiant soldiers, seconded 

by the good fortune of the emperor, took it by 

assault, tho' it was thought impregnable. The 

rebels were chastis'd; some were call'd headlong 

from the top of the mountain, others were slain, 

and their heads serv'd to build towers, as usual.

Timur march'd from Herapec to the citadel 

of Dehne, of which the lord of Tagatchi had 

made itself master. The men of this lord 

guarded it with a great deal of care; but their 

measures were broken by the strength and valor 

of our troops, who did some memorable ex- 

ploits at this place. They carry'd it by assault, 

put all the garrison to the sword, and built towers 

with their heads, to strike terror into other 

princes.

---

C H A P. XLVI.

War against the Ouganians, inhabitants of the 

mountains, south of Candahar.

The Ouganians had sent some time ago a 

man of the mountain of Couh Solyman, 

to give notice that they were willing to submit 

themselves to the emperor, and to desire from 

him a Deroga; which was granted: but as some 
time after news was brought that they had re- 

volted, the army march'd towards their coun- 

try, with order to fight 'em. This order was 

obey'd;
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. obey'd; and there was a bloody battel. The Mirza Ali Aicoutmur, and some of the troops were wounded; and Nikepei Chah, in losing his life against these infidels, obtain'd the glory of martyrdom. These sad accidents excited the courage of the valiant Akitmur; he cast himself at the emperor's feet, to beg leave of him to permit him to return against the enemys, that he might continue to employ his life in his service, which he had entirely consecrated to that use.

Timur, who knew his intrepidity, fearing lest he shou'd run headlong into too great dangers, refus'd what he demanded; tho many regiments, which had not had the boldness to withstand the enemy, had left the field of battel. In the mean while, Ramadan Coja, who thought it a crime to turn his back upon the enemy, kept firm in his post, and made a brave resistance. Timur commanded Batti Coja Uzbec and Cham-scadin to fall upon 'em; and as they executed this order, Aid Coja, a young man, who had laid in ambuscade on the ridge of rock, dexterously took hold on one of the enemys by the hair of the head, dragg'd him to the ground, and cut off his head, which he carry'd to the emperor: this was look'd upon as an heroic action from so young a man.

At length, all our brave soldiers fell upon the enemys on every side, with so much courage and resolution, that thro' the assistance of heaven and Timur's good fortune, they made themselves masters of the fortress; and oblig'd

* The Mahometans make it an article of their faith, that those who are kill'd in the wars against the infidels are martyrs.

* The fortress of Coub Solymen built upon this mountain.
The history of Timur-Bec.

the perfidious Oghanians to come out of it, Chap. 46.

who were deliver'd to the soldiery, and according

to the laws of Genghiz Can, put to death.

From thence the emperor began his march to

Candahar, to which place he had already sent

Gehen Chah Behader, Moubacher, and Esken-
der Cheiki with troops. Those lieutenants had

seiz'd on the avenues of the place at their arri-

val, and begun the siege; but having had an

opportunity to fight, by an effect of the good

fortune of our prince, they carry'd the town by

assault, seiz'd on the governor of the province,

and having put him in irons, sent him to court,

where he was hang'd.

Timur being come to Candahar, gave a hand-

som reception to Gehen Chah Yakou; he ho-

nor'd him with several presents, and at length

sent him to the town of Calar, at the head of

an army. When he was arriv'd there, he be-

liev'd it, and made several assaults, in which the

enemys had sometimes the worfe, and some-
times the better; but they cou'd by no means

defend themselves against the cunning of the

engineers, who, by undermining under'd the

walls and breast-works on all sides; and by this

means the general made himself master of the

town, the walls and buildings of which he or-

der'd to be raz'd; and then rejoind the imperial

camp, at the same time that Mirza Miran Chah,

returning from Cullar and the Rebat of Sultan

Mahmoud, came before the throne.

* Also seiz'd Gehen Chah Yakou, son of the Emir Yakou.
* A town in the kingdom of Corai near Candahar, different
  from Kehit in Corellana and Eslat in Armenia.
* Rebat signifies a park.

CHAP.
Sistan, Zabulistan, and their dependences, being brought into subjection to Timur, there remain'd no more enemies in these provinces, every one obeying him, which made this monarch desirous, since the charming season was come, to return to the capital city of his empire. He gave both the military and civil government of Candahar to Saifel Berlas Candahari; and he presented Saifel Nicoudari with the Toman of that country; and as the Emir Yakou dy'd in the winter, he gave his place to his son Gehan Chah; and at the same time disbanded the Emirs, officers and troops; and leaving the army, departed with all expedition to Samarcand, where he arriv'd in fourteen days.

The princes and princesses of the blood, accompanied with the other lady's, and all the great lords, Emirs, Cherifs, and other principal persons of the empire, perform'd the ceremony of kissing the earth, and wishing the emperor joy upon his conquests. They also made the usual presents, and sprinkled upon his head pearls, precious stones, and gold-dust; and gave thanks to God for his happy return, and distributed alms. All these demonstrations of zeal and respect were soon after renewed on the birth of a prince, who about this time was born to the emperor; and who was nam'd Ibrahim Sultan; and the Emirs distributed among the people a great deal of money, testify'd their joy by magnificent entertainments and publick feasts; and
The history of Timur-Bec.

and in the assemblies of pleasure they serv'd up wine to increase the joy and diversions. But this prince dy'd very young, and his death caus'd in the emperor a sorrow natural to a father.

C H A P. XLVIII.

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

After the emperor had stay'd three months at Samarcand, he resolv'd to march to Mazendran; but first prepar'd to enter Iran: The army during its march us'd extraordinary expedition to get to Termed; the engineers built a bridge upon the Gihan, which the imperial troops had no sooner cross'd, than all the kingdoms of Iran were in a confusion.

Timur encamp'd at Balc, and stay'd there some days, expecting to be join'd by the troops of the provinces, pursuant to an order he had before given; and his army was soon considerably increas'd, by the arrival of about a hundred thousand horse, whose commanders were arm'd with corails and bucklers.

We have above related that the daughter of Gelaeddin Chah, prince of Fars, had been demand'd in marriage for the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Gehanghir, son of Timur: whereupon in the beginning of the year 785, the emperor sent Oladja Itou and Hadgi Coja, his ambassadors to Fars, to conduct this great prince's to court; which they did accordingly about this time.
The history of Timur-Bec.

The princes Serai Mule Canum, and Touman Aga, accompany'd with many other ladys, went to meet her, and receiv'd her with all imaginable ceremonies and pomp; they sprinkled over her precious stones, pearl-seed, and gold-dust; they prepar'd marriage-feasts; and in short, nothing was wanting that was usual in public rejoicings. After the marriage-feast was finith'd, Hadji Coja was accus'd before the throne of many crimes committed in the last campain, with design to raise himself above his quality; he was question'd upon these accusations, convicted, and being condemn'd, was put to death.

Timur then review'd his army, which he had assembled from all parts of his dominions, and began his march as soon as it was ready. When the court was come near the river Morgab, the princes Canzade, wife of Mirza Mirran Chah, met 'em, coming from Herat, to receive her spouse; and the Mirza Callil Sultan was committed to her care, in order to be educated by her. Timur left the princes Touman Aga at the camp, and sent the empress Serai Mule Canum, and the other ladys, to Samarcand. He decamp'd at the same time, and taking the road to Burkei Tach, came down from Serac, from whence he went to Baverd *, and arriv'd at Nefia *, where he learnt that the Emir Veli having fortify'd the citadel of Dourom, had flung himself up in it, and furnish'd it with a good number of soldiers. Then the Cheik Ali Behader, Sevindik Behader, Mobacher, and other Emirs, who commanded the

---

* The same as Ashford.
* A river in the defiat of Kirat, between Coraflina and Cazoom, long. 93. 23. lat. 48. 45.
vanguard of the army, met that of the Emir Veli, in a place nam'd Ghizoukerch. Each party was rang'd in order of battle, and at the same time advanced. Mobacher began the attack with vigor; an arrow which was shot at him hit him on the face, near the teeth, and went out by his neck; but this brave warrior, notwithstanding his wound, rush'd a second time upon the enemy, whose head he cut off, and flung into the middle of the field. This action astonish'd the enemy and put 'em to flight; and Timur, that he might recompense Mobacher for his heroic action, made these places of Ghizoukerch and Hourberi, Siorgals, and gave 'em to him, that he might enjoy the revenue of these lordships for ever. From this place they departed for Douroun; our men besieged this castle, and made several assaults; and at length having taken it, put the governor and the troops of Veli to the sword.

The court having quitted Douroun, went to Tchiloun, a country full of villages; and having crossed the river at Jorjana, encamp'd at Chahman, where the Hazars and Sedes had express orders not to separate from their squadrons without leave, on pain of death; that they might employ themselves in building bridges on rivulets and rivers, and doing other useful works, as cutting down trees in forests, making causeways, and clearing the roads.

The vanguard of the two armies meeting, engaged in a bloody fight. Hadji Mahmoud Chah Tefaur gave marks of an extraordinary valor and strength; but he was wounded in the hand with a sword. Akitmur, and his son Cheik Timur, fought like brave men, and made the enemy's ranks give way. These skirmishes continued twenty days; but on the twentieth,
Book II. as the army of Timur was passing the bridge of Derwich, the Emir Veli advanced, and fought with heroic valor and resolution. But because the power God gives to armies, to whom he designeth the victory, is more than human, this unfortunate prince was vanquish'd, and oblig'd to fly. Our soldiers closely pursu'd him, took several of the bravest of his army, whom they put to death, as also many others, who not finding means to escape, serv'd to fill the country with the dead and wounded.

The troops, after this complete victory, enter'd the camp, and then that all necessary precautions for their security might be observ'd, the colonels and captains had orders to cause intrenchments of earth to be call'd up round their own regiments, to make a sort of ramparts with their bucklers, and before these ramparts to fix stakes, which might serve as palisades.

The day being almost gone, Timur, who thro' his great experience always foresaw danger, order'd thirty of the best companies of his army to lie in ambuscade in a certain place. When night was come, the Emir Veli, accompany'd by a great number of soldiers of Mazendran, sally'd out of the fortress to attack the camp. For which purpose his men made the great cry on the side of the right wing of the army, where the prince Miran Chah was encamp'd. Veli was marching to fall on him, and being arriv'd at the trenches, they struck with their swords and lances against the bucklers and palisadoes which had been fix'd there, tho' not without the loss of many of their men who fell one upon another in the ditches.

Then the prince Miran Chah march'd against 'em in person, and order'd that all the troops he commanded should let fly a shower of arrows.
rows together; and at same time the thirty companies all prepar'd to fight with sword in hand, and rushing with fury out of the ambucade, fell upon the enemies; and as the Emir Veli, among other artifices had caus'd a great many pits to be dig in those roads, in which they had drove stakes before they fill'd 'em with water, part of his army, in the flight, fell into these wells, and there miserably perished.

The emperor finding the Emir Alcounmur absent, demanded where he was; he was answer'd, that he was gone to pursue those of the enemy's rear who had fled. In the mean while the army, which march'd all the rest of the night, found themselves in the morning at the town of Effer Abad, capital of Mazendran, where they burn'd and destroy'd every thing, without sparing either old men, women, or children, or even fucking infants.

This war happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 786. Fear seiz'd the Emir Veli, who the same night, carrying with him his wives and children, and guarded by some soldiers, went to Damgan by the way of Langara; he left 'em in the fortrets of Chirdacoub, and at length march'd to Rei. The invincible Timur sent troops under the command of Godadad Huseini, Cheilk Ali Behader, Omar Abbas, Comuri Emac, and other captains, to pursue him; and they made such haste, that they almost overtook him at Rei. This prince was so afraid of losing his life, that he went into the woods of the country of Rufbeindar, which were inaccessible, because of their thickets, and the height of some mountains which were near; and at length escap'd from his enemies who pursu'd him.
The Emir Veli was son of Cheik Ali Bifond, one of the Emirs of Taghirmur Can; and at the time that the Serbedals were so daring as to bathe their hands in the blood of this king, Veli, who was present at the assembly, fled to Nela, and his father was massacred with his master. This young lord having found means to make himself powerful in this town, at length went to Efter Abad, of which he made himself master; insomuch that Locman Padi-chali, son of king Taghirmur, being frighten'd by Veli, fled, and wander'd about as a vagabond from country to country, till at length lifting himself in the service of Timur, (who conquer'd Efter Abad) he receiv'd from his liberal hands the government of this town.

CHAP. XLIX.

Timur marches into the province of Ira: Agemi.

The emperor order'd the Emirs: Aehonga and Outechera Behader to pass the winter at Efter Abad with the ammunition of the army; and out of every ten men he chose three to accompany him. He march'd towards the kingdom of Rei, and his troops were no sooner arriv'd in that country, than Sultan Ahmet Cheik Avis Gelair*, who was at Sultanina, astonish'd at the march of the emperor, fortify'd the castle of this town, and garrison'd

* The grandson of Sultan Avis, son of Buzak Haffin, whose wife Bagdalaum, daughter of the Emir Tchouban, Sultan Aboualif had espous'd. Buzak Haffin was the son of the Ilkamani.
The history of Timur-Bec.

...it with his best soldiers under the command of his son, nam'd Achonga, and then fled towards Tauris. In the mean while Omar Abbas, at the head of sixty horse, march'd to Sultania, to gain intelligence of the state of the place; and his journey was so successful, that he got there, notwithstanding the terrible snows and excessive cold. Some days before, the enemy having news of his march, resolv'd to fly; whereupon they took with 'em their young prince Achonga, and departed with all expedition for Tauris; but they were not all gone out of the fortress when Omar Abbas arriv'd with his sixty soldiers; who with intrepidity entered the place sword in hand, and made himself master of it. He employ'd all his industry to preserve it, till he should receive orders from the emperor who was at Reî, to whom he sent Irmakchi to advertise him of this happy conquest.

CHAP. I.

The emperor Timur marches to Sultania.

At the beginning of the spring Timur set out for Sultania; and in the mean while Sarem Adel, one of the greatest lords of the court of Cheik Avis, whom Chah Chuja had heretofore brought from Sultania, was summon'd by the emperor to court, being then in the service of Sultan Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja, who died in the year of the Hegira 786, which number was compos'd out of the letters of the epitaph made on him, which was, An. Dom. 1384.
The history of Timur-Bes.

Book II. Hai'sze Chah Chuja: It is pity to great a man as Chah Chuja shou'd die.

Timur, as a singular favor, order'd this lord to be near his person; who to obey this order, departed from Chiraz with expedition, to have the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne; where he was no sooner arriv'd, than he was distinguished by the emperor's goodness, and favor'd with many presents; besides which Timur gave him the government of the province of Sultania, and the country's dependent upon it, after having order'd Mehemed Sultan Chah to leave him in those quarters with an army, that he might make himself master of the neighbouring countries.

After this expedition, which was in the year of the Hegira 787, and in the year of the Leopard, Timur returning from Sultania, laden with the glory he had acquir'd by his victory, enter'd into the mountains of Kulteindar. The princes of this country not only had not strength to resist him, nor prudence enough to come before Timur; but they fought safety by flight before the army arriv'd there. By this means the country was brought in subjection to Timur, and his officers easily made themselves masters of it; the troops pillag'd it on all sides, and the soldiers were enrich'd with the booty.

The Emir Veli, who was retir'd into a place nam'd Yalous, was so terrify'd at this action, that he fled, and our victorious emperor turn'd upon the towns of Amol and Sarye, with design to make himself master of them, as soon as he cou'd come at 'em by the way of the mountains of Couheftan. But Seid Kameleddin and Seid Razieddin, who were the princes of these places, to save themselves from the evil which threaten'd 'em, sent their Nai\-bes,
bes, that is, their lieutenants, with presents of precious stones and gold duff, to lay at the feet of the emperor, with a considerable tribute to be paid him: so that by their lieutenants being admitted to take an oath of fidelity to the emperor, they coin'd gold munny which they honor'd with the name and surname of the invincible Timur; and to raise his glory as high as they were able, they made prayers for him in all the mosques of their country. At length Timur commanded 'em to obey Locman Padicha, to whom he had given the principality of Ester Abad, that so he might oblige 'em to preserve their fidelity and obedience, and not undertake any thing which this prince shou'd not approve.

C H A P. LI.

Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.

W H E N the officers of Timur had got full possession of the provinces of Mavendran, Rei, and Rultembar, as far as Sultrania, the imperial standard march'd to the seat of the empire. When the Court had cross'd the Gihon, and were arriv'd at Samarcand, the inhabitants wish'd all happiness and prosperity to the emperor at his arrival; he there pass'd the summer in the pleasures of the season, and the winter at Zendgir Serai, in the delights of conversation and entertainments. During this winter, Toematich Can sent to Tauris, by the way of Derbend, an army of near ninety thousand men, who were for the most part infidels, of a cruel and merciless nature, and who had been
been so imm'd to war, that they were almost cover'd over with wounds and scars. In this army were twelve Agiens', princes of the royal blood of Touchi, the chief of whom was Bic Poulad; there were also several Emirs, as Aaffa Bei, Yagli Bei, Cazanchi, and others: they march'd to Chirouan, and being arriv'd in Azerbijana, block'd up Tauris.

The governor of this city was not able to manage his affairs in such a conjuncture; whereupon the inhabitants, thro' the counsel of the Emir Veli, who after his defeat retir'd into this town, with Mahmoud Calcali, fortify'd the walls of this and some other neighbouring places. They repuls'd our troops with vigor, and defended themselves courageously for eight days; but at length the army of Tocatmich Can, being more numerous than that of the besieging, made it self master of the town; and the Emir Veli, with Mahmoud Calcali, fled to the country of Calcal. The Can's army pillag'd the place, and exercis'd all imaginable crueltys and abominations: the desolation was universal, and all the riches, treasures, and rarities, which had been amass'd there during a great many years, were consum'd in less than six days in this dreadful pillage. After the army had entirely seiz'd on this booty, and bound all the slaves, it return'd before the winter was past, by the way it came.

The emperor having advice of this devastation, was incens'd at the violence and tyranny which had been exercis'd against the Mussulmans; in the mean time, he resolv'd to conquer the kingdoms of Iran, which he was oblg'd to by his laws, because this great country

\[ All\ the\ princes\ of\ the\ blood\ of\ Touchi\ are\ tizam'd\ Agiens.\]
not being at that time govern'd by any prince who was powerful enough to execute his orders there, every thing was in confusion, by reason of the different sentiments of those who commanded.

And as the ambition of neighbouring princes daily increas'd, he was expos'd to the like evils with those which, as we just now mention'd, happen'd to Tauris.

CHAP. III.

Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he stays three years successively.

In the year of the Hegira 788, which answers to that of the Hare; Timur having resolv'd to make war in Iran, caus'd orders to be publish'd, that the Tavakis should get together, with all expedition, the troops of the army, and that the soldiers of all the provinces, with their officers, should come immediately to court.

This royal order was every where executed; and the army being in a condition to depart, Timur nam'd the Emir Solyman Chah, the son of Daoud, and the Emir Abbas, with two others, whom he left at Samarcand, to govern the empire of Transoxiana in his absence.

The emperor having cross'd the Gihon, happily arriv'd at Firoz Coul, after many days march; and then Seid Kamaleddin, prince of Sari, sent his son Seid Cayafeddin to court, with

* A kind of commissary for levying the troops, like the Chanou among the Turks.
many soldiers to guard him, to be enroll'd among the other officers. About this time also our monarch, who was able to discover the most secret affairs of state, and understood the carriage of the princes and governors of countries, had advice of the actions of Maleck Azzeddin, prince of the little country of Lor, of the great crimes his insolent people had been guilty of, and of the robberies he had committed on the highways with impunity, it not being long since his subjects had beat and plunder'd a caravan, which was going thro' their country in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Timur had no sooner heard of this abominable action, than he resolved at the same time to revenge the pilgrims on these robbers; and when he had advice of the new effects of their further malice, he thought himself oblig'd to chastise these villains, and to deliver the Mahometans from their tyranny: upon which he order'd that of every ten men of his army, two of the bravest shou'd be chosen, and arm'd to the best advantage; which being executed, this prince quitted his camp, and mounted his horse at the head of his flying camp, compos'd of his most valiant soldiers, and march'd with all expedition to Loristan. As soon as he was arriv'd there, he caus'd Ouroudgurd and the neighbouring places to be plunder'd; and at length he made himself master of Corram Abad, a fortress almost impregnable, whither the robbers of that country were retir'd. He caus'd it entirely to be raz'd, and the greatest part of 'em being taken, they were flung headlong from the tops of the mountains.

At the same time Akirim Buhader, Omar Abbas, and Mehemed son of Sultan Chah, fell sick
The history of Timur-Bec.

As soon as Timur had brought into submission this little country of Lor, and delivered it from the disorders of these robbers, he decamp'd, and rejoind his army, which came to meet him in the plain of Nehavend.

CHAP. LIII.

Timur marches to Azerbijane, or the country of the antient Medes.

THIS monarch having advice, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, who had rais'd troops, was departed from Bagdad to Tauris, again left his camp with some troops under the conduct of Cheek Ali Behader, and the same day march'd with expedition at the head of his army to that city.

But Sultan Ahmed hearing of his march, was not willing to wait his coming, but fled, and made haste to Bagdad.

Timur sent Seifeddin, with the other Emirs, and troops to pursue Ahmed. When they had overtaken his army, he was so terrify'd, that abandoning his led-horses, baggage, and all his furniture, he fled; and as soon as our soldiers had sufficiently pillag'd his baggage, they made the great cry Souroun, and return'd.

In the mean while Elias Coja, son of Cheek Ali Behader, having march'd by Nakchivan with a small number of horse; found Ahmed in
Book II. the fate-pits of Nemeczar, where this Sultan, guarded by several troops, made a brave resistance, by which many were wounded on both sides. Elias Coja himself received a wound, which disabled him; and this accident saved Ahmed from the danger his life was in. This captain's wound, joined with his bad constitution, caus'd in him a violent distemper, which had kill'd him, if the good fortune which always attends Timur's officers, had not favor'd his recovery; and at length he was heal'd, except that he remain'd lame, the distemper being got into his foot.

On this occasion there were many massacres and pillagings at 'Nakulivat. Comari Eimac having receive'd some displeasure from the government, set fire to the great dome of the palace of Ziaelimule, to revenge himself; and in it there perish'd, in a miserable manner, fifteen persons, who were coak'd by the smoke of the straw which was brought thither.

Timur having entirely brought into subjection the kingdom of Azerbijana, went to encamp in the neighbourhood of Chenob Gaze, were Seid Razi Coja, Hadei Mehemed, Bendghir Cattat, Cadi Cayfeddin, Cadi Abdellatif, and other great lords and Churifs of this country, came to make their submissions to him; and afterwards a sum of money was imposed on the inhabitants of Tauris; as usual, for having savel'd their lives; which the receivers collected.

The court and army stand at Tauris, and the neighbouring places during the summer. Timur

---

1. A town of Azerbijana, long. 81. 15. lat. 38. 40.
2. Capital of Azerbijana, long. 82. lat. 36.
commanded Sarek Adel to be put to death, whom they cast down from a wall, after having pillag'd his house; and then the most skillful masters in every art and science were sent to Samarcand.

In the mean time Mahmoud Calcali feiz'd in the province of Calcal on the Emir Veli, who, flying to save his life, wandered from country to country. He was deliver'd to Comari Einae, who put him to death, in conformity to his law of Genghiz Can; and his head was Emir Veli laid at the foot of the throne.

In autumn, the government of Tauris was given to Mehemed Sultan Chah, and the imperial standard was carry'd to Nakchiran. The army then march'd to Merend, and to the defile of mountains nam'd Dez; then it crost the river Ourous on the bridge of Ziaulmule, and encamp'd on its banks. There is not a more magnificent bridge in the world than this; it is in the territory of Nakchivan near the town of Youlasha, where the Ourous runs at the foot of a mountain. The bridge is built of stone, and is of vast strength; it is flat at top: the stones are so well join'd, and all the building is so just and perfect, that the most skilful architect can't view it without admiration. Among the arches of this bridge there are two so high and broad, that the breadth of one is more than sixty Ghez, and of the other more than fifty five; they having been measure'd at low water; and because when the waters are highest the stream of this river

* Adel fled for refuge from the court of the Ilkhanian kings to that of Timur.
* A town of Azerbhain, long. 15°. 45'. lat. 37°. 40'.
* Ghez in Persian signifieth 2 cubits.
runs thro the great arch, which is contiguous to the mountain, the lower part being empty, they have there made a Caravansera. At the two ends of the bridge there are gates made out of the same rock, of unparallel'd beauty.

The army having decamp'd from this post, arriv'd at the citadel of Corni, which they immediately attack'd, and took by assault. They seiz'd on Cheik Hassian the governor, and brought him, with a chain about his neck, to the emperor.

They afterwards came to the town of Surmalu, situate on the bank of the Ourous: and having invested it on all sides, they took it by storm, sword in hand. They immediately raz'd it, and seiz'd on Toutan Turcoman, the leader of this people, whom they bound with cords, and laid before the throne.

From Surmalu the army came to Cars, a town strongly built with stones, and which in that country was thought impregnable. A certain Turcoman, nam'd Pirouz Baṣī, was governor of this country: The strength of the place, and the difficulty of coming at it, because of its situation, made him proud; insomuch that after having well fortified the citadel and walls of the town, he imagin'd himself able to resist the army of the emperor, who order'd all the machines to be got ready, and that as soon as the Gourgho shou'd be beat in all the quarters, and the great cry Souroun made, the place shou'd be invested on every side.

The enemy wanted not courage and resolution to defend himself: tho' he was briskly assaulted, yet he gave marks of his intrepidity and valor; but at length perceiving that victory declar'd her self by degrees for the imperial army, Pirouz Baṣī submitted with a thousand
The history of Timur-Bec.

Testimonys of his obedience, tho' the wrath of Chap. 54, the victorious troops cou'd not be appeas'd, but by the pillage of the town, which was at length raz'd to the very foundations.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army.
The description of the Persian way of hunting; as also of the Gerke and Nerke.

God hath recommended to Mahomer to excite the Musulmans to make war on the enemys of their religion, because it is the most excellent of all actions; and the Alcoran praiseth above all others, those who risk their fortunes and lives in such a war.

This was Timur's only aim, from the beginning of his rise to his death; but he particularly executed it at this time by beginning a war which he had a long while projected.

His zeal exciting him to march to Tellis, when he was decamp'd from before Carts, he mounted his horse in a rising ground nam'd Ac Bogra, at a time when the violence of the cold was extraordinary, and the air was full of ice and frost.

He continued his march by Kitou, and at length arriv'd at Tellis. The strength of the walls of this town had render'd the Georgians proud and insolent, in imitation of the other nations; insomuch that confiding in the citadel, which they had very well fortify'd, they prepar'd for a vigorous defence.

1 Capital of the kingdom of Georgia, long. 43. lat. 43.
The emperor gave orders for the siege. The Emirs and other officers prepar'd with all expedition the arms and machines necessary for assaulting the place. After having put in order the wings, the body, and other parts of the army, they invest-ed the town; and at the same time cry'd out, Allahu Elker, God is great, which is the cry call'd Souroun, already spoken of. Then the emperor took his sword in his hand, and our soldiers cover'd with their great bucklers made a general affray on the town. All the brave men of the army gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and apply'd themselves to briskly to their duty, that thro' the assistance of heaven this royal town was conquer'd, and prince Malek Ipocrates taken prisoner, and brought to the emperor; he was bound in chains, and carefully secure'd.

After this conquest, the emperor departed from Tellis, and resolv'd to follow the diversion of hunting: so the Emirs receiv'd his orders, and the troops form'd the Nerke, that is, being rang'd in a circle to hinder the passage of the beasts, they surrounded a great space of ground full of plains and hills; and some time after was the Gerke, that is, the men who form'd this circle, constantly approaching one another, the hares, deer, lions and other wild beasts of all sorts, were shut up and brought into a narrow compass.

When the emperor, the princes his sons, and other princes of the royal blood, were enter'd into the circle according to the customary rules of the chase, and had taken their diversion in killing many wild beasts, the soldiers who enter'd in

* King of Georgie, a Christia, who afterwards turn'd Macomera.
their turn into the inclosure; took all they cou'd with their hands; of which they kill'd the best, and let go the others: in short, there was more game kill'd than the troops cou'd carry away, and they were oblig'd to abandon a great part to the mercy of the birds of prey, and other savage beasts.

C H A P. L V.

Timur returns to Carabagh.

TIMUR departed from this country with such good fortune, that thro' the divine assistance, his troops in the road, and the neighbouring places, made themselves masters of many towns and castles, which were in the hands of the infidels: they releas'd the country from their tyranny; and having pillag'd all the places which these men had with so much difficulty conquer'd, they enrich'd themselves with a vast booty.

The victorious army encamp'd at Cheki, from whence the emperor sent several body's of troops against the infidels. The Emir Gehan Chah had orders to fall upon the Lehemians, who were entirely pillag'd and the major part slain.

The Emir Mehemed Dervich Berlas enter'd with a body of troops into the mountains of Cheki, where he took many fugitive rebels, whom he put in irons, making 'em slaves; and the soldiers seiz'd on every thing they had.

* A more complete account of this way of hunting practis'd among the Eastern nations, may be seen in the history of Genghis Can, Book III. ch. 7. p. 487. — 258.
Argoun Chah, and Ramadan Coja, with other troops march'd with expedition to the province of Tenegout, where they perform'd several warlike exploits: they kill'd a great many men, plunder'd all the places, and carry'd away so many captives, that all the country was surpriz'd.

The Emir Mehemed Bel, and the Emir Moussa, also brought their troops into the country of Aedgeb, and made themselves masters of it; and Timur at the head of a victorious army caus'd the standard of the holy war which he undertook, to be fix'd at the foot of mount Alburz, where he made known the purity of his intentions, and the strength of his faith, by hymns and psalms, which he sung to the praise of God, in token of the triumphs of the musulman religion, and the destruction of that of the infidels.

The Emirs at length return'd, after they had fully executed their commission, by the conquest of the castles and towns of the infidels, the greatest part of which were razed, for the chastisement of their disorders, and by the booty which they brought away. These generals join'd the imperial camp in a place nam'd Cabale, or Cambale. They also made themselves masters of the red castle, and raze'd it: from thence they came to Carabagh Surcab *, from whence the army march'd to encamp on the banks of the river Cor †, over which they built a bridge, which was carry'd on by the means of floats of reeds and little stricks, which the emperor had order'd to be made. He cross'd this bridge at the head of the army, and march'd to Berda ‡, the inhabitants of which submitted without making any defence.

* In the province of Araz, between the Black-see and the Caspian, joining Georgia, long. 83, lat. 40. 30.

Timur
Timur being at Cærabagh, order'd Hippocrates, Chap. 33. prince of Telis, to be brought before him, whom he had before imprison'd and put in irons. He had a conference with this prince concerning the mahometan religion, invited him to be a Mussulman, and gave him a thousand good reasons to persuade him to it; and he communicated to him so much light in relation to the law of Mahomet, that thro' a special grace, that of the vocation enter'd into his mind, which had been hitherto full of darkness. In short, Hippocrates quitted his error, and turn'd Mussulman. He declar'd there was no other god than God; and that Mahomet was not simply a man as others, but that he was the envoy of God, and the seal of the prophets: and in fine, having confess'd the divine unity, he was rank'd among the true Mahometans.

This man had a coat of mail, which was reported to have been that which the prophet David had forg'd in a smith's shop, and which he had made proof of by several times foaking and dying it.*

He present'd this piece to Timur, with other curiosities remarkable for their antiquity. This monarch receiv'd 'em, and not only permitted him to be of the number of his favorites, but thro' the seal which he had of winning over to him the hearts of others, he permitted him to return home, after having honor'd him with several presents. All this good treatment from Timur, was the cause that most part of the people of this kingdom embrac'd the mahometan religion.

* In this passage we see a specimen of those willing ideas the Mahometans have of ancient history: there are many more ridiculous in the following part of this work.
Book II. At this time the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Shirvan, who by his power, reputation, honesty, and noble descent, was distinguished among the kings of that time, came to court; and as he was a man of good sense, he submitted entirely to the emperor; and by this means he had the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne. He offered many presents; and among other things several parcels of rarities, each of which, according to custom, was composed of nine pieces.

Among the other gallant actions of this prince to render himself agreeable to Timur, the following was most pleasing to this monarch: After having brought out all the parcels of rarities, which should have been nine pieces of each sort, he presented him with eight captives which he had bought; and as some one said that the ninth piece was wanting, he presented himself to make up the number; which so highly pleased Timur, that he not only loaded him with favors and gifts, but even gave him the kingdom of Shirvan with its dependences, and the title of king of Shirvan, under which title he became famous in the world.

Timur also received tokens of submission from the sovereigns of Ghilan, who for several ages, confiding in the strength of their walls, and the difficulty of access to their mountains and woods, as also in the number of their marishes and flocks, had not obey'd any king. The princes who then reign'd sent their children and

---

* A province near Armenia, which has for its capital Charsnake, long. 44° 30'. lat. 40° 50'.
* A province on the south side of the Caspian Sea, whose capital is Derbend, long. 52° 20'. lat. 35° 40'.
The history of Timur-Bec. officers with presents to the foot of the throne, who promised for their mailers not only a ready obedience, but also the payment of a tribute.

Then the Chak Ali Behader, who had the care of the emperor’s baggage, arrived at Cara-bagh by the way of Ardevit; and the emperor passed the winter on the banks of the river Orous.

CHAP. LVI.

The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capchac. Defeat of the troops of Tocarmich Can.

As soon as winter was gone, that is, at the beginning of the year of the Hegira 789, which among the Moguls is called the year of the Crocodile, the invincible Timur marched to Berda, having received advice that Tocarmich Can of Capchac had revolted, and brought an army into the field, which he had sent by the way of Derbend *, contrary to the counsel of Ali Bei Goncograde ‘, Orone Timur, and Abooughe Behrine ‘. These three Emirs, famous in the empire of Touchi Can, were remarkable for their prudence, candor, and nobleness of mind; they daily endeavor’d to shew the falsity of the sentiments of Tocarmich Can, and represented to him the way he ought to take; they counsel’d him to preserve the rights of the emperor Timur

* A town of Armenia, on the W. shore of the Caspian Sea, long. 89° lat. 41°. It is also called Behriboud.

Tribes of Tatars in Capchac.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. In full force, to treat his officers with civility, and to acknowledge the obligations due to this monarch, who had put him in possession of the empire of Touchi, and of the throne of his ancestors, by his power, favors, and extraordinary goodness, without which he could never have attained to that grandeur and majesty to which he is at present rais'd; that thus he was oblig'd always to remember the favors he had receiv'd from this great prince, and to give marks of his gratitude, since the thoughts of it always occasion'd joy, and it is sometimes the sole cause of the rise of a kingdom. "Who knows, say they, but that in some change of fortune, (from which God preserve the Caliph) he must not be oblig'd to have recourse to the protection of the great monarch Timur, as to an asylum?"

In short, the sincerity of these lords, who only sought his good, was of great service to the kingdom, till Cazauchi, who had kill'd his own father, found means to approach him, together with Ali Bei; but as soon as these disturbers of the state had an easy access, Tootamich, at their persuasion, turning from the right way, broke off the good correspondence he had kept with Timur, proudly declar'd himself his enemy, and brought an army into the field, which he sent into Azerbijana.

Timur had speedy notice of these things; and there was no sooner advice brought him that they perceiv'd on the other side of the river Cor a great body of strange troops, than he order'd Chark Ali Behader, Aicountmur, Olman Abbas, and other Emirs, to cross the river, and to observe the disposition of affairs in that country, and to inform him of it; tho' at the same time he prohibited their attacking the troops which were seen there, if they belong'd to the army of Toota-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Tocatmich, because of the treaty made with that Chap. 30. prince. When these Emirs were departed from the camp, Timur, assisted by his good fortune, sent after them the Mirza Miran Chah, Hadji Selimdin, and other princes, with troops to assail 'em, in case they should be attacked. In short, those who went off, coming up to the enemy's army, knew it to belong to Tocatmich Can; wherefore upon serious reflection they disembled their desire of fighting, and immediately retir'd; but the enemy's concerning this action to cowardice, grew proud, and left upon 'em, discharging all their arrows. Then our men perceiving themselves for'd to it, bravely defended their lives: and a bloody fight ensued, the our Emirs were not prepar'd for it. The field of battle was near a wood, which hinder'd our men from fighting after their own manner, so that they could not dog the enemies, as they desired; and this situation was the reason that about forty horses were kill'd, and our brave men, who were always admired for their valor, were put to the rout.

In the mean time the Mirza Miran Chah, who had cross'd the river of Gar, arriv'd with the troops he commanded: he saw this tragical spectacle, and at the same time fell upon the enemy. All his brave men fought 'em both on the right and left, killing all they met; insomuch that not being able to sustain the attacks of our warriors, they shamefully fled. Our soldiers pursu'd 'em as far as Derbend: they took a great many prisoners, whom the Mirza Miran Chah put in irons, and sent to court. Chovide, brother of Mobaheer, who was wounded in the fight, was of that number, and was brought to the imperial camp: but Timur affecting an air of gravity and resolution, did not only not punish the
the wickedness &c. of these miserable people, but
rather chose to pardon 'em. He enquired of 'em
concerning Tocatmich Can, as he had done be-
fore the last action, and shew'd the good will he
bore to him by these words: "How comes it
that your prince, whom I regard as my son, ails
me so ill, as to send an army into this country,
without any provocation given him? For you
know there is between us a certain right of
fatherhood and sonship. And why is he the
occasion of the loss of so many thousands of
Muslimans? It is requisite that for the fu-
ture he abstain from this method of acting,
which will bring shame upon him; and on
the contrary, he must punctually observe the
articles of alliance which we have sworn to,
instead of rekindling the war which was lain to
asleep." After our monarch had thus spoken
to 'em, he let 'em at liberty; ordering 'em
clothes and mony, and a guide to conduct 'em;
that they should pass thro' the midst of the army,
and be sent back to Capchar, where they or-
dinarily dwelt.

The verses which the celebrated Cheik Sadi
appells to God, may be properly refer'd here to
Timur: "How can he deprive his friends of
his favors, who so liberally distributes 'em a-
mong his enemies?"

After the Mirza Miran Chah, had repass'd
the river Cor, he return'd to the camp by the
banks of that river; and at length decamp'd to
march to Gheuciche Tenghiz, which signifys the
blue sea.

* The author of Gulistan, or Nefarium Politirum, a book
of morality, tranlated into Latin by Genius.
C H A P. LVII.

The arrival of the empress Serai Mule Canum, and the princes her sons.

When the court was at Gheuxiche Tenghiz, the emperor had advice that Serai Mule Canum was coming thither with the young princes, the Mirza Charac and the Mirza Cali, his sons, from Samarcand. He was so overjoy'd, that leaving his court at Gheuxiche Tenghiz, he took horse, and went with expedition to meet 'em. He met this charming company at Merend, where the princes, with their mother, sprinkled, according to custom, gold and precious stones upon his head, in so great quantity that the officers were fatigued in gathering 'em up; and they then spread out their rich presents, composed of the most singular rarities. Afterwards the emperor departed from Merend to return to his camp, and at length marched to the castle of Alengir, where there was a fortress commanded by the lieutenants of Sultan Ahmed.

Three days after his arrival, he order'd that the Emirs with their soldiers, shou'd in the night ascend the mountain which join'd this place, and as soon as it was day attack it. They executed this order, and making themselves masters of the lower citadel, with sword in hand they ruin'd it. Those who guarded it, being afraid, fled to the top of the fortress, the inhabitants of which were so bold as to refuse to surrender, tho they wanted water. Yet at length thirst reduc'd 'em to despair; for being ready to perish, they capitulated, and promis'd with an oath to depart.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. depart out of the place, and give it up to the besiegers, which was the reason that the troops cease'd attacking it, and came down from the mountain. But the minute the besieging were ready to go out, there came a great cloud, follow'd by a large shower of rain, which in twenty four hours fill'd all the cisterns and reserveratories of water; and they had no sooner quench'd their thirst, then they broke their word and treaty.

Timur hereupon order'd Mohamed Mirseke and Ouchtara Behazir to begin the siege; and this prince return'd into the camp. He had sent before, this enterprise the Cheik Ali Behader; against the fortresses of Bayazed, but as soon as he arriv'd there, not thinking himself strong enough to carry the place, he was follow'd by the Emirs Haidgi Seifeddin and Aicountmar, at the head of a great detachment. At length, they besieging the place together, attack'd it on all sides, beat down the walls, and turn'd back the water: insomuch that in a short time having taken and seiz'd it, they put the governor in chains, and brought him to the emperor.

Chapter LVIII.

Timur's army marches against Cara Mohamed, prince of the Turcomans.

At this time the emperor Timur having advice that the Turcomans were always molesting the Medulmans, whom they attack'd not only in the ordinary caravans, but even in those of Mecca, to which the name of holy was given, and that no one could pass safely by the places where they dwelt; he departed from the province of Nakhivan, and march'd towards...
The history of Timur-Bec.

\[\text{em, after having sent orders to Mehemed Mi\textsuperscript{ch} Chap. 58, reke, whom he left at the siege of Alengic, to come immediately to the camp. He also order'd in the road, that the bagage shou'd march to Amauci, and stay there.}

\text{Then the emperor march'd with expedition at the head of his army, and as soon as he arriv'd at the castle of Bayazid, formerly call'd the fort of Aedin, the troops pillag'd it, and plunder'd all that the inhabitants had left in that country. Paffing further, they arriv'd at the castle of Avenic, where Meher, son of Cara Mehemed, refiiled: they pillag'd all they found belonging to the Turcomanis in the mountains and plains of those provinces, and in the neighbouring places.}

\text{From thence they march'd to the town of Erzoum, which they took the same day they came; and Timur encamp'd on the banks of the river of Chiachour, from whence he sent an ambassador to Arzendjian\textsuperscript{*}, to persuade Taharan, the sovereign of it, to make his submission to him. The ambassador was receiv'd with many honors and ceremonies. Taharan gave him a favorable reception, and treated him with all imaginable respect; he obey'd the emperor, and consented to pay the Caragt\textsuperscript{**}; and having charm'd the ambassador by a thousand civilities, he sent him back to his master.}

\text{Then our prince appointed three of his best squadrons, under the command of Mirza Miran Chah to go in search of Cara Mehemed, father}

---

\begin{itemize}
  \item The town at Van, finiss in the upper Armenia.
  \item A town, formerly, call'd Arzen-Artaun, and Arzoum, finiss in Rhi-Arcaun. 4. 4. Anatolia, or better Asia. long. 77. lat. 39. 40.
  \item A town of Arzoum, long. 74. lat. 52.
  \item A city which the Maimundim prince resd from the Cadijac and Jews, who dwell in their dominions.
  \item The chief of the monastery of the black sheep.
\end{itemize}
of Cara Youfet Turcoman. This prince enter'd with his brave warriors into the lands of these disturbers of the people's quiet; and after having plunder'd their cattel, horses, camels, sheep, and other goods, made the greatest part of their wives and daughters slaves, whom they brought away, and then rejoind the court.

Mehemed Mirke was also sent into this country on the same account with a body of men: the road which he took brought him by chance into the mountains, where he found a narrow passage flopped up, into which he March'd. The enemy perceiving him, oppos'd his passage, so that our brave men were oblig'd to draw their swords. Nevertheless, thro' Timur's good fortune, they escap'd out of this dangerous place after a bloody conflict; and return'd with expedition to the camp.

Soon after, Cheik Ali, son of Argouli Berlan, Isbalcha Bargougi, and Yettic Coutechin, all valiant and intrepid men, put themselves at the head of another squadron, to go in search of Cara Mehemed: they March'd every where with extraordinary diligence, and at length discover'd him: where he was retir'd to the top of an inaccessible mountain among steep rocks; nevertheless they attack'd him: our men did surprizing actions: and Lafa Coja, who had been the emperor's governor, was slain in the fight. At length the enemy got upon the ridge of the mountain, where he was out of our reach; upon which the Emirs thinking all their attacks would be ineffectual, immediately return'd, and brought their troops to the imperial camp.

Timur then sent thither some other chosen troops under the conduct of Gehan Chiah Behunder: this captain also enter'd their country, which he plunder'd, bringing away a great num-
ber of their cattel, arms, and other goods, which were distributed among the troops, who return'd to the camp in triumph.

In the mean while Chah Malek, son of Casyfeddin Berlas, who was gone another way without the emperor's order, was found dead in a desert, where he had been slain by those robbers.

The emperor decamp'd, and march'd to the plain of Mouche, all the houses of which he caus'd to be plunder'd. He at length arriv'd at the city of Eclat, where the people submit't to him; and after having given 'em skilful commanders, he depart'd for the town of Adelgisouz, the prince of which came out to meet Timur, to whom he submit't; and having the good fortune to kifs the carpet, he laid at the emperor's feet as much gold and precious stones as he was able; he also made other presents, and at length being assist'd by his good fortune, he was rank'd among the officers of this prince, who according to his wonted clemency load'd him with his favors; he not only care'st him, but again confirm'd him in the principality of his country and all his lands.

Timur continu'd his march by the lake of Van, and march'd to Bend Mahi, from thence to Atacac, where the baggage and body of the

---

* A village at the foot of a mountain, from whence springs a little river: it has a plain twelve days journey long, call'd Sahrai Mouche, i.e. the plain of Mouche. It is in the lower Armenia, two days journey from Mia Farekin, and three from Eclat; long. 73. 50. lat. 39. 50.

* The capital of lower Armenia, long. 75. 50. lat. 39. 20.

* A place from whence a little river discharges it self into the lake of Van, and where are caught a great many little fish call'd Tariq. The author of this work hath wrote a particular description of the lake of Van.
The victorious standard of Timur was carried to Van and Vashan; and Malek Azeddin, who commanded there, being afraid of the army, built himself up a castle, which is a strong citadel, situated on the ridge of a mountain, and bordered on one side by a lake.

The army made all their efforts to take it; they invested the fortress on the land-side, and omitted nothing which is practised in sieges; they also attacked the walls of the town.

Two days after Malek Azeddin was induced by his good genius to obey Timur; he came down from the fortress, and had the honor to kiss the carpet of the sultan; but the inhabitants, by reason of their haughtiness, revolted from their prince, and would not receive him; they fortified the avenues of the fortress, and put themselves in a posture of defence; whereon our troops erected battering rams, got ready their machines for scaling of fortresses, and assaulted the place.

This famous fortress, which had never been conquered by any sovereign, was taken by the

* A town S.E. of Van, and at six leagues distant; situated in the lower Armenia; on the bank of the lake of Van, long. 77° 50', lat. 34° 50'.
arms of the great Timur on the twentieth day Chap. 19. of the siege; and our troops entered it sword in hand: they slew a great number of the rebels, and cut down several from the top of the mountain, after having tied 'em neck and heels. And thus they cleared the world of these villains, who had no other employment than that of committing disorders and robberies.

Then there arriv'd at court an ambassador from Arengdgiap, on the part of Taharren, who sent presents of abundance of curiosity, as silver money, the finest horses, and mules of a particular breed.

The prince's letter contain'd a testimonial of his respect and obedience, offers of his service, and a resolution to be always firmly attach'd to Timur's interest.

The emperor gave a very favorable reception to the ambassador, and dispatched orders, wherein he confirm'd the principality of Arengdgiap to Taharren, as heretofore; and dismiss'd him with letters-patent for his intrepidity, with which he sent robes of honor of inestimable value.

The emperor order'd the castle of Van to be demolished. There are several incredible things related concerning this fortress; and among others, that it was built by Cheddar son of And, on the brink of a very steep mountain, and that Yadghiar Andecondi, who was prince of a Toman, having one day undertook to raze it, he could not so much as loosen a stone that he employed a great number of soldiers.

Timur departing from his camp, happily arriv'd at Selmaz, where after having gratify'd Malek Azzeddin by his favors, he left him in
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. the government of all Kurdistan, and at the same time began his march.

The prince of Ermiticee had at that time the honor to kill the imperial carpet; and after having made his submission, he acquitted himself of the duties a servant is oblig'd to perform, and gave great marks of his obedience. His sincere submission was the reason that Timur left him the principality of Ermit, and made him a present of a young slave, of extraordinary beauty.

The emperor at length march'd to Meraga; and from thence to Ghilan, where he staid some days; he had before that sent a man nam'd Me-rahim to Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja, prince of Chiraz, to summon him to come to him, with order to tell him that his father was particularly attach'd to the emperor, with whom he had made an alliance; that at the time of his death he had wrote a letter to this monarch to recommend his son to him; for which reason it belong'd to him to make appear his willingness to continue this friendship, and shew some marks of his zeal; and that as a testimony of this union, he ought to come with expedition to the emperor's court, which was not far from him, there to receive the favors of this monarch, and have a handsom reception; that he might at length return home with all the satisfaction he can possibly expect, not only as to himself in particular, but what might procure the advancement of his friends, and abasement of his enemies.

As we have had occasion to mention the letter of Chah Chuja, we have thought proper to insert a copy of it here, that the reader may have a detail of all the circumstances.

---

* A town of Aserbijaan, long. 80. lat. 37. 20.
* Capital of Fars, not so ancient as Esforz, the Persepolis of the ancients, long. 88. lat. 39. 36.
A letter writ to the emperor Timur by Gole-
ledin Chab Chaja, king of Persia, and
prince of Chiraz, just before his death.

GOD is truly living; there is no other
god than God; every thing is done by
his order, and you must return to him.

May it please God that this letter come
to the hands of him, whose majesty and
power extends as far as heaven, which is the
support of empire; who is the most accom-
plish'd of all those, who make profession of
practising justice and mercy: the liberal pro-
tector of the greatest kings, the most equitable
and just of the emperors of the earth, and of
this time; whom God always favorably re-
gards, because he is the Pole of truth; TH
E M IR TIM UR GOURCAN; whose
reign and empire may God establish for ever,
that the Caesars, the masters of the world,
and the most potent princes, may fly to him
for refuge. God grant that this emperor may
always be aiding in the execution of the
divine orders, and in rendering all due respecs
to the commands of the Almighty: and lastly,
may this prince, who has no equal in the
world, arrive to the highest pitch of his de-

After, having thus wish'd you all happiness,
and given you all the praises which are requi-
site to maintain union among true friends;
we put you in mind that great men esteem the
world as the theatre of inconstancy, and the
place of the most strange events; and that
men of learning are never attach'd to trifles,
nor transient pleasures and beautys, becau
they
they know that the corruption of all things being necessary, the duration of creatures is impossible; for which reason they have preferred the delights of eternity to the perishable things of this world. In short, I have employ'd, poor and indigent as I am, as far as in me lies, these few days which I have received of God, to exalt the standard of the faith, to observe the order of the law and of justice, and to execute the commandments of our prophet in all those things which the Creator has put into my power; and in fine, I have only apply'd myself in the sight of God, and for the love of him, to preserve the people under my protection in perpetual peace; and by the divine grace, I have carry'd myself with all the world, as well as I was able, in the manner your highness could expect.

"As to the treaty of peace and alliance made between us, desiring never to break it, I regard the gaining of the imperial friendship as a great conquest; and the chief of my wishes hath been to remain firm and constant in this peace, and, if I dare say it, to have in my hand the treaty I have with you at the day of judgment, lest ye should reproach me for having broke my word.

"You have continually load'd me with favors thro' your goodness; they have drawn upon you the praises and approbation of every one; and the manner in which you have beheld and treat'd me is the cause that they are known throughout the world.

"As I am at present call'd before the tribunal of the sovereign master of the universe, I thank his divine majesty, in that I have done nothing wherewith my conscience can reproach me, notwithstanding anything I can..."
with for; because notwithstanding the faults and sins I have committed, which are insep-
parable from human life and the deprav'd na-
ture of men, God hath liberally granted whate-
ever I could desire, and I have tasted all the pleasures I could expect, during the fifty three
years I have lived on earth.
Thus with a spirit full of confidence, al-
ways hoping that the beneficent and merci-
ful God will pardon my faults, I have an-
swer'd, whenever he hath call'd me, that
I am ready to obey. In short, I die as I have
liv'd, only entrusting with me the word of the
unity of God, and turning my eyes and my
designs towards the Creator alone, who finds
nothing agreeable in us except our good
works; and I have abandon'd all the vanities
of the world.
I pray God to give his blessing to this mo-
arch, who is as wise as Solomon, and as
great as Alexander; to preserve for a long
time his life and empire; to augment the
honors he possesses, and to stretch out farther
the limits of his dominions, that all men
may be under the protection of his justice.
In consideration of the sincere union be-
tween you and us, I thought it my duty to let
you know the state of all things. Tho' it be
not necessary to recommend to you my dear
son Zein Elabeadin, God grant him a long
life under the shadow of your protection; for
I leave him to the care of God and your ma-
jefty, as well as my other children and bro-
thers, having always regarded your alliance
and friendship as the greatest treasure I can
leave to my successors. I don't doubt your
performance of the treaty, not only as the
mainshining of treaties is a point of religion,
which we are oblig'd to have regard to, but also
because of the good-will you have always
shewn to any who belong to me on every oc-
casion.
"I therefore beseech your majesty to look up-
on all the princes who wait upon his person
with an eye of distinction, according to your
usual custom, and to grant 'em your protection
in all their affairs; so that the people of this
present time may see the marks of it, and it
may be declared to all future generations:
and that the envious, who for a long time
have with'd my ruin, may have no cause to
rejoice at my death, nor to take advantage of
my family; but on the contrary, be oblig'd
to pay respect to my memory, and your majes-
ty's merit.
"I also beg of you to say the Fatihha* and
other prayers for your sincere friend, who has
the happiness to depart out of this world in
peace and alliance with you, that thro' the
blessing of the prayers of a prince so great and
happy, my people may know that God hath
been merciful to me, and rais'd me up among
the saints. This is what we pray your ma-
jury to execute, as our last will, of which
you being the depository, it will answer in
this world and in the next.
"Lastly, I beseech the Almighty, that be-
cause of your majesty's good works, he will
afflict you always with his favors, and make
the rest of your reign happy."

* The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Turks recite,
as we do the Lord's prayer.
CHAP. LX.

Timur marches again into the country of Fars and Irak again.

As the good fortune and prosperity of Zain Elabedin was almost at an end, he would not appear before the emperor Timur; and in his extravagant humor he even need on the envoy of this prince. Timur, having fought into the realms of his conduct, was justly incensed, and resolved to march into Fars and Irak.

In the autumn of the year of the Crocodile, which answers to the year of the Hegira 789, this monarch prepared to conquer these two kingdoms. He composed the vanguard of his army of his best troops, which he sent before, and ordered them, as well as the baggage, to march towards Kair, and to pass the winter at Sarek Caimich.

The Miran Miran Chah, the Emir Behdedin, and the Cheik Ali Behader, were commanded to guard the baggage; and the imperial standard, with the rest of the army, marched towards the kingdom of Fars, whose capital is Elbasan, an agreeable city, which had formerly been the residence of the kings of Persia for marriages.

The emperor having marched thro' the country of Hamadan, arrived at Gerbadeen.

---

* A town of Coshfian, a province of Persia, long. 52° 20'. lat. 30° 45'.
* The sea of Parthipa, long. 88° 20'. lat. 30°.
* A town of Coshfian, long. 86° lat. 38°.
* A town of Coshfian, long. 87° 24'. lat. 37°. It is also called Ghil, Afghan.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II, where he rang’d his army in order of battle; and from thence he went to encamp before the city of Iphahan?

Seid Muzaffer Cachi, uncle of Sultan-Zein Elabeddin on the mother’s side, and governor of the city for this prince, came out, accompanied by Coja Rukneddin Sard, and all the lords, Cherilli, doctors of the law, and other principal inhabitants of the city, to implore the emperor’s mercy. They had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet: Timur receiv’d ‘em favorably, and treat’d ‘em with friendship and clemency.

The troops having fare’d on all the avenues of the city, Timur enter’d it in triumph, and retir’d into the fortresses of Tabzemk. He then plac’d a garrison in Iphahan, the command of which he gave to Alcootmirs, and return’d to his camp, where he regulated the number of soldiers which shou’d be employ’d in guarding the gates; and then sign’d an order that all the horses and arms of the city shou’d be given into the hands of his officers, which order was put in execution.

The chief men and elders of the city enter’d into the imperial council, where the sum was tossed which was to be paid to redeem the lives of the inhabitants, to whom quarter had been given. They consented to it; every one was tax’d to pay his share of it; and they demanded commissaries to collect the money.

The quarters of the city were fliar’d among the Emirs, and it was order’d that every Emir shou’d send one of his men as a commissary in his quarter; and that all the money which they

* A city of Caucasus, the present capital of Persia, long 48. 0. 0. lat. 32. 24.
* The fortress of Iphahan is thus call’d.
commisaries collected should be remitted to the care of Niaz Mule Berlas, and Mehemed Sultan Ckhe. Timur kept in his camp all the grandees of Ilpahan; and the commisaries went into the city to collect the sum which was settled.

But it unhappily fell out that a rash young fellow of the inferiors of Ilpahan, nam'd Ali Curchapa, by trade a smith, cam'd in the night the drum to be beat in the city; and at this noise a company of rabble got together, with design to took their revenge. They surrounded the quarters of the city, cut the commissaries throats; and there were liv'd in this massacre only-those whom the inhabitants of each quarter, who were wife and brave men, defended against the insults of these villains.

Several soldiers, who were sent into the city on particular occasions, were massacred in the night, and Mehemed son of Catar Behailer was of this number. In short, there were more than three thousand of our men kill'd in this sadition. These young fools, after having put to the sword all the Turks they cou'd find, ran to the gates of the city, seiz'd upon those who guarded 'em, and endeavor'd to fortify 'em as long as they were masters of 'em, that they might hinder the passage of our troops; and thus these tenacious fellows laid the foundation of a grievous rebellion, to execute the designs with which their chimerical imaginations had datter'd 'em.

The next morning the circumstances of this disordar were made known to the emperor. He fell into a violent anger; so that he immediately order'd the army to march against the city, and take it.

Our brave warriors at the same time executed this order. Insistances were made to hinder the effects of it; but the affair being begun, they cou'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

Both II. could not retreat from it: so the inhabitants were constrain'd to fight to defend their lives; and Beia Timur Abougha was hill'd on this occasion, which fo animated our troops that they carry'd the town by assaile. Timur sent men to guard the quarter of the Cheiris, and the street of the Turekes, where the doctors of the law dwelt, and particularly, the house of Coja Imameddin Vacez, tho' this great preacher had been dead a whole year.

The emperor order'd that all the inhabitants should be put to the sword, and that they should be chastis'd with all sorts of punishments for their revolt, and the massacres they had committed.

The houses of the honest men, who during the disorders had sav'd our warriors from the inult of the rebels, were plunder'd; by which means a great number of Mussulmans escap'd the fury of the soldiers.

Timur's anger was so great, that he order'd the Tomains, Hazars and Sedes, to furnish a certain quantity of the heads of the inhabitants, that every one might share in the punishment of these perfidious persons; and Taxatchis of the Divan were nam'd to be the controllers and depositaries of those heads that were cut off.

It was reported by men of credit, that many soldiers of our army, who were not willing to kill the Mussulmans, bought heads of the executioners, and carry'd 'em as if they had cut 'em off themselves. At first a head was sold for twenty Dinars' Copoghi; but when every one was furnish'd with the number they were tax'd at, a head was sold for no more than half a Dinar; and at last no one bought any. Thus every one

* A sort of money at that time in use among the Tartars.
they met was slain; and a great number who Chap. 60.
had quarter in the day-time, and who fled in the night, found the ways cover'd with snow, and had the mistorsane to be purs'd next day by the soldiers, who, resolv'd upon revenging the death of their companions, follow'd the track of these fugitives, brought 'em out of the places they were hid in, and put 'em to death: which is a token of the depth of the divine deeres, and that God will finish whatsoever he has begun.

The least computations, which are writ in the registers of the Divan, of the number of the men who were slain amount to seventy thousand heads, which were laid in heaps upon the walls of Herahim, and of which there were at length built towers in several parts of the city.

In short, since the war began, God has not made any people feel a more cruel effect of his wrath than this, to revenge the deaths of three thousand innocent Musulmans kill'd by this insolent rabble.

This terrible action happen'd on Monday, the fifth day of Zilcaede, in the year of the Hegira. An. Dom. 1389.

If we are agreed, that in consequence of the strange effects of the infinite providence of God, the things which happen in this lower world by generation and corruption, have any relation to the motion of the heavenly bodies; we may say that all this happen'd very near the time when the eleventh of the celestial triplicity was in Gemini, and the conjunction of the two unfortunate planets, Saturn and Mars, was in the sign of Cancer.
TIMUR after his victory and the conquest of Istahan, appointed Hadgi Bei and Noman Chali to govern this city for a year, and march'd towards Churaz. Zein Elabeddin, prince of Persia, had no sooner receiv'd advice of his coming, than he fled to one of his cousins-german call'd Manfour, who was governor of Tollur, tho' they were at variance. Zein Elabeddin acted in this as that man would do, who to avoid the heat of the sun thoug'h ran into the fire. He went to join Chah Manfour with his troops by the way of Cazeron, without considering that he who indirectly trufts his enemy, abandons his own good fortune, and exposes himself to the blame of all the world. Zein Elabeddin being arriv'd at the bank of the river Duskanke, Chah Manfour bri'd his troops over to his side.

* Churaz was capital of Persia before Istahan, and is present capital of the province of Fars. It was the seat of the ancient kings, after they had abandon'd Elahara or Perspolis.
* Formerly call'd Cazeron, a town of the province of Fars, which is part of Casrulan, long. 54° 32'. lat. 31° 35'. Here is a great river, over which Sapor king of Persia formerly built a famous aqueduct a mile long, by which the water is carry'd up to the town. Abulfeda says this town is the most ancient in the world.
* Capital of the province of Sapor, which is part of that of Fars, long. 57'. lat. 29° 14'.
* A river which runs by Tollur.
And as, according to the Aeboran, the temper of soldiers, or rather the corrupt nature of men, tends to ingratitude, the soldiers of Zein Elabeddin, having no thoughts on the obligations they owed their master, came over to Chah Manfou' and so there remain'd but few with Zein Elabeddin; which was the reason that Manfou' sent other soldiers to seize the prince, and bring him to Toltar. They put him in chains in the castle of Selafel; and at length Chah Manfou' caus'd those soldiers to be imprison'd, who had so ungratefully abandon'd their master, and all the money and goods they had, were confiscates.

The emperor arriving at Chiraz, fix'd his standard on the first day of the month of Zilhajj, in the year of the Hegira 789. and at An. Dom. the same time his orders were obser'd by all the kingdom, which without opposition was brought in subjection to his officers, and register'd among the dominions of Timur.

A poet of that time is very much commended, who says that the blessing of envoysells consists in gaining the possession of peoples hearts without resistance; and that what is not acquir'd by fatigue and labor ought not to be call'd happiness.

The victorious standard was erected, and all the governors and Kelivis of the kingdom had the honor to kiss the ground on which Timur stood, at a place nam'd Tafr Caradja, without the city. They agreed to pay a thousand Tomans 'Kapeghis, and to convey 'em with expedition to the royal treasury.

* A Tomman is worth twenty French crowns.
The history of Timur-Reka.

Book II.

The Emir Olman Abbas had orders to go into the city to receive the fum, which was accordingly paid into his hands.

At this time they kept a feast, which was honored with Timur's presence. They read the Gombe in his name; and after he had performed the duties of prayer and sacrifice, he returned to his camp.

Chah Yahia, prince of Yeza, nephew of the deceased king Chah Chuja, with his son-in-law, and his eldest son the Sultan Mehemed; as also Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman, and brother of Chah Chuja; and Abu Iskat, grandson of Chah Chuja, who came express from the town of Sindjan; and all the neighboring sovereigns; as also the Arabs of Lur, and Gourguin Lur, who are said to have been of the race of Gourguin Milan; having all made their submissions, had the honor to kiss the Imperial carpet; they made presents worthy of this great monarch, who gave them a handsome entertainment, and treated them with all imaginable civility; while in the mean time the troops went to pillage some countries which were not yet brought under submission.

When the kingdom of Fars, with its dependencies, was entirely subdued, and the lieutenants of Timur established in it, the secretary,
The history of Timur-Bec. who are call'd Munchis, and the Debirs 1 were Chafiz. employ'd, in recording the great exploits and actions done at that time. They wrote letters, which they call'd letters of conquests, in the most agreeable style imaginable; and after having seal'd 'em with the imperial seal, they sent 'em by certain couriers call'd Mobiaces, who are employ'd in carrying of good news, to Samarqand, the capital of the empire, in Corazna, and to all the other countries and provinces in subjection to Timur; which great actions were published in all the mosques, where the Courbe was read.

C H A P. LXII.

Reasons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.

One wou'd have thought that this tall and famous conqueror, which so highly establish'd the power of Timur, might have always attend'd to him his authority and quiet; but as the most perfect things are more easily alter'd than others, there soon grow disturbances in the empire. A courier, who came from Transoxiana in seventeen days, brought advice that a war was rais'd in that country, and that Tocarmich Can had violated the treaty, and sent a powerful army thither. This army of Capchar, the commanders of which were Bick Xarok Aglen, Biemich Aglen, Aifa Bei, Sargan Behader, and other Emirs, having march'd by the town of Sa-

1 Secretary of Ears in Persia.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II.

The garrison came to that of Sabran, and besieged it. Timur-Caja Aboonga, who was governor of it for Timur, did his duty in the defence of the town, and vigorously resisted the besiegers, who us'd all their efforts to take it; which notwithstanding their valor they could not do; and being constrain'd to raise the siege, they went to ravage other places.

The Mirza Omar Cheikh, who was at Andecan, got together all the troops of this quarter, and march'd against 'em; the Emir Solyman Chah and the Emir Abbas, with the troops that remain'd at Samarcan, went to join Omar Cheikh, having left to guard that city the Emir Lal, brother to Tagi Bouaï Berlas, and Cheikh Temour, brother of Akitmou Behader. They crook'd the Sihon together, and met the enemy's army in the field of Jicik, five leagues E. from Ovar. This expedition was fully perform'd in the autumn of this year. The two armies were rang'd in order of battle, and began the combat, which continu'd till night. Omar Cheikh, the most valiant and dauntless man of the age, rush'd into the very middle of the main body; he pass'd thro' all the enemy's army, and was at a great distance from his own. When his soldiers no longer saw him, they began to mistrust their strength, and were defeated; and the Emir Abbas was wounded with an arrow. In the mean while the Cheikh, accompany'd by the good fortune of the invincible Timur, retir'd in safety from the midst of his enemies, and went with expedition to Andecan, where he rally'd the troops which were dispers'd.

There then came news that Ancatoura, nephew of the Emir Hadgi Bei Iceanout, forget-
ful of the favor he had receiv'd from the emperor, had also violated the peace; that he was departed from Mogolistan at the head of an army, which was already arriv'd at Seirans and Tachkunt; and that the troops having committed divers hostilities, had ravag'd this country.

Omar Cheik had advice of it, and at the same time assemb'ed the troops of Uzkhunt, and came to Cogemde, where he learnt that the enemy were gone to Andecan by the road of Chackichmen. He immediatly return'd to cut off their retreat, and came up with 'em on the banks of the Sion before Aefiker. The troops of both parties having seen'd the palleis, encamp'd in view of one another, and march'd in the same posture for some days upon the banks, till they had an opportunity of coming to blows.

One night Ancatouna made use of a stratagem of war: he left a thousand men in his camp, and order'd that while he march'd at the head of the rest of his troops on the bank of the river, they shou'd light fires in several parts of the camp, to induce the others to believe that all the army was yet there. He made so much haste, that he found a proper place to pass the Sion, which he cross'd, and at the same time Omar Cheik march'd against him. The two parties being in view, there ensu'd a battle, in which this prince behav'd himself with courage: but as the enemy far surpass'd him in number, he ceas'd fighting, and enter'd Andecan. Ancatouna

---

' I believe the author is mistaken, and has put Mogolistan instead of Gene, as he tells the other, as simply'd in other places.

' A town, N. of the Sion, long. 104° 40'. lat. 38° 40'.
tour purf'd him thither, and would have made himself master of all the avenues of the town to besiege it; but Omar Cheili, exercised by his valor, and trusting in the divine assistance, immediately fell'd out sword in hand, and like a lion fell upon the army of the Getes, who were far more numerous than his own. In the mean while his valor made him rush into the midst of his enemies, whom he fiercely attack'd with his lance and sword: but Tchelbelader made after him sword in hand, laid hold of the bridle of Omar's horse, and led it out of the field.

Anasatoura was not willing to fight any longer; he return'd, and took the road of the country of the insulin. The prince Omar sent troops to pursue him, which they did for three days, insomuch that a great many stragglers of the Getes were slain. The Emir Solymen Chash, the Emir Aubas, and among the captains of Couchosa, Temouztach, Benet Cofs, Sevengue Temour, and others, who retir'd after they had been vanquish'd in the fight of Julick, staid to guard Samar and. They made the inhabitants of the suburbs and the neighboring places enter into the city, and sent Temouztach to Termeh to secure that. When the enemy arriv'd in those countries, they only pillag'd the towns; but some of their troops, which went to Bocara, and were there join'd by others of the army of Tocatmich, who came by Carezem, resolv'd upon besieging that city.

Tag! Bougl Berlas was then in the place with Artimich Couthchin, and Derbi Couthchin, who had fortify'd the walls. These captains defended themselves, and vigorously repuls'd the
d

A company of a hundred horse.
enemy, inmuch that in the several attacks they made, the besiegers had always the worst, and despairing of taking Bocara, they rais'd the siege, and made inroads into Transoxiana. They let loose to Zendpir Serai, whether they were conducted by Sultan Mahmud son of Kej Cofen Carloli. They march'd by Carshul and Curaz, and thence as far as Kinfren on the banks of the Gihon. The Emire Abbas at this time died of a wound he receiv'd from an arrow in the battle of Juefie.

CHAP. LXIII.

Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Fars and Ira to the family of Mouzafer.

TIMUR, being at Chiraz, on advice of the events we have related, went to Samarcand by the way of Yezd, the Emir Ohsman Abbas, with thirty of the bravest horse of the army, commanding him to make haste.

The emperor gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, nephew of Chah Chuja; that of Ispahan to Sultan Mehemed his eldest son; and that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed brother of Chah Chuja. He invested the Sultan Abou Ilhak, grandson of Chah Chuja, in the government of the province of Sirdgian, as also in the town and castle, which we shall hereafter have occasion to mention. It was made a principality by this monarch, as also a Storgal, that is a lordship, which he gave to him and his heirs for ever; and he honor'd all these princes with his letters-patent, seal'd with the imperial signet, which
The History of Timur-Bec.

Book II.

which is call'd Aitonga, that is, the mark of the red band.

The emperor then commanded the illustrious and learned lord, the Chereff Gerjani, to quit the country of Fars, and reside at the royal city of Samarcand. He gave the same orders to the principal Emirs of the deceased king Chah Chinja, to the Emir Aladin Faraq, and to many other lords who were the principal men of the state; and bade them to the same country the workmen and artists with their families, whom he found to be most expert and skilful in their respective trades. Then having resolved to return to Samarcand, he took horse at the end of the month of Muharram, in the year of the Hegira 793, at a most lucky moment.

When Timur was arriv'd at Bendemir, the brave Pellevan Muhadddeh Gorofani, governor and prince of Abbecou, sent an express to inform him, that it was not being convenient to leave the town without a governor, he besought him to send a Deroga, that he might have the happiness to kiss the ground in presence of the emperor; in which case he would come with expedition to court. Timur sent thither Toukel Bazar Chah, who was no sooner arriv'd than Muhadddeh readily went to meet this monarch; and by the procurement of the Emirs he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. When the victorious standard was arriv'd at Abbecou, Muhadddeh paid his humble respects to Timur; and after having offer'd presents suitable to his ability, he gave him a sumptuous feast. He was treated with all manner of civility by the

* A river which passes by Karaj.
* A town of Fars, dependent on Farsar, long. 57°. 50', lat. 34°. 30'.

emperor,
The emperor, who conform'd him by letters-patent in Chap. 4 his principality of Abrecon.

The court at length march'd to Ispahan and Tashapal. When the enemy had advice of Timur's arrival in Tranoxsiana with his army, however resolute they seem'd before, they now thought fit to fly; some went to Carzom, others to the desert of Capchac: and the victorious standard having cross'd the Gihon, and arriving at the seat of the empire, was let up in the city of Samarqand.

Timur immediately sent Cozadul Hutteini, Cheik Alí Behader, Omar Talban, and others, in pursuit of the enemy.

These princes march'd day and night to come up with 'em: they drove 'em as far as Bilen; and after having put abundance of 'em to the sword, they return'd to court.

CHAP. LXIV.

The emperor orders a process against some Emiri, whom he had left in Tranoxsiana.

The troops of the emperor Timur being accus'd to vanquish their enemys, it appear'd strange to this monarch that in the battle of Juelik the army of Tecatmich Can had had the advantage of our troops. Upon which he order'd that they then'd bring before him the Emiris who had been at the battle; and having learnt from themselves the particular circumstances of the fight, he order'd em to be question'd in the council of war, and then to be prosecuted.

Berat
Berat Caja Cceleltach, who on this occasion had given no marks of that valor which is usual in the hero of a triumphant army, had his beard shaven; and after having receiv'd severe reproofs for his cowardice, they painted his face with curds and vermilion, put on his head a coif, as if he had been a woman, and made him run bare-foot thro' the city.

On the contrary, Kutche Malek, who had shown an heroic courage in the pursuit of the enemy, and with thirteen men only had attack'd in the night three hundred infidels of Anatojua's party in Yatchal near Cogende, and had deliver'd out of their hands several of the inhabitants of Cogende and the country's adjacent, whom they had made slaves, and whom he afterwards sent to their country; Kutche Malek, I say, receiv'd, as a reward of his great actions, a country which was made a principality, for him and his successors to enjoy for ever, and after many other considerable favors and careles from Timur, he was honor'd with the privileged order of Terecm.

And the Mirza Omar Cheik, who had given incontestable proofs of his valor by his great exploits, had the pleasure of being rais'd in dignity, and power, by the favors of the ever-victorious emperor his father.

There is no greater reproach among the eastern nations than to shave the beard after it has once grown; and the shame is still more the greater to have it done by the hands of the common hangman.

Terecm is a dignity, which whoever enjoys has great privileges confer'd upon him, as is evident in the history of Granges Can.

The end of the second book.
BOOK III.

Three bloody wars against Tocatmich Can, king of Cipchac. The conquest of his country:—The plundering of Muscovy, Circassia, Bulgaria and Georgia. The conquest of Persia, Mesopotamia, and Coudistan. The war against the Geter, and the ravaging of all Mogolistan.

CHAP. I.

Timur-Bec departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carezem.

In the year of the Crocodile, which answers to that of the Hegira 790. Timur began his march towards Carezem: he encamped at Egryat*, from whence he sent Conduc Aglen, and Timur Cotlin Aglen with the vanguard: these two princes had abandon'd Tocatmich Can, and fled for refuge to the court of Timur.

* Six leagues from Samarcand.
When they had crossed the river of Bagdad, they sent Aids Gora to discover the condition of the country; who, meeting on the road a shepherd of Ilicmich Aglen, led him, and having question'd him concerning the condition of the enemy, sent him to court. Timur being inform'd of all he desired to know, continu'd his road to the river of Chedris; which when he had crossed, there came a defector from the enemy, who said that Ilicmich Aglen and Soliman Soh had abandon'd the kingdom of Carezem to save their lives, and were fled to Tocezmich Can emperor of Capessa.

On this news Timur sent Mirza Miran Chah, with five other Emirs, follow'd by their regiments, in pursuit of the two princes. These Emirs march'd with such expedition by the road of Combine and Kiz, that they overtook 'em, attack'd 'em, and made a terrible slaughter of their men, and having pillag'd their baggage, return'd in triumph laden with the spoils of the enemy.

Timur stay'd some days in the capital city of Carezem; during which time he order'd the inhabitants to go and live at Samarcand, and carry their goods with 'em. Then this great city was raz'd even to the very foundations, and towns with巴尔 to punish his enemies for their daring to raise war against him. Thus our prince have

---

* A river which falls into the Ghich below Isburn.
* Prince of Capessa, king of Carezem, with Soliman Soh whose letter he esteem'd.
* A river which runs into the Ghich, and serves as a frontier to the kingdom of Kasper and Carezem.
* A town of Transoxiana, long. 57' lat. 43' 50.
* A town of Transoxiana, long. 57' lat. 43' 50.
* Confluence minor, situated in Transoxiana on the Ghich, long. 54' 55' lat. 43' 10.
ing reveng'd himself, march'd towards his capital city, where he happily arriv'd in few days; and at his entry, ordered the ensigns to be display'd in token of victory.

Notwithstanding Timur's wars, as his inclination and designs always tended to make kingdoms flourishing, and his subjects happy by the administration of justice; every one call'd him the father of the people. But imagining he could not entirely make 'em happy but by being the sole master of the universe, he was oblig'd, like other conquerors, to strike terror into all parts, and severely to chastise those who resisted him, by which means his armies were so formidable, that they were compar'd to the tempests of heaven, because of the devastation they brought with them. Wherefore three years after this conquest, in the year of the Hegira 791, Timur reliev'd to continue the war in Capelan, and send Moulike, son of Junki Coubchin, into Carezam, to repair the ruins of that kingdom, and settle it in its first state. Moulike, according to his commission, re-peopled the country, and brought it up to its ancient splendor, and even surrounded with walls the towns of Car and Kirac, and all the demesns of the Caan, that is, that part of Carezam which Genghis Can join'd to the lands of Zagatari Can when he fath'd his empire among his children.

* Coubchin is one of the most ancient and illustrious houses of the Moge.

* Long. 95. lat. 30. 38. near the Gibon.

* S. E. of the Gibon, long. 93. 33. lat. 39. 49.
CHAP. II.

Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Carezem.

As soon as Timur was depart'd for Carezem, About Feth, younger brother of Mehernace Mireke, abandon'd Timur; he fled from Samarcand, and at night came to the great defart of Capchac; which he cou'd not ou so secretly but Lalam Behader Contchin perceiv'd it: wherefore he purfu'd him with so much diligence, that having made use of all the horses of the army which he found on the road, he overtook him at Hifarec, where he found him sleeping on a plain: he immediately demanded the cause of his flight, and his ingratitude to his prince. He answer'd, that he went to seek his brother Mireke, who had quitted Timur, and sent for him. Lalam Behader took him by the collar, laid him on a horse, bound with cords, and brought him back the same way he came; and at Bocara deliver'd him up to Mirza Omar Cheilk, to whom he told all that had pass'd between him and the prisoner.

Upon this the Mirza immediately wrote to Timur at Carezem; and in the mean while came with expedition to Samarcand, where he cho-

 Gov: of Cavian, and son in law to Timur, having espous'd the princess Sultan Baff Begint, daughter of Timur: he was son of Chit Behram, and relation of Kes Cotra Calati.

Also call'd Hissar Chadman, a town of Sagmena between the iron-gate and the river of Vach, near the kingdom of Calian; long. 100° 30'. lat. 38°.
rowly examin'd the circumstances of this rebellion. He had advice, that Mehemet Mireke, not considering that Timur had honor'd him with his alliance, marrying him with the princess Sultan Bacht Bogum his daughter, who was now big with child, nor reflecting on the lots of so great an emperor's favor, of whom he held the government of the kingdom of Cat- 
lan, and the neighbouring places; seduced by a fatality, which leads men into disorders, and blind at his good fortune, had neglected his duty to Timur, and was led away with a desire of making himself independent, notwithstanding the misfortunes several of his equals had fallen into, who had endeavor'd the like. Indeed Mireke's conscience reproach'd him a long time for his crime; but his ambition gaining the master of his reason, he at length resolve'd to revolt, and declare war against the emperor, at the same time bringing into his misfortune the troops which were at Samarcand, at the head of which he went out of this town. The Mirza also learnt that when the rebels pass'd by the iron-gate, nam'd Gogula, the troops of Catlan had already pillag'd the province of Termed, and all the neighbouring places; but that they were not able to force the town, because Temour Tach, the governor, had courageously defended it, and plac'd chains cross the streets, to preserve it from the insults of these rebels.

When Mirza Omar Cheik was allur'd of the truth of this news, he departed from Samarcand, and came to Ilgazigago; he there got together the troops, with which he march'd in

---

1 A village without Samarcand, on the road to Cachi in Transoxiana. There's another Ilgazigago in Caucasus.
pursuit of Mirche. This latter having plac'd his men in order, had already plunder'd the houses of Dadmote Berlas, and Akitmur Behader, governor of those countrys: he had made himself master of their effects, and had caus'd the arsenal to be open'd, from whence he had carry'd away all the arms and machines of war, and distributed 'em among a company of robbers whom he had assembled, and to whom he also gave horses and clothes. This rebel, being prepar'd to maintain the war against his prince, was so confident in this state of independence, and having got a luscious equipage, that he look'd upon the sun, it one may say so, but as an atom, not considering that enterprises and projects against the decrees of providence, have never any other effect than that which the rods of Pharaoh's magicians had in the presence of the rod of Moses.

It is true, that these rebels had no sooner heard of the approach of Mirza Omar Cheik, and his expedition in marching, than their insolence was chang'd into a shameful cowardice: a dread of coming to blows with so valiant a prince, seiz'd the hearts of these cowards, who fled, and were dispers'd upon the first rumor of his approach.

This accident broke all the measures of Mirche, and put a stop to his designs: he had the affliction of seeing in a moment that power, with which he had been blinded, disappear; and he knew, too late, upon what ill bottom it was founded, and what chimeras his pride and self-conceit had form'd in his imagination.

The rebel being frustrated of all his intentions, and reduc'd to a deplorable condition, was oblig'd to pass the river of Vassach, on
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. 2.

the stone-bridge, call'd Tartakupru, and to fly into the kingdom of Catlan. He was purs'd with extreme diligence by the Mirza, who having purs'd by Hitar and Tircanji Gandjigat, came to the bank of the river, which he swam over. And Mireho went to the narrow passage, nam'd Derei Dervaz, to seek the protection of Chah Gelaleddin, who refus'd it him, and prudently prohibited his entrance into the castle. He only told him the contents of a moral distich, which his father, a very prudent man, had learnt in his old age, to wit, that we ought to avoid, as far as in us lies, the company of the unfortunate, and to seek those whom fortune favors; in which number was the great Timur, on whom heaven continually shower'd success.

Mireho depriv'd of this protection, departed from the straits of Dervaz, to go in search of another asylum; but he was in very great affliction, because most part of his domestics abandon'd him.

In the mean while, our men having gone over all the mountains and plains to seek Mireho, without hearing any news of him; the Mirza Omar Cheik went to encamp in a town nam'd Capchac, in the kingdom of Catlan; and he lodg'd in the palace of Mireho, nam'd Arzefat. He laid there many days, hoping that some unforeseen accident, such as usually happen'd to Timur, would bring him with honor out of the intricate affair this rebel had involve'd him in.

Long. 101; 30. lat. 38; 30. It is call'd in Persian Polenghum.
* A village near the river Varaib, long. 101; 20. lat. 38.
* A defile of mountains leading from Catlan to Tebed.
* Prince of the frontiers of Tebed.
He was not deceiv'd in his expectation; for Olsma, son of Aroon Omar, going to Samarcand with some domestics, and having pass'd the mountain Bountou, luckily arriv'd at the brink of a fountain, where he observ'd the marks of the horses feet, which were gone out of the common road. He was inspir'd with a desire to pursue 'em, and he had no sooner pass'd some hills than he perceiv'd Mehemet Mireke, sitting with four valets, who had taken off their horses' harnesses that they might feed on the grass: he immediately surround'd 'em, left they shou'd get away; and Olsma seeing on the horses, flout the prisoners. Mireke and his men, whom he put in irons: he then dispatched a courier to the Mirza, to give him advice of it, and forthwith return'd with the prisoners. He was on the road when he receiv'd orders to put Mireke to death, which he readily obey'd; and Mireke and his brother Aboul Feth were executed. These traitors were punish'd for an example to others, and to verify the text of the Alcoran, which says, That traitors and ingratitude persons are accurs'd by God. The Mirza having put an end to these disorders by the death of Mireke, departed for Samarcand, where he had the honor to salute the emperor his father. At the time when Mireke revolted and departed from Samarcand, the Emir Gehanghir also went from Condor, to join the imperial camp with the Toman of Bourouldai, Taican, and Aperdi; besides which he was join'd at Bace by the Emir Yaqghiar Berlas at the head of the troops of Bace and the neighboring places. As they were marching together, the Toman of Bourouldai revolted.

Death of Mehemet Mireke.
and turn'd back. Gehancha inform'd the court of it, and return'd to pursue the rebellious Toman, in conjunction with Coja Yousef son of Oladgia Irni, Junaid nephew of Bourbonladi, and Pir Alizaz officer of the troops of Bale; they march'd with such expedition day and night, that they join'd the rebels at Bacalan, and pillag'd their houses and goods. The Emir Gehancha had receiv'd news of the revolt of Mirke, and had learnt that he was encamp'd in the territory of Hifar Chaduman, with the troops he had lift'd. This Emir march'd against him with his men rang'd in order of battle, while Coja Yousef came to Arhenk to take care of the troops which he commanded; and Pir Alizaz went to Bale to bring away those which remain'd there; after they had all agreed to meet again on the bank of the Gibon.

Gehancha got there first; and having built some floats, cross'd the river, and encamp'd on the other bank at the head of his squadron; but as soon as night came, Junaid Bourbonladi and his brother Bajazer, as also Ali Echber, revolted with the squadrons they commanded, which consist'd of three thousand horse. They fell suddenly on Gehancha who had no more than sixty men; but this valiant general, excited by the good fortune of Timur, far from being troubled at the sight of so strange an accident, tho' with so few attendants, put his trust in God, and with this small number of men face'd the enemy, having the river at his back; and he and his men being cover'd with the great and small bucklers which they ordinarily us'd, they march'd courageously against the rebels. The combat was violent; they began with their arrows, and when they were
In the mean while Coja Youef sent a man by the river to Gehancha to advise him to stand his ground, because he should soon come to his assistance. This news did not a little strengthen our soldiers, who, with a hundred men, refilled to great a number of the enemy; it rekindled their valor; they kept firm all the day, and when night was come, Coja Youef, and Pir Alliz, with a hundred horse, having join'd 'em, after they had swam over the river, they fell so vigorously upon the enemy, that they made 'em feel the effects of their courage by a hundred glorious actions; and the sun was no sooner ris'n, than victory declar'd her self on their side. The enemy shamefully turn'd their backs, notwithstanding the advantage of their number, which was twenty to one; they fled towards the river, which they cross'd, and retir'd to Bacalan. It is remark'd in the Alcoran, That twenty brave men of resolution and courage alway defeat their enemies, tho' they be two hundred in number. Our men pursu'd 'em and kill'd several; and the Emir Gehancha encamp'd at Condor with his soldiery, very well contented with the victory. The fugitives of the horde of Bouroulidai believing themselves pursu'd, pass on farther; and having gone over the mountains of Hendoukech, they march'd to Cabul, where they found Aboulaid Bisoud. This governor, thro' an unheard-of ingratitude, which made him forget all the favors he had receiv'd of Timur, revolted also with 'em.

During these transactions, it happen'd that Acouga Bisoud, enemy of Aboulaid, whom Timur had order'd to be seiz'd and sent to Mogolistan near
The history of Timur-Bec. near the mountains of Eitai, having attempted to escape and get to his own country, was again seized and brought to Timur with his feet and hands bound. The emperor hearing of the revolt of Aboufald Bifon, was favorable to Arzouga, cause his chains to be taken off, and having given him the command of the hord of Bifon, which this rebel polles'd, sent him to Genaicha; and on his return to Samarcand he even dispatch'd recruits to him by Ramdon Coja and other generals, ordering him to go seek the enemy whithersoever they were retir'd. Thus Genaicha and Coja Youles departed for Condoz and Bala-n, and having pass'd Hendoolteh and Cabul, they join'd Junaid and Aboufald at Lagaman; they pillag'd the houses of their hords, and ravag'd the country; and those who cou'd avoid the fury of the seymitars, fled into the country of Sende. The Emir Arzouga, having advice of it, departed from Herat with design to fight these rebels; and was join'd in the way by Seifel Cananari with the troops of Candahar, which he had got together; they pass'd many mountains and forests, and at length overtook these unfortunate persons; and having block'd up all the passages oblig'd 'em to fight, and in smartly repuls'd 'em, that Junaid, Hajiuet, and Abou-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. said, after the loss of a great many of their soldiers, and the pillage of the little baggage they had left, had a deal of trouble to escape from our men, and fly to the town of Dell in India. Our troops return’d in triumph to the place of their residence with all possible satisfaction.

When Timur was in the way to Carezem, Siorgatmich Can fell sick at Bocara, where he died: his body was transported to the field of Kech, and bury’d near Conbecan Igage under a mausoleum which himself had cause’d to be built there. After the reduction of Carezem, Timur return’d during the autumn to Samarcand, which city was magnificently adorn’d to receive him; and he immediately establish’d the Sultan Mehemet son of Siorgatmich Can in the place of his father.

Then Timur excited by a fatherly love to his children, took up a resolution to put in practice in their persons the counsel of Mahomet, who says we ought to marry that we may have children, and multiply the species; wherefore he gave orders to his prime officers to make all necessary preparations for magnificent nuptial-scalfs and the ceremonies of marriage: he even order’d a most solemn publick banquet, in which the inhabitants spair’d nothing to testify their joy: they adorn’d the great city with the most magnificent fruits, and hung out branch’d candlesticks in all the streets: they prepar’d high and spacious tents in the delicious garden of Baghi Beshcht, that is, the garden of paradise: they cover’d the ground with rich carpets, and stuffs of all colors enrich’d with em-
The history of Timur-Bec.

beodery's, and adorn'd with pearls and precious Chap-
stones. In this beautiful and magnificent gar-
den, the great Timur marry'd, according to the
mahometan law, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan,
and his brother the Mirza Pir Mehemet, as allo
Mirza Charoe, with the priccellers who were
chosen for their brides, and who were as beauti-
ful as the Houri". It was in the year of the
Hegira 790, that the crown of this vast empire
was settled in his august family, by these happy
marriages. After the solemnity was finish'd,
Timur dismiss'd his troops; the Mirza- Miran
Chah return'd to Corassiana; the Mirza Omar
Cheik to Anderan; and Timur pass'd the winter
at Samarcan with all possible felicity and con-
tentment.

CHAP. III.

Timur departs to make war in Capezac, and is
victorious over Toecatmich Can.

As fate had mark'd on the forehead of To-
catmich Can, sovereign of Capezac, the
misfortune which must necessarily happen to
him, and excite him to despite the gifts and
favors he had receiv'd from Timur; this prince
gave marks of his ingratitude on several occa-
sions: infinuch that he lent officers to levy
troops thru the empire of Toecat, of which he
was master. This army was compos'd of the

* The Mahometans believe there will always be in paradise young women whose virtue and beauty will never fade. They are call'd Houris.
The History of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Troops of Ruia, Circassia, Bulgaria, Capelar, Crimea, Caesa, Eliau and Azar, as also of Bakhgorod, and even of Mufiev, and made so formidable an appearance, that poets have compared it to the leaves of the thickest trees, or the drops of rain in the most impetuous storms. Tocatmich brought this great army into the field, and marched against Timur at the end of the year 790. The emperor had no sooner advice of it, than he departed from his capital at the head of the troops of Samarcand and Kech, and went to encamp at Sargidge. He sent Tavatchis into all the provinces of his kingdom to levy troops, and bring 'em to the place of rendezvous. This winter the cold was so violent that the earth was covered with snow, and the men were almost froze to death. In the mean while, news was brought, that the army of Capelar, commanded by Ichmich Aglich, and composed of a vast number of horse, had crossed the River Siron ever against the town of Cogende, and was encamped near Tjoue-Zernour. Timur forthwith resolved to give him battle; the lords of his council fell upon their knees, and made pressing intercessions to hinder him, and particularly besought him to wait till the troops of all the provinces arrived; but as he was not ignorant of the proverb, which says, That delay is dangerous, and that we ought never to put off till to-morrow what we are able to do to-day, their remonstrance was ineffectual; and without waiting for other troops besides those of his household which he then had.

* A village six leagues from Samarcand.
* King of Caucasus, who fled to Tocatmich Can.
* A village in Transoxiana, near the Siron, towards Cogende.
The history of Timur-Rece.

with him, he departed from his camp, and enter'd into the snow, which was already so deep that it touch'd the horses' bellies. In the mean while as he wasступил of the victory, he march'd night and day, and shortly after was join'd by Mirza Omar Cheik, who having got together the troops of Andezan, march'd along the bank of the Sihon with extreme diligence. Timur sent Conige Aglen, Temour Cottin Aglen, and Cheik Ali Bendi, with a body of horse to fall on the enemy's rear, and to block up the passages and hinder their flight. The next day at sun-rising, they pass'd over the hill *Te-lambar*, and came in sight of the enemy; they immediately made the great cry Sowroutil to begin the fight. There was nothing heard but the noise of kettle drums, the clashing of cymbals, the neighings of the horses, and the cries of the soldiers. After a bloody battle the advantage fell on our side; the enemy gave ground, and were obliged to fly, after having lost in the battle a great part of the soldiers, a great many of whom call themselves into the Laxattes to avoid the fury of our arms, and there miserably perished. Those who escap'd out of the fight fled with precipitation; but the greatest part met the cavalry which Timur had sent to cut off their passage in the rear. And as they were yet pursu'd by our victorious army, they found themselves surrounded on all sides: our men made use of their war-clubs, swords, arrows and lances to destroy 'em; and shew'd so much resolution on this occasion, that the greatest part of the enemies were cut in pieces without obtaining any quarter from our soldiers. There was only the celebrated Airdi Birdi, secretary of state, and one of those whom we call Bacchis,
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book III. Bacchis, who was made prisoner of war; and they had immediately cut off his head if he had not made himself known. So they brought him alive to Timur, who informed himself from him of the state of affairs of Toganaich Can, and at length pardon'd him; he even gave him a veil, which he accompany'd with many other civilities, and enrol'd him into his service; insomuch that he who was before but a slave, became in a moment a great lord. Timur decamp'd, and march'd towards his capital; and in the month of Sefer, in the year of the Hegira 791, he encamp'd at Acet, where he staid some time.

When the spring appear'd, all the troops of the empire of Timur arriv'd. The Mirza Miran Chaeh came at the head of those of Corallana, and join'd the imperial camp: the troops of Bace, Conde, Bacala, Bedakhan, Catlan, Hitara Chaduman, and many other towns and provinces did the same. Timur gave orders to the Mirza Omar Cheik, the Emir Hadgi Seleddin, and the Emir Aeleoutmir, to cause a bridge of boats to be built over the Sihon near Cogende. The Emirs obey'd, and built others in many places to facilitate the passage of the troops, and they gave advice of it to the court.

At the beginning of the year of the Serpent, which answers to the month of Rabylevel 791, this prince departed to continue the war in Capchae. When he arriv'd at the bank of the Sihon, accompany'd by the princes his sons, he

---

1 Secretary of the Timur kings, who write in the Ignatian characters.
2 A village near Samarcand and Koch.
3 A kingdom between Transilvania and Teber; it is part of Zagatal, is bounded by the Gihon towards the kingdom of Cadan.
crost'd the bridge at the head of a formidable Chap army. He gave the command of the vanguard to the Emirs Temour Gouth Aglen, Savindgie Behader, and Olman Behader. These captains were no sooner on their road, than they sent out scouts to endeavor to discover those of the enemy. In short, they soon perceiv'd 'em, and at the same time gave advice to the Emirs of the vanguard. These skilful warriors lay in ambuscade to surprize those of Capchae, who having not seen our scouts were lain down to sleep, not regarding the maxims of war, which prohibit the taking any repose before one has advice of the condition of the enemy. Our men mounted their horses, after having prepar'd themselves for fighting; they march'd during the night, and having met the enemy, fell upon 'em like roaring lions on their prey.

They employ'd all sorts of arms to hinder any of the enemy's scouts escapeing 'em; they kill'd a great number of 'em, but in the mean while there were several who fix'd themselves notwithstanding their wounds, and having crost'd the river Arach, retir'd to Tocatmich. The army of this prince had besieged the town of Sabcan, which was vigorously defended by the captains, Genshorehe, Lad and Cotchi; which made Tocatmich despair of taking it: So he rais'd the siege, and having pillag'd Yaffi, encamp'd in the large plains of that country.

But he had no sooner receiv'd advice of the arrival of our troops, than he fled with all his

---

* See of Quron Can, and consequently an enemy to Tocatmich.
* Which discharges it fell into the Siren near Tenghi Embr.
* A town of Capchae, long. 48. lat. 47. 30.
* A small town six leagues from Sabcan.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. soldiers who heard of it; and this army, so numerous and well furnish'd, which might have render'd it self formidable to all the nations, was defeated by a single report, and scatter'd here and there like grasshoppers on the plains. In short, the name and arms of the conquering Timur were so formidable to his enemies, that as soon as they heard of our approach, they made such haste in their flight, that we could not perceive even the dust which their horses rais'd. The succísful emperor, being inform'd of the rout of the enemy, sent Hadgi Seifed-din with the furniture of his household to Samarquand, while he march'd with diligence in pursuit of the fugitives. He sent before him, to gain intelligence, Coja Cheik Gouchum, Toplac Coutechin, Caraican Behader, and Deuletcha Gebegi, with forty chosen men, having each two horset. These horsemen came up with the soldiers of the enemy's rear, who remain'd behind in a place nam'd Soric Ouan; they attack'd 'em, and kill'd a great number; but some fled.

Our victorious warriors were in the defart, and about to return home, when they met Kirba Derecan, encamp'd with the hundred families of which he was chief. They attack'd him so vigorously, that Chacouli, one of our horsemen, seiz'd him by the collar, and took him prisoner. They took all its people captives, seiz'd their cattle and flocks, which were conducted with a great deal of fatigue as far as Acfeoma, where the imperial army was encamp'd.

A bend on the river Arach.

A village of Zagatal, towards Capelan.

Timur
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur decamp'd from that place, pass'd the Chap., defart by the way of Ozenochakeel, and arriv'd at Bilan; from whence, pass'd by Saree, Ouezan, and Gouradgun, he went to encamp at Alcouchoun.

CHAP. IV.

Timur sends the Mirza Miran Chah into Corassana.

Timur, being encamp'd at Alcouchoun, receiv'd advice that the Serbedal princes, and Hadji Bei Youn Gariani, were revolted with the garrisans of the towns of Kelat and Tou; wherupon he sent the Mirza Miran Chah thither, who departed at the head of the main body of the army. He made great haste, and as soon as he arriv'd at Samarcand, he caus'd Malek Pir Meheme, son of Malek Cayafeddin, to be put to death; that so the cause of the disorders in Corassana might be remov'd, according to the instructions he had receiv'd. He us'd the

* A village of Gare.
* A town of Capchac.
* A town in Capchac.
* A village in Capchac.
* Serbedal signify, head on the branch, because those among them who are taciturn, hang their heads on branches, in token of submission. The Serbedales reigned forty-five years in Corassana, from 1237 to 1282, of the Hegira. The last of those kings was Geis Ali Malek Serbedal; he died in the camp of Timur, who plac'd a governor for himself in Samarc, where their kings, who were twelve in number, refus'd.
* The same as Younit; several villages in Corassana near the town of Tou.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

Some penitentiary towards Zein Ebadeddin, and Mahmoud, son of Melet Pir Mehemet; informing that there remain’d not one of the family of those Coutes princes.

This young Mirza at length depart from Samarcand for Coraffana; and as he pass’d by the fields of Behrabad, he met the Serbald Kings, who affecting to shew their bravery on all occasions, came to meet him at the head of their army. These desperate men, who had resolve’d to conquer or die, fell furiously upon Timur’s son, who found the onset with unparalleled resolution; and having given a thousand marks of his great courage in this bloody action, his right and left wings advance’d, and so destroy’d surrounded the Serbals, that they found themselves taken like birds in a net. There all the army fall upon ‘em, and cut ‘em in pieces. Prince Memone was the only person who found means to escape, the half dead, and to fly into Persia with two or three of his guards, who comforted him in his misfortunes. The Emir Arouga, who was depart from Herat to quell this rebellion, laid siege to Tous, and took it, after Hadji Bel, younger brother of Ali Bel Youn Garbani, was gone out of it to fly into Persia; but when he was at Sennane, he was seiz’d by the Cherif of Hezaregheri, and sent to the Mirza, who put him to death according to law.

After the Mirza-Miran Chah had vanquish’d the rebels, and put an end to the disorders, by delivering the kingdom from the perfidious
The history of Timur-Bek.

Serbedals, he return'd to the place of his residence, well pleas'd with his expedition.

In the mean while Timur having return'd to march in person in pursuit of Tocatmich Can, all the Emirs and lords of his council again fell on their knees before him, and as faithful servants presented to him, that it was more convenient, felt, to march against Keser Coja Aglen, son of Fagal Timur Can, and against Amtoura, to give 'em battle and destroy 'em, as a penance for their boldness, and to take from 'em all means of hurting him another time, and afterwards he might rarely go against Tocatmich Can. The emperor finding reason on their side, fellow'd their counsel.

CHAP. V.

Timur's expedition into Mogolistan against Keser Coja Aglen, and the prince Amtoura; which made the 15th campaign in that country.

In the year 791, Timur took a resolution to march into the country of the Moguls. He departed from Alcoushcham for this expedition; and passing by the road of Bowei Bachi, with his army, and the troops of his household, he went to Topalic Carac, and ascended the mountain of Ournac; but as his cavalry was not in so

---

1. King of Mogolistan and Geo.
2. A town at the entrance of the great mountain of Cas or Caschian, which the Oiumele the historian calls Ali, long. 105°, lat. 54°.
3. A bird near the mountain Ournac.
4. The residence of Ournac, the son of Japheth, the son of Noah, the founder, of the Mogul empire. long. 4°, lat. 44°. It is also called Ournac, Loradic.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

good a condition as he cou’d wish because of the
leaness of the horses; he sent three troopers out
of every ten to the country of Samarkand, giving
their horses to the seven who remain’d; and at
length regulated all his cavalry at the rate of
two horses to each man. He departed from his
camp, and arriv’d at Aiser Souti*, where there
was no water, which very much incommode
the army, they being oblig’d for two or three
days to dig wells to get some; but as they cou’d
furnish thereon only a small quantity for so great
a multitude, God provided for ‘em; for tho’ they
were yet in the midst of summer, there was in
the desert a vast large meadow cover’d with ice
and snow, where with all the army quench’d their
thirst, as did also the horses and cattle. The
Moguls* then gave thanks to God, and depart-
ed to encamp at Togrub Orlac*, where Timur
gave orders to his officers to make preparations
for a general hunting; in the chase they trav-
elled the whole plain of Algheryals*, where sever-
als wild sites were taken. They carry’d
away the fatest, and left the others; and at
length the army arriv’d at the plain of Oulan-
arta*; where it encamp’d in a place nam’d Chip-
par Aigher; at that place they perceiv’d Oulab-
pousa and Lucheshia with a thousand horse be-
longing to Amtourea, who march’d over these
plains to seek the herd of Behrime. Miere Eir-
chi and Pir Alitta commanded the vanguard of

---

* A road at the foot of the mountains Oulara.
* The author here calls Timur and the soldiery of his army
Mogalis, because they prize defended from ‘em.
* The meadow of the falcon; a herd in the kingdom of Gaza,
next the mountain Ozenia.
* A path of the river Tic.
* A plain in Gaza, in which is a town call’d Chipar Aigher.
the right wing of our army; they vigorously attacked the enemy, and with as much success, that they turn’d their backs and fled. Our men seiz’d on one of their soldiers, whom they brought to Timur: this prince having question’d him concerning the condition of the enemy, learns that Ancatoura was at Ouronkyar; whereupon he dispatch’d the Cheik Ali Beimden, Alcatoura and other Emirs to fight him: he order’d ’em to use all possible expedition to join him at Ouronkyar, and enjoind ’em not to make any fire all the way, that the enemy might have no news of their march. Timur immediately follow’d ’em, and march’d all night to make more haste. Next morning they perceive’d that the guide having lost his way, the troops were not in the right road, which oblig’d our men to march all that day to regain the road by Caisan Cazi; and at the approach of night they came to Ghouchali. The next morning they re-enter’d the road, and came to Ajokaz: the army encamp’d there, and Timur held a council with the princes his sons, the Emirs, generals, and other princes and lords who accompany’d him; he told ’em, that as it was likely that the misfortune which happen’d in the road, might have occasion’d Ancatoura to hear of their march, and to disperse his troops, it was advisable that the army should be divided into two bodies, to seek the enemy two different ways; which was highly approv’d. Upon this he immediately sent the Mirza Omar Cheik one way

* Otherwise call’d Ouronkyar, a town of Gete, long. 11½.
* A town of Gete near mount Omar.
* A village of Gete.
* A kind of Gete.
with part of the army, and gave him for a guide the Emir Gelal, son of Hamid; and Timur with the other body took the road to Chira*, Chebeldou*, Cosl Meragh*, Coragan*, and Boumagen*; which places having pass'd, they came up to Caragoutchour*.

In the mean while the Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of his body of the army, pass'd the plains and mountains; and wherever he met with any of the enemy's subjects, he vanquish'd and exterminated 'em, till at length he came up with Anacoura at Conbac*. There was immediately made on both sides the great cry for the battle, which began with incredible vigor; it was continued in the same manner, and by the goodness of God our men gain'd the victory: they kill'd a great number of the infidels, and so briskly pass'd Anacoura who fled, that they constrain'd him to abandon that country, and fly to Cacmaburgi*. They took from him a great quantity of cattle: all his daughters, who were of incomparable beauty, fell into the hands of the conqueror; insomuch that the illustrious Mirza, contented with the advantage he had gain'd, return'd in triumph, and laden with spoils, to Timur his father, whom he had the honor of saluting at Asabador*.

As it was a long time since the Cheik Ali Behader, and Alcomir had depart'd, and they had had no news of 'em; the Mirza Omar Cheik was order'd to march with a good

---

convey to inform himself of what was become of 'em: This young prince immediately departed, but soon after the Emirs, whom he went in search of, arrived at the camp another way. In the mean while he purf'd his road, and when he was arriv'd at a plain nam'd ?lehum Alaghul, he by chance met eight hundred of the enemy's horse, commanded by Carabetian Temour: the Mirza had with him only fifty men, but they were all princes, Emirs, and generals; of which number were Colladad Hulfeini, Temour Coft Aechoua, Hadgi Mamurcha Yelouri, and Pir Hadgi Elation, and the other lords were of the same rank with 'em. Notwithstanding the inequality of the forces, all these brave men trusted in God, and in the good fortune of Timur; and without hesitation attack'd the enemy, falling upon 'em in this defeat far from any place of retreat, as lions upon their prey. The fight was bloody, but our carry'd the victory, tho' every horseman had fix of the other side to combat with. The Mirza then'sd greater valor than any of the others on this occasion, and push'd his bravery to a point that was admir'd by all.

Pir Hadgi, son of Yelcardgi Elation, one of the most valiant warriors of the age, after having overthrown a great number of the enemy, and made his way thro' the middle of 'em sword in hand like a roaring lion, was struck with an arrow, which took away his life. At length our brave men (which is almost incredible) put the enemy to the rout, flew a great number; and having pillag'd their horses, sheep, and

* A plain in Curr, near the river, Kitch, where there is a
  lake here.
* The family of Elation is accounted royal by the Moguls.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Buchill, returned to the camp laden with booty, where they were receiv'd with all the applause which so considerable an action deserv'd. Timur at the same time arriv'd at Caragoutechour, where he encamp'd, and divided the booty among the officers and soldiers. He staid at this place long enough for the fanning of his horses. He sent the Emir Gehanchia and Oushecara Benhader with thirty thousand horses, with all expedition, towards Artich, in search of the enemy: they march'd day and night, and arriving at the river of Itrich, half the army march'd along the banks of the river, and many soldiers enter'd into the isles and other places where the enemy might have gone for shelter. There they found a great many, whom they flew, after having pillag'd their goods: they also took a great number prisoners, and return'd in triumph to the royal camp with the spoils.

At length Timur, having destroy'd all these Mogul soldiers who made head against him, put the captives in chains, and sent 'em under the conduct of Mir Lai, father of Tagi Bogat Berlas, Timour Bouga, and other Emirs, to the city of Samarcand, with all they had taken from 'em.

In the mean while Timur pas'd the great desert, and after many days journey arriv'd at Aimal Goufou, and lodg'd in the palace of Serai Ourdam, with a pompous retinue and the utmost magnificence.

* Artich or Itrich, a town of Mogollion, long. 125. lat. 56. 40.
* Formerly call'd Artich, a river which runs thro' all the country of Gezr and Mogollion, and discharges it's self into the river Oby, which falls into the northern sea.
* Capital of Gezr, frontier of Mogollion, long. 115. lat. 51.
CHAP. VI.

Timur holds a diet, and sends his armies into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Getes.

As Timur's ambition was boundless, and the least of his designs surpassed the greatest actions in the world, he never abdicated any one of his enterprises till he had completely finished it. The his armies had several times overcome the enemy, who were almost ruin'd in this campaign; yet he held a general council with the princes his friends, and the other lords of the empire, upon the affair of the Getes, which he was in hopes of putting an end to; he resolve'd that the army should be divided into several bodies, each of which should march a particular way; that they should surround the country where the Getes ordinarily dwell and as several of these people were retir'd into Mogolistan, they should pursue 'em, and give 'em no quarter in whatsoever province they met with 'em. Pursuant to this resolution he call'd to the council those who were acquainted with the roads of the country, and who might serve as guides: they made their reports relating to the different passages and ways of these quarters; and wrote memoirs of 'em, copies of which were distributed among the princes and generals of the army. Then a guide was order'd for each body of the army, and the road he was to take was set down; as also the country he was to surround, that by this means those who had fled for refuge...
The history of Timur-Becc.

Book III. Fuge into different places might be taken. And the country of Yanduz was order'd to be the rendezvous of all the commanders of the troops.

The Mirza Qamar Chell, who led the troops of Andecan, had for his guide the princes Barhan Aqten, and Bicanim Timor for of Gete Bicudac: he went by the road mark'd out to him; made inroads both to the right and left, pillag'd every thing he met, and put to the sword all the enemies he found; he crost the mountain Doubechin Ananour, and arriv'd at Cara Coja, three months journey from Samarcan by the caravan.

Another body of the army was commanded by the Emir Gehancha, and Cheik Ali Behadar, which was compiz'd of thirty thousand horse well arm'd and mounted; they had for their guide an officer nam'd Sancous, and march'd by a private road; they went to Cara Art, and to Choumugine, where they slew and pillag'd all the Getes they met.

Oflman Abbaz commanded another body of the army of twenty thousand men, and had for a guide the Emir Gial Hamid; they pass'd by Saghixgan, Sougonigian, Ligh, and Ghevevar, where they treated the inhabitants in the same manner they had treated the others.

Codadad Hufeini, and Mobacher Behadar were at the head of another body of twenty thousand men, who having for their guide Co-

---

"A mountain in Mogollan near the lake Enagheh.

"A town of Mogollan, called also Aramur; long. 150-15. 46. "A town in Mogollan.

"A valley in Mogollan, famous for the goodness of its fall. "A place in Mogollan, where the king's revenues are collected. "Another place for the same use. "Town of Mogollan.
The history of Timur-Bec.

marched, arriv'd at Bicou, by the road of Ouiritchou: they there met the hords of Boulgagi and Ilker, to which they gave battel, which prov'd bloody, and continu'd twenty-four hours without ceasing: but at length the enemy gave ground, and our victorious loddiers requir'd em Iword in hand, after having taken one part, and put the other to the rout; they pillag'd their goods, and return'd to the camp laden with loots.

Timur began his march with his guards and houeshold troops, and having taken Kalandunggi for his guide, he went by the road of Olue Coni; and having ascended Stechandaban, he again met those Boulgagis, who had escaped the fury of the last battel: he had no sooner perceiv'd them than he attack'd them infidels, who were defeated at the first onset, and cut in pieces.

It is to be noted, that when Timur march'd into Capchac against Tocatmich Can, he left in Turkettan the Emir Vaughtar Hernias, the Emir Selimian Chab, Chamleddin Abbas, and Cayaleddin Torecan; and when he was upon his return from that country, after having vanquish'd and put to the army of Tocatmich, he turn'd towards Geze, and sent messengers to those Emirs who were in the western Turkettan, between the kingdoms of Geze and Capchac, to order them also to march to the country of the Moguls, that they might assist in the destruction of the Gezes, who were there. They obey'd these orders, enter'd into Mogo-

* A town of Mogolitan, long. 113°, lat. 52°.
* A town in Mogolitan.
* The great stream of the river Irris.
* A mountain, long. 124°, lat. 52°.
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book III. tillan, and left on the frontiers, according to Timur's directions, Toi Bouga Cheilk, that he might cause those lands to be cultivated. These Emirs march'd every where in search of the Gezes, and after having gone many days journey, they came to Ourdaban; then they oversaw the river Abeile, and arriv'd at Sothend, and at length at Tchitcherlile, the inhabitants of which were pillag'd, and our soldiers enrich'd with the spoils. From thence they went to Balaican; and wheresoever they met any of their enemies, they destroy'd 'em, or brought 'em away captives and laden with chains. They search'd every where for the hordes of Bouigagi and Saloudgi; and when they came to Molzoundou, they met Kerer Coja Aglen, king of Mogolillan, at the head of a great army; our Emirs judg'd it improper to attack him on horseback, but as they were not accustomed to fly, they dismounted and tied their horses bridle's to their belts; they then on a sudden let fly their arrows on the enemy, and hinder'd their gaining any advantage of 'em. The fight lasted forty eight hours, during which time our men kept fix'd back to back, facing about on all sides, no one flaring from his post; whatever motion Coublie, and the other commanders of the Gezes cou'd make, they did not advance; and the battle was finish'd on both sides in form. Every one thinking it a point of honor that this battle shou'd be finish'd

* A mountain of Geze near Transilvania.
* A river which runs into the Shiron.
* A town on the bank of the great lake of sweet water.
* A town of Mogolillan, long. 117° 70' lat. 40.
* A town of Mogolillan, long. 123° lat. 40.
* A town of Mogolillan, long. 131° lat. 40.
with some accommodation, our brave Emir Chap. 6. made a treaty with Kezer Coja Aglen, which was sworn to by both parties, and they return'd to Yuldux; which place was the general rendezvous of the troops. Cisal Melic Tercan, who thought it advisable to fly, and was gone into the great defarr, join'd Timur at Keitou, where he gave him an account of every thing remarkable in the battle. Upon this news Timur march'd with expedition, join'd the Toman of Sultan Mahmood Can; and having pass'd by Conghez, arriv'd at Yuldux, where the Emir Yazghiar Berlas, Soliman Cha, Chameddin Abbas, and Cayas Eddin Tercan, who were upon their return after the combat and the peace with Kezer Coja Aglen, had the honor to kill the royal carpet.

Timur chose the bravest men of his army, and leaving all his attendance, march'd with expedition, cross'd the river at Oulakiamour, and follow'd the track of Kezer Coja Aglen; he pass'd the great defarr, and arriv'd at Caroboular; from thence he went to Tebrurich, and coming to Gouchon Cai, he discover'd the enemy's army, and pass'd that night there. When the enemy perceiv'd us, they were afraid, and fled, being favor'd by the darkness of the night; there were some of 'em who went into the very middle of the defarr, and placed most

---

* A town of Mogolistan near the river Isch, long. 126. 14. 44.
* A town of Mogolistan on the shore of the great lake Zoo-gheen, long. 125. lat. 53. 50.
* A village over the river Ancora in Mogolistan.
* A fountain at the foot of the mountain Bouchat, long. 125. lat. 50.
* A village dependent on Caracopom.
* A village in Mogolistan, frontier of Calmac, distant.
distant from the public roads, and flung away their ensign which were black. Thus the army of the Gates was dispers'd; and as every regiment took to a different road, many went that way by which the army of Timur came, and met the Mirza Omar Cheikh, who caus'd them all to be slain, and pitied by his soldiers: a body of the fugitives, which follow'd another road, was met and cut in pieces by the Emir Gehanches and the Cheikh Ali Behadar.

Timur having pass'd the mountain ca'd Naftin Keutel, pursu'd the enemy as far as Curatchi; and the king of the Gates, Kezer Cojta Regen, abandon'd his Mogdum to save his life; neither did he compass that design till he had in't several artifices, suffer'd great fatigues, lost all his warriors either slain or made prisoners, as well as his wives and children, and all the inhabitants of this country, which was entirely ruin'd and brought into confusion. Behold what extremity those kings, who are enemies to Timur, are commonly reduc'd to! In the mean while our soldiers who had distributed themselves into all parts, gave no quarter to any one inhabitant of Gates, and made terrible havoc as far as Conlan Keutel, they got possession of an infinite number of horses, camels, sheeps, and other beasts; and made abundance of both sexes slaves. Then the victorious Timur began his march homewards; he came to Jalich, where he divided among the soldiers all the immense booty which he had taken from the Gates in all Mogolistan: at length he decamp'd from Jalich.

* A mountain of Mogolistan.
* A mountain at the extremity of Mogolistan, towards Chinn.
* A town of Mogolistan near Behar, loc. 111. lat. 54.
and passing by Cagirtou, and Bilagir, came to Chap. 6. Yuldau, where he encamp'd.

The Emirs and several bodies of the army, who were sent different ways into all the quarters of Mogulistan, to destroy entirely the Getes, came to this place, laden with spoils and an infinite quantity of captives, and had the honor of bringing the imperial carpet in this general rendezvous.

Yuldau is a place of great delight and pleasure; the many delicious fountains, and abundance of pasture, render the living therein so very agreeable, that poets have composed verses in its praise. The beauty of its fountains is the reason of its name; for Yuldau signifies the morning-bath; the grass there is so strong and nourishing, that the leanest horses, when they have been a week in its meadows, become fat and strong.

From thence Timur sent the Mirza Omar Cheik, with a numerous attendance, to his government of Amtecan, ordering him to pass by the way of the iron-gate, nam'd Colaga, and to destroy the enemy whom he should find in those quarters. This prince readily obey'd; and as soon as he had passed the iron-gate, he met the prince Coublic, one of the great Emirs of the Getes. On the noise of the great cry Sournou, and the great trumpet Kerrenai, the armies of the Mirza and Coublic began to move; the attack was made at the same time, and all

---

1. A town.
2. A mountain of Mogulistan, long. 13°, lat. 50°.
3. Distant from Samarcand two months journey by the caravans, or four hundred and eighty leagues, at eight leagues a day; it is called Coslun by F. Martini, in the voyage of F. Baudoin Gets to Caza, and is in the road from Malacca to China.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

The field was cover'd with the dead and wounded. Fortune declar'd in favor of the Mirza; Coublis was taken, and his head cut off, according to the law of Genghiz Can. The Mirza, after he had made himself master of all Coublis's horses, sheep, and other goods, and exterminated his subjects, continu'd his road by Connun, Outechefermo, and the great city of Carhgar, and at length successfully arriv'd at Andecan, the place of his residence, and the seat of his government.

CHAP. VII.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

Timur having accomplish'd his designs with regard to the Gates, whose country he had entirely ruin'd, after vanquishing the inhabitants, multitudes of whom were slain, and others taken captives; and having enrich'd his soldiers with the spoils, (in which expedition he had march'd above a thousand leagues) being at length contented with his victories, he resolv'd to return to the imperial city of Samarcand. He departed from Ketchi Yuldaz at the head of his armies; and when he was arriv'd at Oluc Yuldaz, he appointed a solemn feast, and order'd preparations to be made for a magnificent entertainment, which was to be fet off with the most exquisite diversions and

* A town of Telbo.
* A town of Tuckellan.
* Capital of Tuckellan, long. 167° lat. 42.
* The lesser Yuldaz.
* The greater Yuldaz, mention'd in the foregoing chapter.
pleasures. All the plain was cover'd with tents, chap-3
and pavilions, and the ground on which the imperial tent was fix'd, with carpets of brocades with flowers of gold; in the tent was place'd a throne encircled with jewels of inestimable value; on which the emperor being sit, with the scepter in his hand, and the crown on his head, he distributed robes of honor, and belts adorned with precious stones, to the princes, Emirs, Chiriffs, and all the lords and officers of his army; he also honor'd with his favors the generals and captains of his troops, as a recompence for their fatigues, and in joy of his victories. But the pleasure which the brave warriors received, when Timur applauded their actions, was inexpressibly great; in this charming retreat he sent 'em in cups of gold the most delicious wines by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world.

After they had pass'd some days in this joyful manner, they decamp'd from this delightful place; and Timur leaving the Emir Gehan Chah with his baggage, departed on Sunday the fifteenth of Shawal 797, which answers to the year of the serpent; and made such expedition, that he arriv'd the seventh of Ramadan at Samarcand, that is to say, in twenty two days; tho' from Yodisz to this capital of Timbucto is generally accounted two months journey by the caravan. He render'd to the inhabitants of this great city, by his happy arrival, and the news of his victories, that joy which his absence had deprived 'em of. The ladies, the children of the queens, the princes of the blood, and the officers of the city, testify'd their pleasure by the quantity of gold and precious stones, which they sprinkled over his head, the magnificence of the public feasts, and the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

presents which they had the honor to make him; they adorned the city, and rendered it so splendid that it seemed as if the season was turned into spring.

When winter was come, Timur went to Bocara, and passed that season at Gheulserheti, where he ordered several little houses to be built in form of a dome for the lords and ladies of his court. And as there were here several fine ponds, in which were a vast number of all sorts of birds, and particularly swans, he resolved to diversify himself with fowling. He encamped on the banks, and the officers built three boats, on which they entered these ponds, and with great cries and the noise of drums and kettle-drums, they stirred the birds, and constrained 'em to fly; and while they passed from one pond to another, the fowlers cried out to encourage 'em, but they could not silence the furious assault of the merciless Togrul, which is the strongest and most cunning of all the birds of prey; the drums likewise made 'em fearful, so that in a short time they caught 'em in vast numbers. These birds are here in so great plenty, that the author of the Mogul annals, call'd Gengan-gucha, writes, that the princes Zagatal and Oc- tar, sons of the great Gengiz Can, passed a whole winter in this sport in this country, from whence they sent every week fifty camels laden with swans, to be distributed in the general camp, which was without Samarqand: and this distribution of the birds is call'd by the Tartars Chiriga. But no other author makes mention of this particular custom. During the winter, Soliman Cihah was elevated to the highest degree of fortune, and was particular-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. 7.

ly favor'd by Timur, who gave him the illustrious princess Sultan Badr Begam," in marriage, for whom he had banquets prepar'd, and the most magnificent presents.

After the Mirza Miran Chah had finish'd, according to the emperor's intentions, the affairs for which he was sent into Corallana, he began his march to return to court: the Emir and other lords went to meet him with great ceremony, and he paid his respects to Timur in his winter-quarters at Bocara. He was very handsomely receiv'd, Timur tenderly embrac'd him, and having kiss'd his face, he entertain'd him, and enquir'd concerning all the circumstances of his journey. The Mirza entirely satisfy'd him in his answers, having kiss'd the earth, and made supplications to God, according to custom, he offer'd his presents, which very much pleas'd Timur, who applaud'd him in every thing, and order'd him to lie down in a rank worthy of his grandeur. The joy at his arrival was universal, because it was apprehended that this prince added fresh glory to religion and the state.

The emperor was desirous that during this winter the young Mirza Aboubeere, son of Mirza Miran Chah, shou'd be betroth'd to the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. The princess Canzade prepar'd the marriage-feast. But as there is no happiness without a mixture of sorrow, and 'tis the divine appointment that we shou'd weep in the midst of joy, the illustrious lady Canzade Cazoun, wife of Timur's father, pass'd from this transitory world to eternity. Timur shew'd much affliction at the loss

1 Widow of Mirze, and daughter of Timur.
of this venerable lady, prepar'd funeral-banquets, and gave much alms to the poor, the lame and the orphans. The body of the prince was carry'd to the town of Keck, where it was inter'd.

After winter, Timur departed for Samarcand with all his court, hunted in his march; and having pass'd by Carchi, went to encamp at Akiar in the agreeable meadow of Keck, on the bank of the river of Cochea. The ground on which the royal tent was prepar'd was cover'd with brocade, as was all the field with standards and umbrellas.

C H A P. VIII

The Conquest, or diet, held by Timur's order.

A s the valor of Timur, and the power of the Turks *, especially of the soldiers of Zagatui, was now arriv'd to a very high pitch; so they were not only independent and sovereign, but even made all the other people from the east of Asia, to the west of that part of the world, to tremble; and by the large booty the soldiers had gain'd in the several campaigns, they were become so rich, that the officers, to maintain their own power, seem'd to employ themselves only in suing only the protection of those princes.

* A river which runs into the Tous, which discharges it into the Gilan.

* The author here calls the Zagatui soldiers Turks, as in other places he gives them the name of Moguls.
who they suppos'd might one day be their matters. Timur therefore thought it advisable to enlarge the regiments, and by that means augment the expences of the commanders, and diminish their riches, which might seduce 'em from their obedience. In the year 793, which An. Dom. answers to that of the horse, he sent orders to all parts of his dominions for holding the Con-

oultai at Akiar, where he was encamp'd.

All the Emirs and generals of the army, the chiefs of the Tartars, and Huzares, the consuls and captains of ten men, as also the governors of the provinces, came to the solemn banquet, which was usually made in that assembly; the ceremonys whereof were obser'd with so much prudence and regularity, that it seem'd as if they were once again in the times of Fer-don or Afrasiab. When the order for augmenting the regiments of the army was signify'd, all the commanders fell down, and kiss'd the earth, in token of obedience; they agreed to every thing contain'd in the order of their so-vreign, and the whole was regulated according to his pleasure; they all gave it under their hands, that they would bring to the general rendezvous the number of troops they were tax'd at. The Tavacheis, who took their subscription, were the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Gehancha Jacou, and the Emir Chamfeddin Abbas. At the dissolution of this numerous as-

semble there was another magnificent feast made

* An ancient king of the Persians about the time of the deluge.

* An ancient king of the Tartars or Scythians.

In their times were made feasts wherein fifty thousand men were hospitably entertain'd. See the History of Chafe Name, or of the kings of Persia, by Ferdhousy.
The History of Timur-Bec.

Book III. by Timur's order, the expenses of which were prodigious great. The princesses and ladies were all adorned with the richest jewels; the earth was cover'd with carpets of gold, China brocades, and embroider'd pieces of work enrich'd with pearls, rubys, and other precious stones; the cups, which were presented by the most beautiful women in the world, were of pure rock-crystal, work'd with all the delicacy and fineness which can be expected from the skill and industry of the most ingenious artists of that age. Timur laid hold on this occasion, where the joy was so general, to give in marriage the princess Sevrinde Coddue Aga, daughter of Chiraj Bei Aga, who was exceedingly handsome and much beloved by him, to the Mirza Omar Cheik his grandson: and after the solemnity of the nuptials was over, the Mirza Miran Chah was order'd to return into Coraffia, and the Mirza Omar Cheik to Andecan, as the Emirs and governors were to their respective governments and hords. The emperor also departed home, and some days after came down to the meadow of Ilgazigage, situate without the town of Samarcand, after having put the affairs of his empire in all necessary order.

CHAP. IX.

Timur finds his troops into the country of the Getes.

At the beginning of the same year the emperor sent into the country of the Getes the Emirs Saliman Chah, Godadad Huseini, Chamfeddin Abbass, and his brother the Emir Otsman
The history of Timur-Bec.

Olman, and among the colonels of the regiments and the officers of the household, he sent Saddictaban, Sultan Sendger, the Emir Hadji Seifeddin, Hasslan Jandar, Tibe Couthin, Ali Coja, Toushel Brourchi, and Nufret Comari, who commanded twenty thousand horse. As soon as they had crossed the Sihon at Tachkent, they marched to Illighout, where they met the Emir Malich Aperdi and his son Beikech, with Badir and Sadir, Turkomans, at the head of five thousand brave men who came from Andecan from Mirza Omar Cheikh, and joined our army. When they arrived at Gheneotpa, they rested some days to inform themselves of the state of the enemy; they took the road of the mountain Arjatou, met many of the enemy, of whom they slew several, and took others prisoners; they carried away their wives and children, pillaged their goods, and destroyed the country. Thus they went through all the provinces of the Getes, and advanced as far as Almaleogh, where having swam over the river Abole, they arrived at Caratal, a herd of Ancatours; there they learnt that Olajziz Bouga Montcheh Cachi, of the family of the Couthins, who went before them at the head of four hundred horse to gain intelligence, had met Camareddin in a hunting-country, that our men had been wounded, and that the greatest part of the soldiers on each side were killed on the spot. Upon this news the Emirs sent Hasslan Jandar, Malich and Beikech, to inform themselves more truly of this event. These captains, with prudence and va-

---

* A lake near Bokor in Gete. long. 100. lat. 43.
* A hill in Gete. long. 104. lat. 41. 27.
* A mountain of Gete near Almaleogh. long. 107. lat. 42.
* A river which discharges it fell into the lake.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. They were well known, immediately departed, and arriving at the field of battle, saw a great many dead on the earth; and among 'em one of our men of the band of Malingon, in whom there remain'd a little life, he having eat nothing but herbs for forty days: they comforted him, and brought him to the Emirs. He affirm'd 'em that in this place they had fought Camareddin, that there were many soldiers lain on both sides, and that ours fled after having been sufficiently maud'd, and that Camareddin march'd towards the fields of Itchna Bouchna. The Emirs immediately departed in search of him, and having pass'd by Itchna Bouchna, they arriv'd at Onker Keptadgi, where they left their baggage, and departed thence post; and when they were arriv'd on the banks of the river Irtich, they learnt that Camareddin had cross'd it, and was gone towards Tadamis, into the woods where fables and ermines are said to be found: they saw the rafts and boats the enemy had built to cross the water. The Emirs staid some days at this place, and cross'd the river, to engrave their arms and red characters with fire on the pine-trees of these woods; which they did, that succeeding ages might see the marks of the arrival of the army of Timur on the trees of the forrests of his enemies, and as an assurance of their conquests beyond the river Irtich.

But as there were six months past since they came into these deserts, where they wanted provisions, and most of 'em liv'd on what they got in hunting, and on wild roots; and as the air became extremely cold, they resolv'd to return,

---

* A town of Turkestan, long. 109. lat. 47.
* A town of Turkestan, long. 107. lat. 49.
* A town of Tartsy, long. 127. lat. 60.
The history of Timur-Bek, which they did by Altoum Causarke1, where Chap. X. there is a road made on the banks of the great lake call’d Etrac Gheul2, and making great haste, they happily arriv’d at Samarcand, where they had the honor to kill the imperial carpet.

CHAP. X.

Timur marches into the desert of Capelac.

During the autumn of the same year Ann. Dom. 1392, Timur took up a resolution to make war in person in Capelac; for this purpose he regulated his troops, turn’d all his foot soldiers into cavalry, equip’d ’em with arms, and provided ’em money and every thing necessary. He departed from Samarcand at the head of his army; and having caus’d a bridge to be built over the Sihon at Cogende, he crost this river with design to pass the winter at Tachkunt, between Barisn and Tehinias.

In the mean while his devotion prompted him to visit the tomb of Cheik Mallahe, where they say many miracles are perform’d. Timur knowing this visit was due from him, not only on a religious but even on a political account, in that it would further the accomplishment of his designs. He came to Cogende for that purpose, which he did with the most extraordinary devotion, distributing among the poor ten thousand Dinars Copegin3: and at length he went to Tachkunt,

1 A town on the bank of the great lake of Turkestan.
2 Great lake in Turkestan on the frontier of Mogulistan.
3 The Dinars Copegin are ducats of gold, would seven livres, ten sold of French money.

where
Book III.

where he lay dangerously sick for the space of forty days; during which time the Emirs and great lords were in the utmost confusion. This prince was in a manner the soul of the world; and the fear of losing him made many persons tremble. In short, the people believed that his word would no longer be able to protect the weak, and keep the powerful within bounds; that the security of families would soon be lost, houses plunder'd, and the cloysiers broke open, wherein true chastity is preserved. Whereupon every one addressed themselves to God by prayer, and the vows made for his health were so ardent and efficacious, that the Almighty restored him, because it was absolutely necessary for the public weal. This good news caus'd every one to rejoice; and they render'd solemn and public praises to God for the recovery of the emperor's health.

When Timur had recover'd his strength, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the head of the troops of Corassia, and paid his respects. The emperor review'd his army and put it in order; he made presents to the generals and other Emirs, and distributed among the soldiers all the silver mony which was in the treasury; which distribution the Turkes call Olulga, as the distribution of the birds taken in the chase is call'd Chiriaga. He also gave horses, arms and clothes to those who wanted 'em, and assign'd guides to the several generals.

The guides of the body of the army in which the imperial standard was list, were Temour Codwuc Aglen, son of Temour Malee Can of Capchac, Codwuc Aglen, also prince of Capchac, and Aideeoh Uzbek.

On thursday the twelfth of the month Sefer, in the year of the Hegira 793, the fun being then
then in the eighth degree of Aquarius, Timur Chapao departed from Tachkent with his court, and left Mirza Pir Mehomet Gehanghir, and Mirza Charoe, to govern the empire of Zagarai in his absence, and gave them for lieutenants the Emira Lal and Melkes. Timur sent away all the ladies, except his favorite Sultanees, Tchulpan Mule Aga, daughter of Hadji Bei of Gote; who in this journey had the honor of privately conversing with the emperor. As soon as the imperial standard began its march, the Emirs of the Tatars and Herzies, and the colonels of the regiments, departed at the sound of the trumpets, and the court came to Cara Suman.

At this time ambassadors came from Tocat-mich Can; they were conducted with all the usual honors and ceremonies, by the Emirs in the highest stations. The great snows and rains oblig'd the court to stay some days at Cara Suman. Timur order'd that the ambassadors should be brought to him with freedom, and should enter in at the great gate of the imperial tent. As soon as this permission was granted, they ran with the utmost speed, touched the ground with their head, in token of their respect to the emperor; and they said nothing but the most respectful compliments, by which they begg'd pardon for their matter, and ador'd the thousand praises to Timur. At length they pre-

---

1 Hadji Bei treasurer, prince of the Getes.
2 A town of Capchar, long. 93° lat. 44° 55.
3 The custom at the entry of ambassadors into the Tarste emperor, is this: as soon as the gate of the imperial pavilion is open, and a sign made to advance, they run to call themselves at the feet of the throne.
Book III. sent to him a Chonscar, and nine horses of surprizing-swiftness. He indeed took the Chonscar in his hand; but he gave the ambassadors no other marks of a good reception or compli- 

nence, tho it was the custom of this great prince to care for all ambassadors. Tho' who perceive'd this difference of reception, said all they could to engage Timur to pardon Tocarmich. To conclude their audience, they presented also, thro' the intercession of the great Emirs, the letter of Tocarmich Can, which contain'd the following words.

"Your majesty has always acted the part of "a father towards me; you have always nour- "ished and brought me up as your son, and the "favor I have receiv'd from you are innume- "rable. If my wicked proceedings and the "war I have carry'd on by the instigation of "some malicious persons, which has been my "misfortune, and of which I repent and am "albin'd, can once more find pardon from the "clemency of my lord, this will be an addi- "tion to the obligations I owe to him; this "goodness will make me consider what I am, "and hereafter, far from acting contrary to "the treaties made with his majesty, I will do "every thing which shall please him in token of "my respect and thankfulness: in short, I will "be a submissive and obedient servant to his "orders."

* A sort of bird of prey presented to the kings, adorn'd with several precious stones; which is a mark of homage; and the Muscovites, as well as the Grin Tatars, are oblig'd by their old treaty with the Ottomans, to send one every year adorn'd with a certain number of diamonds, to the part of the grand fezunar of the Ottomans.
Timur answer'd the ambassadors in these terms: "When your master Tucumich was wounded and li'l us'd by his enemies, and came for refuge to us, every one knew that I rank'd him among my children, and us'd him kindly. At length looking upon his interest as my own, I made war on Orouns Can, and march'd my troops against him; which was the reason that great part of my cavalry, and an infinite number of equipages and riches entirely perish'd by reason of the cold which this winter was extremely violent. Notwithstanding this misfortune, I endeavor'd to maintain and defend him against every one; I separated his country and subjects from those of Orouns Can, and put 'em into his hands: at length I render'd him so powerful, that he was crown'd emperor of Capchao, and ascended the throne of Touchi. Truly I confess that this good fortune comes from God, but I know at the same time I have been the instrument of it: and the friendship I had for him to-day'd me to call him son; while he call'd me father. When he saw himself powerful, and fortune had begun to be favorable to him, he forgot the obligations he ow'd me; and without thinking in what manner a son ought to behave towards a father, he took the opportunity, while I was gone into Persia, and was employ'd in the conquests of the kingdoms of the Persians and Medes, to betray me and commit acts of hostility against me. He hath sent his troops to ruin the places near my kingdom. I seem'd to take notice of it, that he might consider with himself, be ashamed of his action, and for the future abtain from the like extravagances. But he was so drunk with his ambition,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

tion, that not distinguishing good from evil,
he hath since sent another great army against me, the vanguard of which, composed of a considerable body of horse, is entered into my country. It is true, as soon as we put ourselves in a readiness to march against this vanguard, they fled before they could perceive the joint our horsemen made: and now Tocarmich, having advice of our march, begs pardon, because he knows no other way to save himself from the punishment he deserves.

But since we have seen him so often violate his oaths, and treaties, it would be imprudence to rely on his promises. We will execute, with the assistance of God, the resolution we have taken, and the design for which we have levied our army, that all the world may see that God punishes the ingrateful. In the mean while, whatever reason we have for making war, and exterminating him; if he professedly tells the truth, and sincerely desires peace, he must send to meet us Ali, that he may negotiate it with our great Emirs, and we will do whatever is consistent with our dignity, and the present conjuncture.

Timur then order'd the ambassadors to be regal'd, and gave them veils of gold finis: he settled their expences, and commanded that they should be handsomely treated, but that his officers shou'd have an eye upon their actions.

The sixth day of the month of Rebyuleel, Timur held a council with the princes his sons and the great Emirs; and it was resolved that the ambassadors of Tocarmich shou'd follow the
army, which at length march'd to the conquest of the empire of Touch; they pass'd by Yafi, Cara-choe, and Saharan; and having gone a long way, and encamp'd and decamp'd for three weeks in the vall plains of Capchac, the horses were so fatigued with the great way they had gone, and the scarcity of water, that they were reduced to extremity. At length on the first day of the month of Jumazynulevel the army arriv'd at Sarec Ouzan, where the horses quench'd their thirst, and the soldiers return'd thanks to God; they employ'd some days in crossing the river, because the waters were very high; but having found an easy passage, they decamp'd, and swam over the river. During this night two servants of Aldecoc Uzbek fled, and pass'd the defart to find Tocatmich Can; they purloin'd 'em, but were not able to overtake 'em. The army continu'd its march in the great defart, and encamp'd in places where there were wells, that they might not want water.

The twenty-first of the month Jumazynulevel, they came to a mountain nam'd Coutchec Toc; from thence in two nights and one day they went to encamp at Oolone Toc, where Timur would have the pleasure of seeing this great defart of Capchac: he ascended a mountain, and saw with admiration those vast plains, which for the space they took up, and their verdure, resembled the sea. He liad there all the day, and order'd the soldiers to bring flones to that place, where he caus'd a very high obelisk to be erected; and skilful engravers engrav'd on it the date of the year.

---

* A town of Capchac between Yanghaiim and Saharan.
* Mountains in Capchac, between the rivers Arach and Husain.
and day on which Timur came there at the head of his army, that this structure might remain as a lasting monument to posterity. The troops decamp'd, and while they march'd follow'd the chase; they arriv'd at the banks of the river Ilanjonc; where they encamp'd; and when they had crossed the river, they continued their march, and in eight days arriv'd at Ana-
cargou *. And as it was four months since they came from Taiekuntt, the army wanted victuals; and what was more strange, in whatsoever part of the desert they march'd, tho' they had gone six or seven months journey, they met not a single man, nor any cultivated land. Victuals were extremely dear and scarce in the camp; a sheep was sold for a hundred Dinars Copeghli, and a Man * of wheat of good weight, weighing six royal Mans, was worth near a hundred Dinars Copeghli; and moreover it was very difficult to get them for mony. Timur or-
der'd his guards, as also all the Emirs of the Tonans, the colonels of thousands, the centurions and decurions, to make proclamation that no one on pain of death thou'd bake in the camp either bread, pa'lye-work, mutton, pies, tarts, or any thing proper for boiling; but that every one should be contented with Boula-maja *, which is commonly bakk'd. The Emirs themselves began to live in this manner, for an example to others; infomuch that a Man of wheat of Embar weight, equal to eight royal Mans, with a few herbs added, wou'd make sixty dishes of Bou-

* A river which runs into the Tic in Capellae.
* A hord in Capellae, long. rec. lat. a.
* A Man weighs a pound and a half French weight.
* Meat breasted and minced, with a white sauce, like a fritaty of chickens.
The history of Timur-Bec.

lamsa, and each soldier had a dish allow'd Chap. to him every day. But as at length they were not in a condition to allow so much, many soldiers were depriv'd of it, and were oblig'd to hunt cautiously in this vast desert, and to live upon only some eggs of birds and certain animals, with what herbs they found fit to eat, of which they could scarcely find enough to sustain life. Timur order'd a general hunting on Sunday, the first of Jamayulaker; the Tavatchis gave orders to the Emirs of the right and left wing of the army to send out soldiers to form the Gerke; so they surrounded a great tract of land, wherein they sh'd an infinite number of beasts and birds; and two days after made a slaughter of the beasts, which is call'd Cemarmichi.

Timur rode on horseback in all parts of the circle, and flew a great number of fawns, antelopes, deer, and roe-bucks, till his dinner-time, which was two hours and a half before noon; and then he return'd to his tent; at length the soldiers fell upon the game, and flew so many fags, deer, and other beasts, that abundance of victuals was brought to the camp; which caus'd great joy after the sad scarcity they had suffer'd. They pick'd out the fat beasts, and left the lean. Among this game they found a sort of fags larger than buffalos, which surpriz'd 'em, they having never seen the like before; these animals are call'd Candagai by the Mogols, and Baken by the inhabitants of Capchac; they flew a great many of 'em, and the army subsist'd a long time on their flesh.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

CHAP. XI.

Timur reviews his troops.

After this hunting was finished, Timur was willing to take an exact view of his troops; he ordered them to be placed by Toman and squadrums, and that every soldier should have his lance, war-club, poniard, and feathered buckler, and that their horses should be covered with tiger skins; he also took care that each of 'em should have a tabar on his left side, and a half-sabre on his right. Timur mounted his horse cloth'd in his royal robes; he had on his head the crown of gold enrich'd with rubies, and held in his hand a golden mace care'd at top like an ox's head. In this state he began to march by the left wing, which he found in good order; he paused before the first rank compos'd of the Toman of Birdi Bei. This general leaped off his horse, and took notice to Timur of the looks, stature, armor, and address of his soldiers; he fell on his knees holding his horse's bridle, kiss'd the earth, and made supplications for Timur; (for the custom of reviews is, that at that time every commander should make supplication for the emperor, and speak an oration on him even in his presence.) "Let all the world, said he, be obedient to Timur; our heads and our lives, as fidelity and our duty obliges us, shall always be ready to be sacrific'd at the feet of the horse of his majesty," Timur answer'd, and applauded the Bei, wishing that thro the valor of this brave man and of those who are like him, the empire might continue always flourishing. This prince
The history of Timur-Bec.

said at the Toman of Birdi Bet, and examin'd all the companies belonging to it: he then rode towards the Toman of Codadad Hufteini, which he found compleat and well-equipp'd, the soldiers in their posts, and the ranks perfectly guarded. This Emir, as well as the first, on his knees besought Timur to observe the order of the soldiers of his Toman, as also their stature and equipage, and made a discourse in praise of his majesty, and a prayer for his prosperity. Timur answer'd him with the same complaisance as he us'd to the other; he recompis'd his friendship, and commended him for the good order in which he saw his Toman. Cheik Temour, son of Akit-mur Behader, at the head of the Huzares of the lord of Sendar, came next in order of battel; these had for their arms, bows, arrows, and nets to catch men, besides a feynctar and club. Cheik Temour also made supplication on his knees, and paid his respects. Timur approv'd of his conduct, return'd him thanks, and march'd on farther. He came to the body of the army of Andecan, commanded by the Mirza Omar Cheik, all whose enligus were display'd; he had there a long time, because this body was more numerous than the others. The Mirza hasten'd to pay his devoirs and to the emperor, according to the maxims of war; which was highly fuitable to the son of so great a monarch. He fell on his knees, as the rest had done, and made his vows for the prosperity of his majesty: he congratulated him on his conquests, which extended from the frontiers of China to the Caspian gates. The emperor was very well pleas'd with the body of the army commanded by the Mirza his son, prais'd him exceedingly, and with a great deal of goodnesse said, "I pray God that fortune be at your dispoal, and always give you
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. "you the advantage over your enemies." Timur overjoy'd, advanced towards the regiment of Maimond Can; and at length came to the Toman of the Emir Soliman Chah: these two generals spake as usual, and gave presents to the emperor, who cared for and prais'd 'em for the good order of their regiments. He at length saw the squadron of the young prince Mehemet Sultan Behader his grandson, examined the ranks of his soldiers with attention, and laid there a long time. This young Mirza made his submissions, as the others had done, prais'd the emperor his grandfather, offering vows for his prosperity, which were well receiv'd, and Timur fill'd of joy laid to him, "My very dear and worthy son, my family being enlighten'd with such a lamp as you, can never fail of continuing in brightness and splendor."

At length the emperor examined the regiment of the guards, which made up the main body; all the Emirs and captains of which made their submissions and vows, as also the Mirza Miran Chah who commanded the right wing of the army: for after Timur had view'd the Hazares and Tomans, the Emirs and great generals who commanded 'em, as Mehemet Sultan Chah, the Emir Hadi Seleddin, the Emir Gehanches Lahou, and several others, sang'd their Tomans by Hazares and companies, and put 'em in order of barrel neatly equipt. When Timur had pass'd by one regiment, the commanders fell on their knees, and follow'd him in that posture; and leading their horses by their bridles, they made intercession for his health, and speeches in his praise, full of marks of their good-will and sincerity.

This great prince encourag'd 'em, and distinguisht 'em by applause suitable to the order he observ'd.
observed their soldiers in. In short, the review continued two days from morning till evening; and the emperor found that this numerous army was in the condition resolved on at the Courou-tai or diet, which was held at Akbar in the meadow of Kech, and which the Emirs had promise'd in writing. At length they beat the kettle-drums, made the great cry Subroon a's at the beginning of a fight, and got off their horses, intimating that every one, seeing the exact order of this great army, could not sufficiently admire the power, valor, and good conduct of the invincible Timur.

CHAPTER XII.

Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the scouts.

When Timur had finished this review, and received the compliments of all the generals of the army, after he had animated their courage by his speeches, he resolved to send a general to command the body of troops called Mangalai in the Mogol language. The young resolute Mirza Mehemet Sultan fell on his knees, and besought his father to honor him with that employ. The emperor approved the zeal he shew'd at so tender an age; and granted his request; and having caress'd him, gave him the command of the body of the scouts, letting him know that by reason of the employ he had in charge, the generals and soldiers of the army re-

* The vanguard of the army.

Aa 4 pos'd
pos'd their confidence in him, and that he had need of great presence of mind, a strong constitution, and perfect activity to acquit himself worthy of an employ which was the principal part of war, and on which the security of the army entirely depended. The astrologers having fix'd the hour and moment of his departure, which was on the twenty-fourth of April, this Mirza immediately put himself at the head of the troops, and the great Emirs were order'd to accompany him every where. They had yet no news of the enemy; but the Mirza, after two days march with the Emirs, found a kind of beaten road, and came to the place where they had encamped, and made fires in five or six places, which were not yet entirely extinguish'd. They immediately sent advice of it to Timur, who order'd expert guides to find out which way those who had lighted those fires were gone: he always recommended to 'em to gain information of the enemy's army, to keep a strict guard, and to neglect nothing, but use all necessary precautions to discover the enemy, and to be well appr'd of every thing. The Mirza and the Emirs having receiv'd these orders, immediately obey'd, and march'd day and night, greatly fatigued, to inform themselves of what they could: they came to the river of Toupal, and having crossed it, the scouts brought advice that they had seen fire in seventy places, and that they had fought every where, but had not found one person. They brought word of it to Timur, who immediately decamp'd, and march'd with extreme diligence. When he was arriv'd at the river of Toupal, he found the passage destroy'd

* A river which runs into the Tis in Capchau.
The history of Timur-Bec.

by the scouts, and order'd the soldiers to get faggots and great pieces of wood to mend it; and at length he cross'd the river with all his army, and join'd the former body.

All those who were sent to gain intelligence, wander'd like vagabonds in this vast desert, without seeing one footstep, or learning any news of the enemy. Timur order'd the Cheik Daoud a Turcoman to come before him, and send him with a convoy to gain intelligence. He was a man of courage and experience, who had pass'd part of his life in these deserts, and there suffer'd extreme fatigues, to smith several important affairs, and had endure'd the cold and heat of seasons. The Cheik departed according to these orders, and after two days and two nights march, discover'd some hamlets of little consequence; he went with his guard behind a hill, and on the next morning they perceiv'd a horseman who came out of these hamlets on some particular business; they waited till he had pass'd 'em. Then they fell upon him, took him, and carry'd him to Timur. This prince treated him handsomely, and made the Cheik Daoud several presents, and among the rest a gold scarf to hold a quiver, and a rich and curious vest. He demanded of the prisoner news of Tocatmich Can; who answer'd, that it was a month since he and his comrades came out of their own country to dwell in that place, but that they heard no news of the grand Can, tho' ten cavaliers in armor, unknown to them, came six days ago to 'em, and retir'd to a wood at a small distance from these hamlets. Timur order'd Aid Coja to go with sixty men to make the inhabitants of these hamlets decamp, and bring 'em to court, which he did. Comari Yeaoul was at length sent with twenty horse, to bring away by force.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. force the ten men who were in the wood. He got thither, and fought 'em; some were slain, and the others taken and brought to Timur, who learnt from their mouths certain news of Tocatmich Can, on which the army decamp'd.

May 11.

After having march'd many days, and pass'd several lakes and rivers, they arriv'd the 24th of January. Yet on the bank of the river of Tic.*

The guide said there were three passages over this river, one call'd Ayguher Yali, another Boua Gherchit, and the third, which was the least of all, Tchupma Gherchit. Timur did not judge it convenient to march by these passages, lest the enemy should lie there in ambush; but he was willing that at the place they were in, they should all, both horse and foot, swim over the river: yet this could not be done in less than two days, because the army was so numerous. Six days after they arriv'd at the river Semmoun;* and the scouts heard the cry of the enemy, of which they immediately gave advice to the emperor: and even the Mirza Mecemer Sultan seiz'd one of the enemy, whom he brought to his father, who inform'd himself of what pass'd in the army of Tocatmich. This man told him that a great many of the hordes were come to that place; but that having advice of Timur's march, they had decamp'd and were return'd, as soon as they knew the place where their enemies were. Timur forbid any one stirring from his regiment, order'd that no fire should be made during the night, and cause'd his army to depart when he had rang'd 'em in order.

* A river of Capulia, which runs into the Caspian Sea, long. 93. lat. 47.
* Which afterwards fell into the Tic.
of battle. They march'd on the sound of in-Chap. 12:
fragments of warlike music, and when this vast multitude began to move, it resembled the troubled ocean. The first day of the moon of Regeb, May 17, the army arriving at the river of Ayic, Timur stopped at the foot of a bridge, and sent caun'd the vanguard to cross over, and then the main body, (for the right and left wings swam over the river) and then he passed the bridge, and continued his march. In the mean while, our scouts took three of the enemies, and brought 'em to Timur, who question'd 'em concerning the state of their army. They said that Tocatmich Can having no news of the Army of Zagaria, the two servants of Aidecou who fled from the camp, came to seek him, and informed him of the approach of an army more numerous than the lands of the desert, or the leaves of trees, with Timur at the head of it; that when Tocatmich heard this news, he was enraged to a very great degree, and said he would raise two armies; and at the same time he sent orders into all the provinces to assemble the troops, and went to encamp himself at Kera Chent, from whence he sent out other orders to levy soldiers. Tocatmich imagin'd that when Timur should arrive at the river of Tic, he would cross it by the ordinary passages; wherefore he lay in ambush in that passage to surprise him; but the emperor being forewarned of the designs of Tocatmich, swam over the river at another place, and came near him without danger. Whatever was the cause, this prince understanding the manner of

* Aric or Jace, a river which runs into the Caspian sea.
* A lake in Negara in Caphtar, between the Volga and the Jace.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. the actions of Tocaimich Can, laid in that place till all his troops were come up to him: he rang'd the two wings in order, and commanded they should all have ready their great and little bucklers; that they should draw lines round the camp, and make divisions of it, that the regiments might dig ditches round 'em. This order was executed; every one work'd, and us'd all imaginable precaution, and they pass'd the night in the same place. The next day the army decamp'd, and continu'd its march, and every night obli'd the same rules. Timur order'd all the Emirs to come before him from the commanders of Tomans to the centurions, he spoke to 'em with a great deal of civility, to excite their courage, honor'd 'em with rich vols, and gave them as well as their soldiers particular suits of armor, as also iron clubs, iron corletts for their horses, coats of mail, tabrets, bows and arrows; and at length he march'd with design to give battle. They met in their way with many loaves and marshes, which they pass'd with extreme fatigue; after which they encamp'd to rest themselves.

In the mean while the scouts brought advice that three regiments of the enemy appeared; there then came further advice, that behind 'em were a great body of soldiers. Timur mounted his horse, and advance'd against 'em; he caused his army to march in order of battle, and then one of our scouts brought a soldier of the enemy whom he had taken; they inquir'd of him concerning every thing they were desirous of knowing, and then put him to death. Altho they had seen some regiments of the enemy, yet the army did not approach, and as those regiments disassembled, Timur sent Sevindighe Behader and Argoun Chah to gain intelligence,
The history of Timur-Bec.

and thoroughly to examine into the condition of Chapter 2 of this army. Thos. Emirs advanced, and learnt that the regiments which they'd themselves were returned; they fought after 'em without being able to meet 'em, of which they gave advice to Timur, who sent Mobacher with orders not to return without certain news of the enemy. Mobacher departed with a good number of the most valiant horse of the army, and made great haste; he arrived at a wood, from whence at some distance he perceived a smoke; and as he observed attentively, he heard voices, and immediately sent some men to learn from whence they came; who brought him word, that they were some of the enemy, of whom there was a troop in those quarters. He thereupon prepared for battle, and went to fall upon 'em; these men seeing there was no other remedy than fighting, fled their ground to save their lives; thus the fight began, and the war which seem'd asleep revived again; they resisted some time, but at length ours had the advantage, and cunn'd the enemy, of whom they took forty, who were brought, granting their teeth, to the foot of the imperial throne. Timur care'd Mobacher, and gave gifts to those who had accompanied him; he inform'd himself from the prisoners of the condition of Tolatmich Can. They told him he had caus'd it to be proclaim'd every where, that the army should assemble at Kere Ghoul; that in consequence of that order they went there, and found no one, but knew not the reason why they fail'd of coming to the rendezvous; that they wander'd as vagabonds in the woods and deserts, while they had the misfortune to meet Mobacher, and be taken prisoners. After they had learnt from 'em what they most desir'd, they were put to death.
by Timur's order. At length they brought to him the son of the prince of Memac, who had been wounded; he fell on his knees, and said that he was upon his road to Serai to meet the Caravans, but that he did not find him in the rendezvous, and that he could give no other account. Timur sent Gjalal, son of Emir Hamid, with Nadila Feran, Mouli, Sainte Maure, and other brave men in quality of scouts, with order, that as soon as they should perceive the duff of any of the enemy's troops, they should take care, if the others were the greatest number, to fly themselves and immediately return as running away, by that means to deceive 'em and engage 'em nearer, and that they should not fail to give immediate notice of all that should happen. The Emir Gjalal and the others march'd according to these orders, crossed the marshes and rivers, and perceived the duff of the enemy, of whom fifteen horse separated themselves from the rest, and advance'd upon our men. Sainte Maure also advance'd against 'em, spoke to 'em himself, and return'd flying. The Emirs immediately gave notice what had pass'd, by Mouli, who join'd Timur with all expedition, and gave him an account of all they had seen, and of what had pass'd, with the utmost exactness.

A province bordering on that of Serai in Cappadocia.

Capital of Cappadocia on the Volga, long. 82° 44', lat. 42° 30'.
CHAP. XIII.

Battle between the scouts of the two armies. Death of the Emir Aioutmaw, and other famous men.

Timur, having receiv'd this news, order'd the Emir Aioutmaw to follow the scouts, and to bring him more positive advice concerning the situation of the ground on which the enemy's army was posted, and of the number of those who were advanced; and he was particularly enjoined to use great prudence and exact precaution. This Emir hasten'd his departure, crossed the marshes and rivers, and join'd Emir Ghalal Hamid, and the other scouts. From thence he advance'd, and perceived on the top of a hill some horsemen, who seem'd diverting themselves in viewing the fine plains. He sent to 'em a troop of horse, the bravest he had with him; but the others seeing 'em, fled, and our soldiers, upon ascending the hill, perceived on the other side thirty complete companies of horse in armor, rang'd in order of battle in a valley, who watch'd in this ambush to surprise us. Our men stopp'd in this place, and sent advice of it to Aioutmaw, who immediately departed, ascended the hill, and us'd all precautions to view the state of the enemy; but as there was a great number of 'em, he thought it not proper to attack 'em, but imagin'd it better to return without noise, and repel the waters and marshes. He sent back his soldiers, while he remain'd with some horse behind the enemy, who observing the Emir Ai-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Atacmuir had but with few soldiers, and that the waters and marshes which he must craves would hinder the bringing any assistance; they fell on him full speed. This valiant man briskly sustained their attack with unparallel'd resolution: he kept back with his arrows many companies, while he and his companions made a brave resistance, to give time to his soldiers and domestics to pass these rivers and marshes, which himself had also done, if his horse had not been unfortunately shot under him with an arrow; and while he was remounting a second, that was also shot, and immediately died. Then the enemy charg'd the Emir on all sides; but this intrepid person, the on foot, defended himself against the multitude that surrounded him: he would not give way nor cease fighting, till his enemy, who did not know him, cut him in pieces. This general, whose great fame was yet below his merit, had the honor of martyrdom, which is the crown of warriors.

His death was followed by that of Herimole, son of Yadghiar Berlas, an illustrious man, as well for his birth, for he was a relation of Timur, as his merit, being of the most valiant men of that age. The famous Ramadan Cofa, and the celebrated Mehemet Erolat, were also slain in this fight: these were the greatest captains Timur had. On this sad accident, the army of Tocatmich Can was compared to a lamp which is going out, and which, as its last effort, calls a light greater than ordinary in the room it is in. In short, from this time the power of Tocatmich continually diminished, as will be related hereafter.

Timur then arriv'd at the bank of the river, having near his person the Emir Hadgi Seffeddin, and the Emir Gehancha; he got off his horse as well
well as his guards, and crossed the river with them, notwithstanding the arrows of the enemy, which made an extraordinary noise while they flew thro' the air. Our men having crossed the river, fell upon the enemy as lions on their prey: the Scymitar of the invincible Timur spoil'd the precautions and artifices of those foes; they were routed, and constrain'd to fly, leaving on the spot the greatest part of their soldiers. Gelel Hamid was remarkable above others: he attack'd with thirty men three companies of the enemy who stood in his way, whom he exceeding-ly gann'd; and he acquitted himself of this action with so much skill, valor and courage, that he acquir'd all the glory a warrior can expect from the most noble and vigorous enterprise. Nodila also fought like a brave man, and made appear his merit, which he had the happiness of doing in Timur's presence; as also Chah Malek son of Togaimicken, who did not shoot one arrow without wounding or killing him, he aim'd at. Bajazer, who had six fingers on each hand, also on this occasion gave marks of the most heroic valor. And when the troops were retir'd, they surpriz'd three of the enemy, whom they brought to Timur.

Then this prince return'd to his camp, and order'd the brave men to come before him, a list of whom had been drawn up. He highly prais'd 'em; and that potterity might be put in mind of their valor, he not only load'd 'em with favors, but made 'em of the order of the Tercans, and enjoined the Ysafouls 1 to receive 'em whenever they came to the palace, and admit 'em to his

1 Ysafoul and Ghomur signify the same. They are doork-keepers, and have liberty to enter into the chamber and closet of the grand Can.
presence. He also order'd that neither they nor their children shou'd be condemn'd, or even question'd for any crime, except they have committed it nine times.

Timur declar'd that these privileges shou'd be preserv'd to their successors for seven generations. He granted several other favors to the relations of the Emir Aicoutmur, who had the honor of martyrdom, and among the rest to Chah Malek son of Calagigai. He gave him the poets and titles of honor which belong'd to his father, as also the great seal, as well as the seal of the butterfly *.

And as it was near six months since the imperial standard set out, and it always advanced towards the north, the army came to a place so near the pole, that in the evening, before the sun was entirely set, the rays of the morning appeared in the east; and in those places where the sun is in the northern signs, it is not permitted, according to the ordinance of the Mahometan law, that the evening prayer shou'd be made. Timur departed from that place with his standard display'd, and went to encamp on a neighboring mountain; where he laid till next morning, and then decamp'd. Tocatmich Can never expected the arrival of our army; but his scouts appear'd every day to skirmish with us, and surprize us if they found an opportunity: yet as soon as our soldiers oblig'd 'em to give battle, they fled with all speed into the desert.

In the mean while Timur held a council with the princes his sons, and his generals; and as it was there resolv'd on, he order'd the Emir

* A little feel in the stage of a butterfly, which the king of Persia makes use of to this day.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Omar Cheik to put himself at the head of 20,000 horse, and to march with expedition to engage Tocatunich Can, and if possible to secure his person. He named the Emir Sevindje and Sultan Sendger, the Emir Ofman, Isfan Jandar, and some others, to accompany him; and at the same time the 20,000 men departed; and the Mirza made them march in expeditiously, that on the morrow they had advice that the fronts of both parties were met. Timur immediately got ready his army, and imploring God's assistance who had always made him victorious, he was full of fury, if one may so say, and marched to fight the enemy. The air was so dark, the clouds so thick, and the rains so great, that one could not see three paces.

CHAP. XIV.

The army rang'd in order of battle in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which ensued theraupon.

The fifteenth day of the month Regeb 793, which answers to the year of the Monkey, the air clear'd up after six days bad weather. Timur rang'd the army in order of battle; and because the affair was of great consequence, he took his utmost care. He divided the army into seven bodies, which was never before practis'd among his troops; but it was believ'd this was done by inspiration from God, to make Timur victorious, because the number seven is esteem'd sacred and mysterious. But as this knowledg
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. belongs only to those who are acquainted with
the septenary and caballistic numbers, we will
say no more of it. Timur gave the command of
the first body to Sultan Mahomed Gan, which
was to serve for the vanguard; and the Emir
Soliman Chah was his lieutenant general. He
placed the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of
the second, which was more numerous, and
paid for the main body; and this prince had
the most skilful officers to serve under him. The
third, which served as the rear or body of re-
serve, was composed of the regiment of guards,
and twenty companies of soldiers, chosen out of
the bravest of the army, and those who had been
imured to war; and it was commanded by Timur
himself, who kept his post behind the second
body, at a distance from the others, that in the
heat of the battle, if any part of our army
should be overpowered, fresh men might imme-
diately be sent to succour 'em. The fourth body,
which served for a right wing was under the
command of Mirza Miran Chah, who had for
his lieutenant general the prince Mehemet Sul-
tan Chah. He prepared this party of troops for
battle, after having made all the soldiers get
ready their great and little bucklers. The fifth
body, which served for a vanguard to the right
wing, was led by the Emir Hadji Seifeddin,
a person who was usually in the greatest dangers,
and on the most difficult affairs, out of which
he would bring himself with glory and distinc-
tion. The sixth, which consisted of the troops
of Andecatt, composed the left wing of the
army, and had for its leader Mirza Omar Chah.
The seventh body served as a vanguard to the left
wing, which was commanded by Birdi Bef,
son of Sar Bouga, and by Gudadul Huseini,
two Emirs who had on a hundred occasions
given
given marks of the greatest valor, and the most
unblamable conduct.

All the Emirs and soldiers of the Tomans, Hezaires and Sedes, being thus fix'd in their
posts, every one according to his rank; the ca-
valler and infantry march'd in order of battel,
under their respective generals; and the motion
upon the march of this numerous army resembled
the waves of the impetuous sea. Some soldiers
were arm'd with bucklers, swords and arrows;
others had in their hands war-clubs and parti-
zans; others lances and pikes; most of 'em
were cover'd with cuirasses. The princes and
Emirs had coats of mail, or breast-plates of
iron, and all of 'em wore on their heads hel-
mets so neatly polished, that the great number
of 'em dazzled the eyes of the beholders. On the
other hand, they perceive'd the enemy's army,
the soldiers of which were compleatly arm'd.
Tocarmich Can had divided 'em into three bod-
ys according to custom, that is, into a main
body and two wings. All his generals and cap-
tains were princes of the royal blood of Touchi;
and among the rest Tach Temour Aglen, Bihy-
araoc Aglen, Illichim Aglen, Bic Poulad Aglen,
Ali Aglen, Chinta Aglen, and others; as also
Emirs of great esteem, as Ali and Soliman
Sot-Gangorat ¹, Norouz Gangorat, Aézao,
Acbouta, Orochione Cayat ², Aifa Bel eldest
brother of Aidecou, Ajan Bel, Serai, Kulle
Bonga, Yagelbi Behrine ³, Congourbi, and other
great Emirs of Capchac; they rang'd them-
selves in form of a half-moon, and then came in
view.

¹ Gangorat is an illustrious royal family among the Moguls.
² Cayat, a Mogul band.
³ Behrine a Mogul band.
Then Timur, thro' an excess of bravery, and despising Tocarmich, order'd all the cavalry to dismount, and to prepare their tents as if they would encamp; which Tocarmich perceiving, he was surpriz'd at the little regard our men had to his troops. This action made him alter his natures, and he rang'd his army with greater care than he commonly us'd. Thus the two parties being in view of each other, it was observ'd that the army of Capchao surpriz'd ours by some companies. Timur, who confided more in the assistance of heaven than in the multitude of soldiers, and the abundance of arms, equipages and ammunition, got off his horse, and address'd himself to God by prayer, as he always did before a battle. He twice bow'd his head towards the ground, and pray'd to God, who was the distributor of laurels and victories. Having remounted his horse, all the army lift up their hands to heaven, crying out, Allahou Eeber; God is the most great; and displaying their ensigns and standards, they beat their drums, as well as their great and little kettle-drums. They made the great cry call'd Sournoum, to begin the battle at the sound of the terrible trumpet Kerrenti; and it may be said, there never was so great a confusion between heaven and earth. Then the excellent Imam, Seid Berlhe, of the race of Mahomet, who had formerly predicted to Timur his coming to the throne, lift up his hands to heaven, uncover'd his head, and humbling himself before God, besought victory for the emperor; he recited with extraordinary zeal a passage * of the Alcoran to

* This passage of the Alcoran, according to the mahometan Cabalists, is full of a secret and mystic sign.
obtain it; and at length, he took up some dirt, which he slung in the enemy's faces, saying, "Your faces shall be blacken'd thro' the Shame of the defector. "Then he said to Timur, "Go where you please, you shall be victorious."

At the same time the bravest men on both sides began the fight with hal-pikes, swords, and iron-clubs. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin was most active in the service of his prince. He was the first who with sword in hand rush'd violently upon the left wing of the enemy, which was over against him. This wing sometime disputed the victory; but by his good conduct he at length overthrew it, and destroy'd all the measures the enemy had taken. As their soldiers exceeded ours in number, they advance'd to attack the squadron of Hadgi Seifeddin in the rear; but Gehancha Behader, who perceive'd their motion, advance'd towards them with his regiment, which he had detach'd out of the body of Turkish troops. He so furiously fell on 'em with sword and lance, that he constrain'd 'em directly to return. Caliubche Behader attack'd the enemy on the other side, and made 'em retreat with the like precipitancy. The Mirza Miran Chah, who commanded the right wing, at the same time fell upon 'em; and his attack was so successful, that having put the cavalry into confusion, he overthrew whatsoever stood in his way, and routed the enemy's left wing. Oftan Abbas advance'd at the head of his regiment of Casheh, and attack'd three companies of the enemy; but he fell from his horse in the midst of 'em, and had been in great danger if he had not found means to remount. Then he return'd to attack the three companies of skirmishers, whom he put to the rout. Cichik Ali Behader on this occasion perform'd
Book III. form'd exploits of the utmost valor. On the other hand, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan advanced at the head of the main body, and broke through that of the enemy. The Mirza Omar Cheik; at the head of the left wing, also performed whatever could be expected from a skilful general and a valiant soldier, defeating and cutting to pieces all who resisted him. Birdi Beli and Codadad Huseini, so briskly opposed the right wing of the enemy, that they obliged it to give ground and fly. All the Emirs resisted those who opposed them, and the field of battle was cover'd with blood.

Then Tocatmich observed how his troops decreased. He found he could not be long able to withstand the squadrons which Timur commanded in person; for which reason he turned his horse another way. He then attack'd the Mirza Omar Cheik; but finding this prince's troops maintain their ground, he quitted 'em, and attempted to fall on Cheik Temour Behader, who commanded the Hezires of the hord of Selduz. Tocatmich, accompany'd by a great number of the bravest Emirs of his empire, attack'd Cheik Temour with the utmost vigor; and tho the latter, with his lieutenant Tomanich, defended themselves with courage equal to that of Tocatmich, and let fly great showers of arrows upon their enemies; yet the soldiers of Tocatmich, imitating the Fedais' of the Ismaelites, who sacrificed their lives at their prince's order, without fear of death, fought with so much fury, that the brave resistance of our men was so far from disheartening 'em, that it even serv'd to animate 'em. They behaved themselves with

* Those who were formerly called Affianos.
so much courage in every attack, with their Chape.; swords and half-pikes, that they gain'd the advantage of our men, and almost defeated the whole herd of Selchu. They rush'd into the very middle of the squadrons, and were about to pull themselves behind our army, with design to keep their ground and gain the victory. But the Mirza Omar Cheick perceiv'd their motions, and with his cavalry fell upon Tocarmich; every one, holding his buckler before him, fought with resolution. On the other hand, Timur, who was in pursuit of the enemy's main body which he had routed, was told by Techeke Tabachi, that Tocarmich had travers'd our army with many squadrons, and had form'd some ranks behind ours, having resolv'd to maintain his ground. Timur reflecting on this advice, which was confirm'd by an express from Mirza Omar Cheick, desisted from the pursuit of time he had defeated, to make Tocarmich repent of his rashness. He carry'd with him his most valiant captains; but Tocarmich, on sight of the imperial standard, was dispirited, and fled. He was not long in resolv ing what to do; for being seiz'd with fear and despair, he quitted the desire and ambition of reigning, to save his life; so that his reflection only on opposing his benefactor, oblig'd him shamefully to fly. The lords and generals of his army, not being able to make any farther resistance, follow'd their master's example, and their standards were overturn'd. Our soldiers on this defeat were exasperated against the conquer'd, and closely purshing 'em, made a terrible slaughter; so that nothing but confusion was seen in the Mogul troops. All the army of Capchac were dispers'd; and for the space of forty leagues whither they were pursu'd, nothing cou'd be seen.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. seen but rivers of blood, and the plains cover'd with dead bodies.

The rashness and ingratitude of Tocatmich being thus punish'd by the justice of God, and Timur having reveng'd himself on the perniciousness on the king of Gapehac, he got off his horse, and fell upon his face, to return thanks to the King of Kings for his victory, acknowledg-ing that he had obtain'd it thro' his goodness and clemency alone. The children of Timur, the princes of the blood, the generals, and all the great Emirs and officers came to him; they fell on their knees, congratulated him on his success, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon him, according to the custom of the Moguls, in token of their joy, at this important victory. Timur embrac'd the princes his sons, and gave many testimonies of affection to the Emirs and great officers; and praising their brave actions, he made 'em presents worthy of his grandeur. He then chose seven horse out of every ten in the army, to go in pursuit of the fugitives. These brave conquerors departed with expedition to overtake the conquer'd; But as these miserable people having before 'em the Volga, and behind 'em the vengeance of our men, they cou'd not fly far, despairing of passing the river, or of obtaining any quarter. Thus few of the enemy escap'd their fury. The women, children, baggage, and goods of the conquer'd fell into the hands of the conquerors; and it would be difficult to enumerate the quantity of spoils which our soldiers brought away.

We have related that Condge Aglen, Temour Cotluc Aglen, and Aidecon, three princes of the royal blood of Touchi, bore an antient hatred to Tocatmich; that they had fled from him,
him, and seeking refuge at the court of Timur were attach'd to his service both in time of peace and war. This monarch always treated 'em favorably, and with particular marks of distinction. He often made 'em presents of belts, precious stones, robes of honor, and horses of great price. After Tocaumich was vanquish'd, but yet had the good Fortune to save his life from a thousand dangers; these three princes, seeing the empire of Touchi brought so low, and the people dispersed, fell on their knees before Timur, and told him, that if he approv'd of it, they would go in search of the hordes which they formerly commanded, and bring 'em over to his service.

Timur consented to it, and gave 'em letters-patent, that no one might molest 'em, or any who belong'd to 'em; and he exempted their subjects from the right of paying the Gan, which is a kind of tax. These princes, after their orders were given 'em, went in search of their subjects with a great deal of joy. Timur follow'd the troops which he had sent in pursuit of the enemy; and being arriv'd at the bank of the Volga, he encamp'd in the plain of Qurtoonpo, which for its verdure, truth and pure air, surpasses all others. Here the tent and imperial throne was rais'd, to give a magnificent entertainment to the Emirs. All the camp, which consisted of a great number of tents and pavilions, was encompass'd with a curtain of brocade with gold flowers, which appeared the more magnificent, in that this camp was three leagues in length every way, and a man's voice cou'd not be heard from one side to the other.

Temour Cohan Aglel, who was gone in search of his former subjects, found 'em; and
he had no sooner got 'em together, than he had the ambition to think of ascending the throne of Touche. He forgot the obligations he ow'd to Timur; and instead of keeping his promise of returning to court with his subjects, he led 'em into the midst of the desart. Aidecon was not more sincere than the other; for having found his men, he march'd with 'em on his side the country, notwithstanding the agreement he had made. A natural enemy will never become a true friend; a thistle will bear no other fruit than thorns; the seed of the bitter-apple will not produce balm; a reed for mats will give no sugar; nor a female pearl become a male; he who is by nature vitious, will never be made virtuous. There was only Condge Aglen, who having found part of his subjects, return'd to court according to his promise. This prince had always been extremely favor'd, and even familiar with the emperor, having thor'd with him in his most secret pleasures; for which reason he met with a handsom reception.

All the Emirs and warriors, whom the emperor had sent out to pillage the country, return'd victorious, loaded with booty, as horses, camels, oxen, sheep, and a great number of captives of every age and sex. They took all the enemies who had hid themselves in the isles of the Volga, and brought 'em laden with chains; and put 'em all into the hands of Timur, to distribute 'em as he thought fit. All the poor men who were in the service of the army, and who by labor and the sweat of their bodys, could scarce find sustenance, on this occasion got together so many horses and sheep, that when they had a design to return to their country, they could not carry with 'em all their goods,
Among the slaves were a great many beautiful girls, some of whom were placed in Timur's seraglio, and the rest distributed among the Emirs. They also chose five thousand handsome young men, who were put in the Seraglio, to be instructed in the particular service of the emperor, and to have the care of the officers and posts in his household. Then Timur ordered that preparations should be made for a solemn and magnificent feast in the meadow of Ourtoopa, on the bank of the Volga, which was more sumptuous than any that had ever been in the country of Touran. The several sorts of meats, as well as of liquors, were served up in vessels of gold, or of precious stone, by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world, which made every thing appear more agreeable. The songs, which celebrated the victory of Timur, were at the same time sung on the Rihavi, a tune used in songs of triumph. This piece of music was called Fatehnameti Capchac, that is, the triumph of Capchac. This plain of Ourtoopa on the Volga was the seat of the empire of Touchi, son of the great Genghiz Can; and his successors have always made it the place of their residence. Timur had the satisfaction to continue his diversions on their throne. The most beautiful ladies of his seraglio attended him, and each of the lords had his own with the cup in her hand to accompany the voice and airs of the musicians who sung in the tune Ochac, which was only practis'd when the assembly was inclin'd to amorous conversation. All the army had a share in the diversion, which made the soldiers, who
The history of Timur-Bek.

Book IIII. who spent twenty six days in pleasure, forget the fatigues of war.

C H A P. XV.

Timur returns from the desert of Capchae to the seat of his empire.

After this famous victory, there remaining no more enemies in the desarts, or in the isles of the Volga, Timur began his march to Samarcand with the army, followed by a great train of captives of both sexes, which exceedingly pleased the soldiers, who had their share in the goods, mony, and slaves. The inhabitants of the desert of Capchae live in portable tents, which need not be taken to pieces at decamping, and are with very little trouble fix'd again at an encampment. When they decamp, they place these tents upon camels, and march in that manner to the place where they would encamp next. Our soldiers in the way diverted themselves with the conversation of their beautiful slaves. Tho' in other conquests the goods and slaves were only brought away, yet in this, even the houses were carry'd home; which made the camp become spacious, that if any one left his tent it would require a long time to find it again.

When the army arriv'd at the river of Tlie, the love of his country made Conze Agler, who was a native of Capchae, fly from the army with his men. Which verify the maxim of men of fente, that one ought not to trust strangers; for sooner or later we shall be betray'd by 'em.

Some
Some days after the army had crossed the Tic, Timur, leaving the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin and other Emirs, to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, went before into the rest of the desert, without considering the danger he ran; so that in the month of Zilhadje 793, he came to Sabran, thence to Ostrar; and at length crossed the river of Sihon, from whence he arrived at Samarcand, where the inhabitants testified their joy, as well as the princes his sons, the queens, the princesses, and the Nevians*, who sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones, and congratulated him on his victory and happy return. Then public feasts were prepared, accompanied with consorts of vocal and instrumental music, performed by the finest voices and instruments; in which the new airs, and charming songs composed on the victories of this great prince, were often sung. This feast lasted many days, and there was nothing wanting which might demonstrate a complete joy. Timur permitted the Mirza Miran Chah to depart for Herat, while himself began his journey to Tackkunt, crossed the Sihon, and encamped in the great plain of Barchin, near that place. In the beginning of Muharrum 794, which answers to the year of the Monkey, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, whom Timur left at the river of Tic to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, arrived at the plain of Barchin. And as the army which rendezvoused at Tachkunt in order to go to Capchae, departed from that town in the month of Zefar 793, and arrived at Barchin in the month of Muharrum, we may say that this important campaign continued eleven months.

As there was a great quantity of booty, and the vast plain of Barchin was covered with the flocks
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Flocks and cattle taken from the enemy; the emperor was willing that the princes his sons, the princes, and ladies of the court, the Che-
riifs and chief men of the state, who were not at the war, shou'd share in the booty. He distributed among 'em several beautiful girls and boys; gave 'em sheep and cattle in abundance, and a great many fine horses. All the court pass'd the winter in this place with Timur; and in the beginning of the spring this prince return'd to Samarcand. He repair'd the river before Cegende, where he entertain'd this charming court with a general chase, because this place was full of all sorts of beasts, of which a vast number were kill'd.

C H A P. XVI.

The government of Zabulestan given to Mirza Pir. Mohamed, son of Gehanghir.

WHEN Timur with all his court arriv'd at the plain of Akizir near Koch, he appointed the Mirza Pir. Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, governor of the kingdom which formerly belong'd to the grand Sultan Mahmoud, that is, all the country from Gana & Cabul as far as India; and from Candahar to the river Indus, call'd in Persian, Absend. He order'd several officers, great Emirs and Nevians to att-

* A town between Zabol and Candahar, long. 100° 30° lat. 33° 40°.
* Otherwise call'd Absend and Mebran. It springs from the lake of Behre, near Lahor. long. 108° lat. 32°.

tend
tend this prince; of which number were the famous Cotobeddin, cousin of the Emir Solyman Chah, Behloul son of Mehemed, Darvich Berlas, Ismail son of Eltechi Coja Berlas, and many other lords. This young prince with the Emirs went at the head of a great army to take possession of his government: and Timur departed from Akiar to Samarbund, where many princes and great lords begg’d leave of him to marry their children with princesses of their rank and birth: to which this prince not only consented, but he would also be himself at their feasts, to let ’em see that he fared in their joy. He went out of the city to encamp in the delicious meadow of Canighuel, where he gave orders that preparations shou’d be made for the magnificent entertainments and diversions which shou’d accompany these marriages. A royal banquet was provided, at which the tables were set in form of an army rang’d in order of battle, Timur being plac’d at the head of ’em on a throne of gold. The bridegrooms were on one side, and the brides on the other, all cloth’d in the richest apparel. The officers of the imperial household waited on ’em, and the throne was surrounded by the greatest lords of Asia; so that they imagin’d themselves in the reign of Efraimib, an ancient emperor of Touran, whose great actions are recorded by historians.

There was the greatest plenty imaginable at this feast; the musicians even surpass’d themselves on the tunes Oechac and Oezal. And to render this joy compleat, the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son

---

* Efraimib, emperor of Touran, was the enemy of Koutier, celebrated in Farabiou’s history of Persia, which contains one hundred thirty thousand verses.

Oriental tunes for amorous songs.

VOL. I.  Cc.  of
The history of Timur-Bec.

Booke III. of Gehanghir, and his brother the Mirza Rouflem, by the emperor's order, the same day marry'd the daughters of Cayaseddin Ferefan; and the Mirza Aboubecre, son of the Mirza Miran Chab, espoused the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Sefi-eddin. They had apartments prepar'd for 'em, and particular officers align'd 'em.

CHAP. XVII.

Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.

We have a tradition of Mahomet, whereby he affirms it, that he was the child of the sword, and that the most happy moments which he pass'd with God were when he had the sword in his hand; and he adds, that paradise is full in under the protection of the sword, which demonstrates that kings are not peaceable protectors of the throne, but when they are victorious; and that subjects can't enjoy quiet in their families, but by the protection of the sword of their prince. The sceptre and crown, says a certain poet, are the reward of that prince who undergoes the fatigues of war, and marches at the head of his army, that he may arrive at grandure and glory. Thus Timur did not gain an empire before he was main'd at the siege of the capital city of Sistan. When this prince was on his return from the toilsome but glorious campaign of Capchac, his ambition prompted him to repuls the kingdom of Iran, which he had before conquer'd, to suppress the disorders which had got footing there; tho' the presumption of some rash fellows, who during the absence of the court
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chapter 17.

Court had revolted. The Tavatchis had orders to go into all the provinces to assemble the troops, and to require them to get ready for a campaign of five years, and come immediately to the court. Timur departed from Samarcand the fifteenth of Regeb 794, while the season was very hot, and caused a new standard to be displayed, on which was the figure of a dragon. When he was near Bocara in the month of Muharrem, the grandees of that city came out to meet him. The troops encamped before that city; and he was seated at this place with a distemper on the first of Chaban 794, which he concealed a long time, and decamped, but when he was at Jundar, a place dependent on Bocara, his distemper increased; and he was obliged to stop there, and call to him the ladies, and the princes his children. The empresses Serai Mule Camum, Tonman Aga, and Sultan Bact Begum, came with the sons of the emperor, who ordered that the Mirza Mehemes Sultan, who was gone before at the head of the vanguard, and had already crossed the Ghilens, should leave the troops at the place where he should receive these orders, and return to court. The most skilful Turkish and Arabian physicians were made use of; and the Enni Tantiy Sefeddin was set over them, to see that they provided with dispatch the necessary remedies for Timur's relief. But the princes, the princesses, and Timur himself, who knew that health was to be expected from God alone, who is the true physician, employed not only temporal but spiritual remedies; and ordered the Alcoran to be read. They sent presents to all religious places, and to the tombs of the great Chaliks; they gave alms to the poor and sick, and sacrificed the finest horses in the imperial stables, as well as others, distributing
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. the sixth among the poor. The people's prayers, and the charity of the grandees soon had their desired effect; and what is writ in many places prov'd true, that alms prolong life; for the night before the fifteenth of Chaban, which is call'd Cheheberats, or the night of breves, God restored the emperor to his health. The joy at this good news was universal; and Timur order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to return to the command of his vanguard; while himself took horse the twenty-fifth of Chaban 794, to shew himself to the people, who wish'd him health and prosperity.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur departs from Joundez after his recovery.

The first of Ramadan 794, Timur gave orders concerning the conduct of his army; and the sixth of the same month he order'd the drum to be beat, after the astrologers had fix'd the happy moment; and he departed at the head of his troops. He sent the Emir Hadji Seifeddin to Samarcand, and went to encamp himself at Amouye on the tenth of Ramadan; from whence he sent back to his capital the empresses Serai Mule Canum, Touman Aga, and other ladies; and two days after, the Mirza Charoc also receive'd orders to return home. The emperor embrac'd and kiss'd him, and having comforted him for his separation, he care'd him a thousand times, and recommending him to God, took leave of him. The same day the Mirza set out for Samarcand, Timur departed from Amouye, crofs'd the Gihon, and enter'd into Coral-
Corassina. Some days after he went to Macan Chap. 12, and Abiverd, and on the twenty-ninth of Ramadan to Yassf Dahan, where on the appearance of the new moon he read the prayer of Beiram, which is the grand feast of the Mahometans. He there solemniz'd this feast with all the ceremonies us'd on these happy days. He at length departed for Ilgazigaga Cabouchan\(^1\), where he join'd the Mirza Mahemer Sultan, who commanded the body of the scouts. He also found there the Mirza Pir Mehomed, son of Gehanghir, at the head of his troops, and the Emir Gehancha with his, who according to orders, were already come from Condor and Bacalan to join the scouts. The prince's Canzade, widow of Gehanghir, came thither also from Herat; she put a frole round her neck, according to custom, that she might have the honor to present to Timur the princes his sons, presumptive heirs of the crown. At this place she gave a magnificent entertainment to the emperor, who made her several rich presents. Timur decamp'd on the twentieth of the month Chawal: and arriving in the territory of Efter Abad, he encamp'd on the banks of the river of Jorjiana.\(^2\) The same day the venerable Seid Bereke brought to Timur the Seid Caias Eddin, son of Kemaleddin,\(^3\) with considerable presents. He told his majesty, that his father order'd him to come and submit to him, and to shew his willingnesss

---

\(^1\) A village between Abiverd and Efter Abad in Corassina. There is another Ilgazigaga near Samarcand.

\(^2\) A river which passes by a town of the same name, in the province of Mazedran, on the frontier of Giltan, and runs into the Caphian, long. 87. lat. 13.

\(^3\) Kemaleddin was a sort of false devil, of the race of Mahomer, who by his hypocrisy made himself chief of his party, and master of the town of Sari in Mazedran.
to pay the tribut, and make a treaty with him, the conditions of which he would perform as a faithful servant and a sincere friend. Timur receiv'd him handsomely, and was satisfied with his proposals, for the person's sake who brought him; and Cuan Edull was highly pleas'd with the emperor's favor to him. When Timur arrived at Elfer-Abad, Puri Pasha, son of Lucum Pacha, to whom the emperor had given the government of this place after his father's death, paid his devotions as a faithful servant, made presents to the emperor, and entertain'd him very agreeably.

CHAP. XIX.

The taking of Amol, Sari, and Mahanajar.

The army, after three days march from Elfer-Abad, came to a wood extremely thick, the trees of which grew so close together, that the wind could scarce pass thro'; whereupon the emperor order'd the soldiers to cut down the trees, and open a passage thro' this forest, tho' it had been till that time impenetrable. They immediately began to execute his orders, and at last made three great ways, each of which was 2 bow's shot in breadth. The middle way was designed for the main body to march thro', and the others for the two wings. They intolerably arriv'd, cutting down the wood before 'em, at Sari', and there learnt that the Seid Kemaleddin had fled to the Seid Rasleddin of...
Mahamafir, which are three towns situate four leagues from Amol on the shore of the Caspian sea: and that they had built a fort on an adjacent hill, which joined the sea on one side, and instead of ditches was surrounded with precipices which were commanded for the space of a mile by the sea, which in turbulent weather flowed within the rocks; so that the place seemed to be in the middle of water. Round about the wall they had fixed great trees near one another, the branches of which were so closely jointed together, that they formed instead of a second wall. The princes of Amol and Sari retir'd into this place with their relations, household, butt captains, treasures, and whatever they had that was precious. The rich inhabitants of these countries, and the foreign merchants themselves, also retir'd thither with all their effects, confining in the strength of their walls, and the inaccessibleness of the place: and thus this fortress was fill'd with so great a quantity of gold, silver and furniture, that the most skilful arithmeticians could scarce compute the value of 'em. Timur inform'd of these particulars, order'd his soldiers to march with expedition; he pass'd the lakes and marshes of these shores, and in three days arriv'd at Amol. He order'd the Seid Cayas Eddin to go and confer with his father, and bring him to him. And as this station had always the character of being faithless, irreligious, and deprav'd in their morals; God permitted that the infamous sentence which was us'd to Remsdorin and the other Clarns, should be prononc'd by his own foe, whom Ti-

1 Long. 99, B. Jan. 37, 60.
1 A town of Chilcan near the Caspian, long. 87, 15, lat.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Mur sent to 'em, ordering him to make the following speech: "You are men not to be trusted, and of a corrupt religion; you have no temple to worship God in, and you assemble no where to perform acts of piety according to your duty. You neither observe the commandments of God, nor the counsels of the prophet; and when any one is about to call others to prayer, you cruelly put him to death. The names of Seid and Cheriff are profan'd by you, and you are unworthy of the honor of being descended from the great Mahomet."

As soon as the son of Seid Komeleddin was set out, Timur order'd, that the water in all the reservatories, cisterns, and other vessels, which were in Amol, shou'd be spilt: which being done, the army began its march, making the usual cries. And as it was absolutely necessary that they shou'd pass thro' marshes and swamps, the soldiers cut down all the wood they cou'd find, which they call into the marshes. This was tedious work; for they cou'd advance but one league a day, and were oblig'd to encamp in moorish ground upon saxesines. Thus at length this country, which was so full of trees that the sun cou'd scarce penetrate it, became like a large plain, after the army had cut 'em down. On the twenty-sixth of Zileade 794, the scouts of both parties join'd, and there were skirmishes, in which the blood flow'd on all sides. Hubbi Caja did surprizing actions; but he was unfortunately slain, being willing to sacrifice his life to his honor, while he imagin'd that a warrior, whose reputation is famous among posterity, never dies. As he was the son of Chetk Behader, his loss was regretted not only for his valor, but because of his birth. Three days after this battle of the scouts, wherein neither party gain'd the
the advantage, the Seid Kehmaleddin Derux and Chapter Moulana Amudeedim, came and call'd themselves at the feet of Timur, to implore his clemency. They demanded quarter, and besought him to pardon what was past; which Timur granted, on condition that the Cheriffs, who commanded in all those quarters, should send him part of the goods of the inhabitants, and one of each of their children in hostage, so that he might be assured of their fidelity. He told 'em, that if the Cheriffs would exactly execute this order, they might sleep in security, and come before him with confidence, since he had given his word for their safety.

The Cheriffs return'd home, and declar'd the will of Timur to their brethren; but their ill fortune depriv'd 'em of their reason; for imagining themselves able to make a defence, they were so far from hearkning to his proposals, that they caus'd the kettle-drums to be beat, and war to be declar'd. Timur, on advice of it, sent to the Caspian shore Piri Pacha, Argonchla of Bourdale, Nadercha of Caragheli, and Cheik Ali of Amouye, with the matters of the banks of the Gihon, and the slingers of artificial fire, that they might get possession of the enemy's banks, and attack Mahanafar. They follow'd their instructions, and were so successful, that they surpriz'd the enemy's velvets, and erected horses-tails on sticks instead of standards. They distributed all their soldiers into these velvets, whom they brought by squadrons to the foot of the walls at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets; their colors being display'd. The soldiers with their cuirasses on, and sword in hand, made the great cry to begin the attack, and besiege Mahanafar in form. They call'd a great number of arrows, with pitch and
Book III, and the set on fire, from the banks into the town; so that it is said that the Caspian sea was become a sea of fire. The attack was so vigorous, that those who guarded the out-parls were obliged to fly into the place to save their lives; while others at the same time fell in the walls. The first of Zilhadj 794, Timur took horses, and approached the place, which put the enemy in confusion. They held a council in what they had to do; and perceiving they would be at last obliged to surrender, considering the advantages Timur's men had already gained, they resolved to implore his clemency, before they were reduced to too great extremities. They came out of the place in companies, and casting themselves at the feet of the generous Timur, implored his protection, and confidently trusted all their affairs in his hands, beseeching him to serve as an intercessor for them with himself, and consider that they had submitted without waiting the extremities, tho they were able to have held out a long time, and to have harmed his troops; and moreover, that they had acted thus, because they knew they had to do with the most generous prince in the universe. Timur highly reprimanded 'em for their errors in religion, for they were Ghiats', and threatened to hang 'em all if they would not profess the orthodox tenets of the Sunnis', but he was at length more moderate, because of their nobleness, and the honor they had to descend from Mahomet, whom he regarded as the first and the greatest of the prophets. He told 'em that this consideration, join'd with the re-

---

* A sect of Parsees at present.
* A sect of the Chouseans and the Mogols of India.
duction of the place and their submission, appeas'd his wrath, and made him change his resolution. After this he treated 'em civilly, and even made 'em several presents; but he continued to exhort 'em to embrace the orthodox faith, instructing 'em himself in the charming maxims of the religion of the Sunnis, and errors of the Chisais; he prais'd the professors and doctors of the law of the former, and earnestly invited the Chisais to be instructed, that they knowing which law is agreeable to God, there might remain no scruple in their consciences.

After having thus exhorted 'em, he sent 'em to the town of Sari, with orders to guard that place strictly.

Timur laid some days at Mahansar, to give orders for the carrying away the great riches, which were brought thither from all parts; he fill'd the barks with 'em, and generously distributed 'em among the Emirs and soldiers, who had signaliz'd themselves on this occasion. After they had pillag'd and clear'd this place, they deroys'd it, and turn'd it into a large heap of rubbish, which is to be seen to this day.

In the mean while advice was brought to the emperor from all parts, that there were in this country a great number of men of an erroneous opinion, call'd Fedais, whom the Europeans term Assasins. Whereupon he order'd that all those who were of the race of Mahomet should be separated from their men, and be brought to him; and that then they should put to the sword all who were of this sect, which was immediately done, and the country freed from the disorders those assasins had caus'd there. Whenever these fellows found a stranger, or any one else, with a paper or book in his possession, whether he were a lawyer, philosopher, or a

man
man of letters, they believ'd it lawful to put him to death. Cheik Echader had a great
hand in the destruction of these wretches, to revenge the death of Hubbi Coja his son. Es-
kender Cheikli was also resolv'd to revenge that of his father Esraftab, and other relations slain
by the Dervises, the disciples of Seid Caou-
meddin. They invaded Amol, that no one might escape their wrath, and made the most
terrible massacre in that city ever mention'd in
history. Timur caus'd the Seid Kemaleddin
and his son to be put in a vessel to be carry'd
to Carezem; and the Seids Mourtaza and Abd-
alla, with their sons, and several other men,
were carry'd to Samarcand, and thence to Tach-
kunt.

CHAP. XX.

Timur sends a letter to Samarcand.

THE province of Mazendran being en-
tirely brought under subjection, Timur
sent to Samarcand the news of the taking of
Sari, Amol, and Mahanafar, with their depend-
cencies; he sent for the Mirza Charoe his son,
and the Mirzas Calit and Rouflem his grand-
sons, as well as the Sultan Hufseim, grandson
of the Emir Mousha, and son of Timur's daugh-
ter; as also the princess Beghili Sultan, daugh-
ter of the Mirza Mirancha, and the empresses
Serai Mule Canum, Touman Aga, and others.
In the month of Muharram 795. he caus'd a
very fine palace to be built in a place nam'd Chat-
man, in the neighbourhood of Jorjiana. He
gave the government of Sari to Gemchid Ca-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Ten, native of Caint in Conhestan; and that of Girpa, Amola to Eskender Cheilli, from whom the Cherifs had taken it, after having traiterously slain his father and brother, as they had also serv'd him if he had not fled for refuge to Timur's court, where he taid a long time. On the twentieth of Muharrem the emperor lodg'd Decem. 17.
in the palace which he had built at Ghulman. He sent out Tavatchis to cause all the troops
which were dispers'd to return to the camp. He had advice that his letter got safe to Samarcand, with the riches and rarities of Mazendran; and that on the eighteenth of Zilhadege, they Nov. 15.
had made public rejoicings, and beautify'd the city, in token of joy for this conquest. The person who brought this news had several presents made him; and much alms were given away to the poor.

Serai Mak Camum, Touman Aga, and the other ladies, with the emperor's children, departed from Samarcand on the twenty-fourth of Zilcade 794, and laid the first night at Tutuc. The next day there fell great rains and snow, and it was exceeding cold, by reason of a hurricane which rose from the Caspian sea. This bad weather did not hinder the ladies and princes coming to Chaduman, where they lodg'd in the Caravansera's. On the 26th they came to Damas, a famous hospital, founded by Timur for the relief of the poor; where they staid two or three days till the storm was over; then they departed, and in three days arriv'd at Carchi, where they met a courier from Timur, who brought orders that they should leave their baggage behind, and make haste themselves. But as the

1 A village five leagues from Samarcand.
Book III. Mirza Charoe excus'd himself from making so much haste by reason of a distemper in his eyes; the others came but slowly, that he might not be left alone. They crossed the Gihon at A-
Decem. 13-
1397.
encamp'd on the other side: from whence they marched day and night till they came to Mar-
can, where the distemper in Mirza Charoe's eyes abated. Serai Male Canum sent to Timur an account of the health of the princes his children, and of all that had happen'd since their departure from Samarcand. The messenger was no sooner set out, than they departed and came for the village of Delhi Hendoun, where they left their baggage to make the more haste. They then marched day and night, and in thirteen days arriv'd at Chilzaun, where they paid their respects to Timur. He tenderly embraced his sons, the sight of whom highly en-
creas'd his joy for his new conquest. The princes and princesses made their compliments, and offer'd presents to him, as usual; then they went with him to Chashman, where they found all necessary preparations for their diversion; and the great lords of the court had also furniture and other things to adorn their apartments, which render'd the joy compleat.

* A town near Jorjana in Coronina.
Timur makes war a second time on the kingdom of Fars and Iraq.

Timur's courage not permitting him to pass all his life in pleasure, at the end of winter, the sun being in Capricorn, he prepar'd to continue his conquests. He fix'd the campaign of that year for the kingdoms of Fars and Iraq: the great generals, the officers and soldiers re-affirm'd their courage; and the emperor sent the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at the head of the vanguard, with his brother the prince Pir Mehemed, accompany'd by the Cheikh Ali Behader and other Emirs. Then he chose three men out of each ten, who compos'd a separate body, at the head of which he departed from Mazendran the twenty-fourth of Sefer 795, leaving the Emirs Yaghnaq Harlas, Gehancha Behader, and others to guard the baggage, and conduct the main-body of the army, with orders to follow him slowly. Among the empresses, Serai Mula Camm, and Touman Aga, stay'd with the baggage; and Tehulpun Mule Aga, Duro Sultan Aga, and Neghnia Aga, had the honor to accompany Timur. He gave the command of another vanguard to Mirza Charoe, and went himself to Yeilac Veli; and after having furnish'd victuals for the army at Dampur, Semnan, and Rei Chehiran, he march'd further.

* A town in a mountain, where the Emir Veli prince of Marraban pass'd the summer, long. 39. lat. 35. 30.
* A town of Couras, frontier of Tabarrizhen, long. 85. lat. 35. 20.
* A town of Couras, frontier of Iran Aga, long. 82. lat. 36.
* A town of Iran Aga, long. 82. lat. 35. 20.
farther. The Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet at their arrival at Caxuin gave battle to Chahfoul, governor of it; whom Coja Cheik attack'd, took prisoner tho' he was arm'd, and brought to the two princes, who fear'd him to Timur. From thence they went to Sultania', the governor of which Aetcheghi was dead, and Aznesecha his intendant had taken the government on him in his stead. This coward fled at their approach. The two Mirzas laid there eight days: furnish'd the troops with victuals; and having put a good garrison in the place, march'd towards Bagdad. When they had enter'd Courdislan, there arriv'd a messenger from Timur, who brought orders for 'em to pass by Geo-Chemul'. Upon which they immediately return'd, and went to take the castle of Sancar', the victuals and ammunition of which they brought away; then they pillag'd the country, and their horses eat up all the unreap'd corn.

At their departure there came a second messenger who brought an order for 'em to reduce all the inhabitants of Courdislan; and to free the country from these robbers. For which reason they went to Tchebietchal', and thence to the mountain of Bifloun', where Seivingic Behader, Temour Coja son of Acbouga, and Mobacher Behader went from the main-body into

---

1 A town of Iraç Agemi, frontier of Ghilan, long. 84. Lat. 37.
2 A town of Iraç Agemi, frontier of Azerbijana, long. 84. 30. Lat. 36. 30.
3 A town between Iraç and Courdislan, long. 82. 40. Lat. 38.
4 On the top of a mountain, frontier of Azerbijana and Courdislan, long. 81. Lat. 36. 50.
5 Long. 77. 35. Lat. 37. Long. 75. Lat. 37.
the country of the Courdes. The Mirza Chahzar
march'd towards Derbend Tachi Curun, whether one of the chief men of the country, in
hopes of obtaining the government of it, fled. He told him no one knew the road so well as he,
and if they pleas'd, he would be their guide. The Mirza Mehemer kindly receiv'd him, gave
him a belt, a veil, and some gold; and order'd the Cheik Ali Behader to go as a Mangalai,
with this man for a guide. Ibrahim Cha, prince of these places, handsomely receiv'd the Cheik Ali,
submitted, and sent his son Sultana to the
Mirza with Arabian horses, and other curious
presents, consisting of nine pieces of each sort.
Sultana came to the prince, kiss'd the carpet,
and made presents from their father. The Mirza
Mehemer Sultan was content with these sub-
mmissions of the Courde prince, and sent an
express for the Cheik Ali to come back. He ac-
ccordingly began his march; but being upon the
road, his guide, frustrate of his hopes by the
peace with Ibrahim Cha, traitorously stuck him
with a knife while he was eating, of which he fell
dead upon the spot. This brave man, who had signifie'd his courage in twenty famous batt-
tles, cou'd not save himself from this coward,
who was taken by Cheik Ali's men, and imme-
diately put to death with the most cruel torments,
and afterwards burnt.

* A defile of mountains near Esh in Courudan.
C H A P. XXII.

Timur marches to the kingdoms of Lorestan and Conrestan.

TIMUR, being at Chehriser, chose a number of brave men, and left the Mirza Mirrancha with the rest of the army in that place, ordering him to wait the baggage which should come from Esfarahad; and at the head of this select body he march'd to Ouroudgerd. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, march'd by Kiochki Tounan and Ave, to besiege the forterefs of Kioh; which, he took after a short defence, and put the governor Mehemet Comi in chains. The next day he went to Marvan, the governor of which place, Mehemet Perahhani, who commanded there for Mehemet Comi, came to him, and saluted him. From thence he march'd to Kerheroud. Esfendiar the governor, not imagining himself strong enough to make a defence, came out of it, was seize'd and carry'd to the Mirza, who sent him to the emperor with Mehemet Comi.

Timur arriv'd at Ouroudgerd the first of Rabiulaker 795; to which place the Mirza Omar

---

* A town eighteen leagues from Hamadan in the province of Coupelasen in Iraa' Ageuli, long. 84. 49. lat. 34. 29.
* A hill between Rei and Ave.
* A town of Coupelasen between Rei and Hamadan, long. 84. lat. 35. 50.
* On a mountain, long. 84. lat. 36.
* A town of Coupelasen, near Hamadan, long. 84. lat. 35-36.
* A town of Coupelasen, long. 84. 10. lat. 35.
Cheik came, after he had pass'd by Turvan *, and Chap.22
with Timur's permission he return'd to the right
wing of the army. Timur gave the command
of the militia of Ouroungerd to Seifeddin; and
leaving Cheik Micaill with the government of
Nehavend, three days after he arriv'd at Corram
Abad *, the governor of which, Malek
Azzeddin, not daring to defend himself, fled.
Timur flaid one night in these quarters, left
troops to besiege the place, and order'd the
Mirza Omar Cheik to pursue Malek. Then he
sent parties of horse into all the quarters of the
kingdom of Lorestan, to exterminate the rob-
bers, and put a stop to the disorders they com-
mitted. Timur departed from Corram Abad
to Tottar *, and when he was almost at the end
of his day's march, he plac'd some brave men in
ambuscade near the high-ways, who flew the
Lorens robbers as they went into their cottages
from the mountains. Timur arriv'd in eleven
days at the bridge of the river Abzal *. The
Mirza Omar Cheik diligently pursu'd Malek

---

* A town of Confeffan, long. 83° 40'. lat. 35°.
* Otherwise called Nehavend, a town of Confeffan, built
by Noor, on a mountain fourteen leagues south from Hamad-
dan, near Ouroungerd; long. 84° 10'. lat. 34°. 10'. Here was a
famous battle between the Mahometans, commanded by the
Calif Omar, son of Echam, and the king of Persia, Wan De-
gard, who was vanquish'd, and lost his kingdom, A.D. 638.
* A fortress of Lorefhan, near the town of Loc, long. 84°
lon. 32° 40'. the residence of the prince of Lorefhan.
* Capital of Confeffan, between the kingdom of Fars and
the Pervian gulf, towards Bafra and Vafar; long. 84° 30'. lat.
31° 70'. It is accounted the eminenf eity in the world.
* A river which runs into Confeffan by Tottar, and falls in
to the Pervian gulf at Hafeh Mehid. Sapor king of Persia
could an abstract to be built from one of its branches a mile
long, which conveys water to the city of Tottar; it is the most
remarkable and curious machine known.

D d = Azed-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Azeddin as far as the castle of Minhure; but he could hear nothing of him: he reduc’d all the places and inhabitants in those mountains, and afterwards join’d the imperial camp at the bridge of Abzal. The Mirza Miran Chah, who conducted the baggage and main body of the army, march’d with a troop of horse to the gates of Cachan. Melouk Sebedal (governor of it for Chah Manflour king of Peria, to whom he fled before from Coraffana, for fear of being seiz’d by the soldiers of this Mirza;) had no sooner heard of his arrival than he sent an express out of the town to beg quarter; which was granted, and a veil sent him. Then Melouk came out, and put himself under the protection of the Mirza, who return’d to join the baggage. Timur sent prince Omar Cheikt to the right with a body of the army; when he came to Haviza, no one relished him, and Ilam, governor of it for Chah Manflour, fled to save his life. The Mirza fortify’d, and plac’d a garison in Haviza. Timur departed from the Abzal on the sixteenth night of his march; at ten a clock in the morning he cross’d the bridge, and went to a town on the other side. This bridge is very famous, and of curious structure; it is laid to have been built by Sapor Zulicrast; has twenty eight lofty magnificent arches, each of which has a letter, which make in all fifty fix. It is built of stone and brick, with great beauty and strength; so that it has always attracted the eyes of the cu-

---

1 Towards Vast upon the Tigris.  
2 On the banks of the river Chit, which joins the Tigris and Euphrates at Damascus.  
3 A town of Couthian, where porcelain is dug, with which the walls and houses of Peria are cover’d; three days journey from Ilphahn; Jong. 56. lat. 74.  
4 Corinthly so call’d from Abousa, a town of Couthian on the river Abzal, long. 25. lat. 31.
rious, and brought to their remembrance the Chap.
king who built it.

Whilst Timur sate at Der Foul, a town at
the foot of the famous bridge, Chamseddin the
governor of it presented him with twenty
loads of silver, and the commissary afterwards
carry’d away the very horses and mules. Timur
departed for Tollar at noon; and in his way
sate upon a hill, where he caus’d the horses to
be put to grass; then marching all night, he
came the next morning in the light of Tollar,
where he encamp’d on the bank of the river
Techehar Donke. Ali Coutsul and Estendiar
Nami, governors of Tollar for Chah Manfour,
led to Chiraz at the report of Timur’s approach.
But the chief men and Chersif of Tollar went
out of the town at his arrival, cross’d the river,
and came to the door of his tent to make their
submission, and allure him of their obedience.
In the mean while the Emirs and soldiers pil-
lag’d all the inhabitants of the neighbouring
country, and brought to the camp a great num-
ber of horses and mules, which Timur distribu-
ted among the soldiers. Thus the enemy’s lost
all their effects by the emperor’s wrath, and his
friends obtain’d pardon by his clemency.

On the 20th of Zilhadj, Timur cross’d the March 18.
river of Techehar Donke, and went into a forest
of palms without the city. The Mirzas, Mehemet
Sultan and Pir Mehemet, also departed
from Derbend Tachicatun, and after having
pass’d several rivers and mountains in Cour-
ditian and Lorestan, exterminated the robbers
there, and reduc’d the inhabitants to obedience,
they arriv’d here, where they had the honor to
salute the emperor. All the troops also join’d the
imperial camp at this place.

Dd 3  CHAP.
C H A P. XXIII.

An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, or of Persia and Iraq, on which the present affairs depend.

We mention'd in the second book, that Timur, after a campaign of three years, returning from Persia to Samarcand, pass'd by Chiraz, because the princes of the family of Muzaffer became obedient to him, and several of them had lifted themselves in his service; upon which he then gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, head of that family, and confirm'd him in that of Yezd, which he before possess'd. He likewise gave the government of Ispahan to Sultan Mehmet, eldest son of Chah Yahia; that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed, brother of Chah Chuja, with permission to return to his own country; that of Seirjan to Sultan Abou Ithac, son of Avis, son of Chah Chuja: and because the Pehleyvan, Muhaddeh Corafani, one of the Emirs of Chah Chuja, (who had been long time governor of Abrecough for this prince, and after his death for his son, the Sultan Zein Elabeddin) had been faithful to his trust in this government, Timur confirm'd it to him. Chah Mansour, younger brother of Chah Yahia, was then governor of Toftar, whither the Sultan Zein Elabeddin was retir'd, for fear of our army; nevertheless Chah Mansour caus'd him to be arrest'd and put in irons. By which means, from the year 790, when Timur march'd from Persia to Toiran, to the year 795, when he return'd from Mazendran to Persia, there were
were great disorders among the princes of the house of Muzaffer. At length Zein Elabeddin, prisoner in the castle of Kerberd four leagues from Toflar, by the assistance of Alnet Chah Tumetachi, and Mahmoud his relation, escap'd with them to Mulek Aveddin Kerit at Ouroudgerd, who conducted him to Ispahan. And as the officers of this city were in the interest of Zein Elabeddin, the Sultan Mehemet retir'd into the fortress, and a month after went out with the consent of Mehemet Courtchi, who went with him to Yezd; and by this means Zein Elabeddin became master of Ispahan. Then Chah Manfour departed from Toflar at the head of an army, and came to the gates of Chiraz, where the sherifs, back'd by their disciples, open'd to him the gate of Salem. Chah Yafia far in the Divan of Chah Choja till the arrival of Chah Manfour; then he took horse, went out of the town by the gate of Sadet, and took the road of Yezd. Chah Manfour took his seat in the Divan, would not pursue his brother; but was content with establishing himself on the throne of Persia, of which Chiraz is capital. At length he rais'd a powerful army, with which he seiz'd on the castles of Bid, Sermac and Meroufel, and march'd to the town of Abrecoh, commanded by the Pehlevan Muh- haddeeb; tho he did not besiege it, but return'd to Chiraz. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin also rais'd an army at Ispahan, imagining that the Emirs of Chah Manfour would come over to his side, because most of 'em had rais'd themselves in his father's court. He march'd to Chiraz with his small army; while Chah Manfour advance'd with his to give him battle. They met near the fortress of Estacar, at the foot of the new bridge; and Zein Elabeddin's expectations
were not accomplished. Chah Manfour's soldiers swarm over the water, and attack'd him so briskly, that the Sultan's men being mostly kill'd or routed, he was constrain'd to fly to Ipahan. The Pehlevan Muhaddeh, fearing lest Chah Manfour should get possession of the whole kingdom, contracted a strict alliance with Chah Yahia; the latter of whom being by chance on the mountains of Yezd, a day's journey from Abrecooah, the Pehlevan went to him, offer'd his service, and made a treaty with him, which they both solemnly swore to. The Pehlevan at length invited him to come to Abrecooah, to which the prince consented; he conducted him into the town, and prepared lodgings for him in a little palace, which he had built and adorn'd for his own use. The courtiers of Chah Yahia, seeing their prince master of the town andcastle of Abrecooah, importun'd him to break the treaty with the Pehlevan; he consented to their infamous proposal. They seiz'd on the Pehlevan Muhaddeh, load'd him with chains, and sent him to the castle of Melous on the frontiers of Yezd, where he was put to death by the orders of Chah Yahia, who plac'd a strong garrison in Abrecooah under the Emir Mehemet Courtchi, and return'd to Yezd. On advice of this Chah Manfour departed from Chiraz at the head of a formidable army to beleige Abrecooah, the governor of which having fortify'd himself in the castle, he took the town, and having plac'd troops in garrison, march'd to Yezd, to attack Chah Yahia: but the latter being inform'd of his march, sent an express to Mehemet Courtchi, ordering him to surrender the place to Chah Manfour, on condition he should not bring his army to Yezd. Chah Manfour having learnt this circumstance from the courier whom he met,
immediately remit'd to Abrecough, the castle Chap. 32. of which was deliver'd to him without opposition. He plac'd a good garrison in the town as well as in the citadel, and took the road to Ispahan, causing the corn and grass to be destroyed; and after much mischief done, he return'd to Chiraz. The following year he march'd thither again, at the head of an army, and return'd after having committed the like disorders. Zein Elabeddin seeing himself so oppress'd by this powerful prince, sought for protection from the princes his relations. The Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman, and the Sultan Abu Ilhaq of Seirjan, came to assist him at the head of their troops, which were well equip'd, Chah Yahi made some fair promises, which he did not keep; for he came out of the town of Yezd, but did not join the princes. Several other lords of the house of Muzaffer join'd in defence of Zein Elabeddin, march'd towards Chiraz in the beginning of the spring, pillag'd several countries, especially that of Karbal †, from whence they turn'd towards the hot country. On advice of this Chah Manfour march'd against 'em, and gave 'em battle in the meadow of Fefa, in a village nam'd Jurouz. This prince, whose name signifies victorious, was in effect so: for he routed the confederate princes so that every one retreated to his own country.

In the following spring Chah Manfour return'd against Ispahan; as soon as he was encamp'd without the city, he order'd Coja Azadeddin to come to him, whom this prince of Lorestan, in all appearance, entertain'd at Ispahan, to carry on his intrigues. He came out of

---

* A town between Ispahan and Abrecough.
Book III. the city: and, what is most surprizing, the inhabitants, as soon as he was got to the tent of Chah Mansour, deliver'd up the place. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin fled; but he was taken near Rei between Veramin and Chehriar by Moufs Choucar, who sent him to Chah Mansour; who, with unparallel'd cruelty put out this prince's eyes with a hot iron, not thinking of the threatnings of God, which are, That he will never pity them who show no pity to others. Chah Mansour, seeing himself master of Isphahan, march'd twice to the gates of Yezd: the second time his mother, who was also Chah Yahiae's, came out of the town, to endeavor to make peace betwixt 'em; and thus exhort'd her son: Behold your eldest brother, who is contented to live with his two children in the town of Yezd, and to leave you the kingdoms of Fars and Iraq. If you endeavor to deprive him of that place too, you will be justly reproach'd. These speeches made him return from before Yezd to Chiraz.

Besides these there were several motions for the last four or five years between the princes of the family of Muzaffier, who naturally delighted to make war on each other, which put the empire of Iran in great disorder. The kingdom of Persia was but one, and yet ten kings pretended to it, who were, as one may say, so many butchers to destroy the people and country. It being too long to give a detail of their history, we will only mention what belongs to our subject. When Timur encamp'd without the town of Teitar, the towns of Chiraz, Isphahan and Anfoures, were in the hands of Chah Mansour, who resided at Chiraz; the town of Yezd was possess'd by Chah Yahiae, who liv'd there with his two sons; the kingdom of Kir-
man was govern'd by Sultan Ahmed; and the Chap. 24.
Sultan Abou Ishac commanded in Seirjan. All these princes were of the family of Muzaffier.

C H A P. XXIV.

Timur marches to Chiraz against Chah Mansour.

A F T E R the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet were return'd in triumph from Derbend Tachi Catin, to the imperial camp without Tollar, Timur sent Servindig Behader to Haviza to summon the Mirza Omar Chahk to court; and having made himself master of Tollar, he gave the government of it to Coja Mafoud Sebzuari, to maintain there the troops of Sebzuari which he commanded. At length Timur left the army, and on the 25th of Rabyulakher 795, which answers to the year of the hen, march'd with diligence towards Chiraz, and on the road sent a second express to the Mirza, who had taken Haviza, to inform him that the emperor order'd him to follow him to Chiraz at the head of the baggage and main-body. The 27th of Rabyulakher 795, Timur crosses the river Doudanke, and two days after encamp'd on the bank of that of Chouroukan Kende. The 1st of Jamazin level he went to encamp at April 22.

Ram Hermet, where Ataher Pir Mehemet, prince of the upper Lorestan, came to kiss the foot of his throne, and offer him presents; to which honor he was admitted by the mediation of the great Emira; and being well receiv'd by the

* Rivers in Couristan, which fall into the Ablul.
* A town of Couristan, long. 88. lat. 53. 25.
Book III. Emperor, he follow’d his court, Timur took horse about noon, pass’d the river of Ram Hermes, and encamp’d on the other side. The 21st of Jumazin level he encamp’d on the river Fei.

April 27. The third, after having march’d all night, he went to encamp in the plain of Zohra. The 25th he pass’d by Kerdestan, cross’d the Abargoun, and went to encamp at Behbehan.

26. The fifth. he pass’d the Abehirin, and encamp’d in the plain of Lachter. The sixth he march’d to Kedge Havas, and encamp’d at the spring of the river Canbidach. The seventh he encamp’d at the village Joulaha. The eighth. he went to Bacht, cross’d the Abehob, and encamp’d at Malemir-Chal. The ninth he pass’d the Cavedan, where he gain’d intelligence concerning the fortresses of Calaufe: from whence he went to stay at Neubendgian. The 20th of Jumazin level he rang’d his army for battle, and went to encamp at the foot of Calaufe, one of the strongest citadels of Asia. The governor for Chah Manfour was nam’d Sades, which signifies good fortune; tho’ he was an unfortunate wicked fellow. The Persians confided

---

* This runs thro’ the town, and falls into the Abazal below Abouar.
* A river of Coursthan which falls into the Abazal.
* A town of Coursthan, frontier of Pars.
* A river which divides the kingdom of Coursthan and Pars, run by Semeroon, and falls into the Abazal.
* A town of Pars, long. 59° 25'. lat. 39° 30'.
* A river which comes from the town of Costcherin.
* A great town of Pars.
* A river which falls into the Persian gulf near Benderia.
* A river dependent on Neubendgian.
* A river which comes from Bousin, accounted by the Arabians one of the seven wonders of the world.
* A river which passes by Cazenon, and falls into the Persian gulf.
* A town of Pars, long. 57° 10'. lat. 36° 20'.
in this place, because it was situate on the top of a very rugged mountain, where there was but one slippery way to ascend. On the top of this mountain there was a beautiful smooth plain, a league long and as much broad. Here are rivers and fountains, fruit-trees, and cultivated lands, with all sorts of beasts and birds. The princes had built there many pleasure-houses, where they had no reason to fear fires or torrents, and much less mines or assails by battering-rams, and other machines; so that no king had ever undertaken to besiege it, believing it impregnable and inaccessible, as well because of its height and the impossibility of carrying up battering-rams, as for the hardness of the rock, which could not be dug. The way which leads to the top of the mountain is made so, that in any strait three men may oppose a hundred thousand, and hinder their ascending. The inhabitants, not contented with its natural strength, had fortify'd and wall'd all the turnings with great stones join'd, with mortar. As the cultivated fields were sufficient for the maintenance of the inhabitants, and the cattle and fowl had enough to feed on, no one had dreams of starving 'em out, seeing nothing but death had any power over the inhabitants. Timur coming to the foot of this mountain, ascended in company with his most faithful captains as far as the gate of the fortres, and cast the great cry Souroum to be made in the troops who follow'd him. The two wings encamp'd on the top of another mountain which join'd the place. Timur's tent was pitch'd there; and he order'd his soldiers to give a general assault. The cavalry and infantry march'd up the mountain to the fort: the Mirza Malemet Sultan attack'd it on the right side, as the Mirza Pir Me-
Mehemet did on his: the Mirza Charoe parted from the left wing, and ran to the foot of the place with his men, whom he made to dismount: all the army did the same, and gave a furious assault. After having laboured all day, these men would ascend the highest parts of the mountain, and give a general attack to carry the place: but night being come, every one stood in the place he was in. The next morning the princes, Emirs and soldiers began the assault at the noise of drums, kettle-drums and trumpets. The enemy shot from the place a great number of arrows and stones. Our brave captains sacrificed their lives in Timur's service: every one took a pick-ax in his hand to break the rock, as formerly Ferhad did. Aebouga, an officer of the Cheik Mehemet Acoutm, by chance mounted a place unseen; when he was there, he praised God and the prophet, crying out, Timur is victorious, and his enemies are confounded. He acted the part of a valiant man upon this steep rock; for covering himself with his buckler, he fell upon the besieged, who were so surpriz'd at being attack'd in a place they thought no one dare ascend, that they left off fighting. The soldiers of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan went up the way which leads to the gate of the fortress, where displaying their ensigns, and fixing their horsetails, they cry'd out, Victory! The others mounted the rock which Aebouga had shewn, and some went up by other ways: so that the place was taken, and the garrison precipitated from the top of the mountain.

*A famous sculptor in the reign of Cofroes king of Persia*
Mehemet Azad seiz'd on the governor Sader, Chap. 25 and brought him to Timur, who order'd that in his blood they should revenge those who had lost their lives in this affaire. The sword is the instrument of vengeance to those who forget themselves; and when God chuses any one to command, we must submit to him without reliance. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin, whom Chah Manfour had blinded and kept prisoner in this place, was brought to Timur, who receiv'd him kindly, gave him a vest, and comforted him, promising to revenge him on Chah Manfour, whom he would punish for his injustice and cruelty. The emperor order'd all the women, whom the soldiers had taken, to be releas'd; and leaving Malek Mehemed Aoubahi governor there, he return'd. The 11th of Jumaziulevel, he went May 2. to encamp at Neubendjian. He gave Aebouga, who first mounted the rock of Cazanfeid, so much silver-money, stuffs, tents, women-slaves, horses, camels, mules and other things, that this officer, who the day before was master but of one horse, dazzled with this abundance, did not know whether what he saw was a dream or reality. The next morning Timur pass'd by the defile of Bouan, and encamp'd at Tirmerdan; from whence he departed on the 13th, and encamp'd at Jaragian; on the 14th he arriv'd at Jouem. On the road he inform'd himself concerning Chah Manfour; who, as every one told him, had fled.

1 Towns of Fars between Chiraz and Neubendjian.
CHAP. XXV.

Battle between Timur and Chah Mansour. The death of the latter.

As Timur was not troubled at the affair of Chah Mansour, he the same day divided his army into two bodies, one of which was led by himself, and the other by Mirza Mehemet Sultan; he gave the vanguard of his own body to Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, and the rear to Coja Aehouga. The troops of Mehemet Sultan were on the right, whose vanguard was commanded by Cheek Temour Behader. The Mirza Charoe had no troops, for he always attended on Timur. He sent before as a vanguard Emir Olman Abbas, and himself at the head of the army took the road to Chiraz. The Emir Olman had not gone far, before he perceived a body of the scouts of Chah Mansour, who were at the end of the gardens without the town, marching forwards; he hid himself in a bottom ground till they had pass'd him; and then he fell'd out of his ambush with Sainte Mauve, Acous, Temour, Monelli, Cara Mehemet, and Behram Yelou. The brave Behram overtook them with sword in hand, and cut one of the horses bridles; the man fell, and not being able to get away, Behram put him on his own horse bound, and brought him to Timur, who question'd him concerning Chah Mansour, and the number of his soldiers; and then continu'd his road. When he had gone about a league, he perceiv'd in the fields without the town three or four thousand horse,
horse, arm'd with coats of mail, helmets, and Chapas; breast-plates of leather lin'd with iron; their horses cover'd with a kind of cuirasses made of thick felt, and their ensigns display'd. These men being inured to war and fatigue, and skilful at the bow, Chah Mansour advance'd at their head like a furious lion, and in opposition to his reason, which should have prév'ed in his mind a fucible idea of the person he had to do with, as one whose arm had call'd down all his enemies, on a Friday at the hour of prayer he attack'd our main body compos'd of thirty thousand Turks, the most dextrous men of their time, in a place nam'd Patila: he overthrew their squadrons, broke their ranks, made his way into the midst, and gain'd behind our army post of the utmost consequence: then he return'd furious as a dragon to the fight, seeming resolve'd to lose his life. Timur stood short with some of his favorites, to consider the extreme vigor, or rather rashness, of this prince, who dair'd attack him in person. Timur seeing him come directly against him, would have arm'd himself with his lance to oppose him; but he could not find it, because Poulad Tchoura, the keeper of it, had been so briskly attack'd, that he fled and carry'd away the lance. Timur, who had only fourteen or fifteen persons with him, did not flit out of his place till Chah Mansour came up to him. This rash perfom struck the emperor's helmet twice with his pommel; but the blows did no harm, for the glance'd along his arms; he kept him as a rock and did not change his posture. Adel Ataefeli held a buckler over Timur's head, and Comari Yelaou advance'd before him; he did several great actions, and was wounded in his hand with a sword.

Vol. I. E e Then
Then Manoutcha, Tavahul Bazardhi, Amandis, and Mehmet Azad, enter'd into the middle of the enemy's army, and gave extraordinary proofs of their courage and strength. Chah Manfour, who had been repuls'd from before the emperor, fell upon the infantry of the main-body, while Mirza Mehmet Sultan so briskly attack'd the right wing of the Persian army, that it gave way. Mobacher and the other Emirs closely pursu'd them, and made a terrible slaughter. The Mirza Pir Mehmet Gelanghis bravely defeated their left wing, killing some, and obliging the others to fly. The Mirza Charoe, who fought near Timur like a lion, rally'd a whole battalion of soldiers who fled; and Gelalhamid, Beiram Souti, son of Cayafeedin Tercey, and Coja Rassin behav'd themselves courageously in his presence, and with their arrows made the enemy give way; Aboul Coja Piraul, and Cheik Mehmet Aire contmir, joining 'em. The regiment of Allahdad, call'd the faithful, that of Cheik Noureddin, son of Sarbouga, nam'd Ainula; and that of Boi, which was the imperial regiment call'd Coutchin; which were in the main-body, having been routed by Manfour, rally'd, and displaying their colors, form'd themselves into a compleat squadron. The three regiments of Cheik Ali, Lalam Coutchin, and Behram dado, would not stir from their post, where they bravely fought. At length the Mirza Charoe, the but seventeen years old, behav'd himself with so much valor and conduct, that he hem'd in Chah Manfour, cut off his head, and call it at the feet of the emperor his father, congratulating him on the victory: "May the heads, said he, of all your "enemies be thus laid at your feet, as that of "the proud Manfour is." This lucky accident 

Charoe cut off Chah Manfour's head.
discourag'd the Persian soldiers, who till that time had fought well. These leopards were turn'd into deers, for they who were not kill'd fled. Timur, pleas'd at this great victory, embrac'd the princes his sons and the Neviangs, and fell on his knees with 'em to return thanks to God for the victory. At length the Emirs came to him, and having congratulated him, they also fell on their knees; and as they presented him the gold cup, according to the custom of the Moguls, they saw on a sudden come behind 'em a body of the enemy's rang'd in order of battle and well equipp'd, who advance'd to attack 'em. Timur and the Mirza Chacor, with the lords, march'd against 'em; they made the great cry, and receiv'd the enemy with so much vigor, that they immediately gave way and were routed. The fugitives gain'd the mountain of Calasjane, that is, the red cattle; while some Emirs pursu'd 'em, who cut 'em to pieces. Timur pass'd the night at the village of Dinou Can; and the next day this conqueror, like Menoutcher, when he enter'd victorious into Estacar, antiently the capital of Persia, began his march to make his entry in triumph, and in warlike habit, into the famous city of Chiraz, the present capital of that kingdom. He order'd his standard to be display'd on the gate of Selm, where he lodg'd, while the army encamp'd in the out-parts of the town. Eight gates were shut up, while only that of Selm was kept open. Then many chief lords of the court enter'd the city, took down the names of the magistrates and heads of the quarters, according to which they collected the treasures, riches, furniture, stuffs, horses and mules of Chali Manfour, his courtiers, and fa-

* Son of Feridon, one of the first kings of Persia.
* So call'd from one of the sons of Feridon.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. mily; which they convey'd out of the city, and presented to Timur, who liberally distributed them among the Emirs. The inhabitants were tax'd for having their lives preserved, and the tax was regularly paid. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Isfahan, with orders to fix a garrison there, and to receive a tribute for saving the lives of the inhabitants. The Debris had orders to prepare the letters of conquest to send to Samarcand and other capitals of the kingdoms of the empire of Timur. The Mirza Omar Cheih, who, according to the orders given him, stated behind with the baggage, pillag'd all the rebels he cou'd meet, as well the remains of Chah Manfou's army, as the robbers of Lorestan, the Ghoul's, and the Courdes. When he had pass'd by Neubendjian, and was come to Cazeron, he receiv'd orders to stay there, and place garrisons in all those countries, and make regulations according to the laws of the Moguls, which he accordingly executed with applause. Some days after he had orders to come to court, at Chiraz, where he had the honor to salute the emperor.

The princes of the family of Muzaffer, having no place to retire to, where Timur cou'd not come at 'em, resolv'd in good earnest to submit. Chah Yahia departed from Yezd with his sons, and the Sultan Ahmed of Kirman, to come to court. They made presents to the emperor of precious stones, horses, mules, tents, pavilions, and all sorts of curiosities. The Sultan Mehdi, son of Chahchuja, and Sultan Gudmender, son of Chah Manfou, were in Chiraz. Timur

* Inhabitants of the mountains of Malemis Chel and Camaron.
* A town of Far, long. 37. lat. 39.

with
with the princes his sons, the great Emirs and Nevians, spent a month in feasts and diversions; in which musicians played upon organs and harps; and red wine of Chiraz was presented in gold cups by the most beautiful virgins in the city. The Sultan Aben Issac, son of Chalchuja, also came to court from Scirjan, and made presents to Timur, who employ'd himself in regulatig the kingdom of Persia, and the affairs of the people; that under the shadow of his laws they might enjoy peace, of which continual wars and tyranny had deprived them: he ease'd their extraordinary taxes, as a prince of moderation and equity ought to do. He appointed governor of the kingdom of Fars, which is the heart of the empire, and the most full of cities, towns, and villages of any place in Asia, his dear son, Mirza Omar Cheil, who made a magnificent feast to thank the emperor, offer'd him presents on his knees, and allure'd him with an oath of his inviolable fidelity, and exactness in executing his orders.

CHAP. XXVI.

Timur seizes the princes of the house of Muzaffer, and disposes of their effects among his lieutenants.

The children and successors of Mehemet Muzaffer having made themselves masters of the provinces of Persia and Irac, every one for himself up for sovereign, coin'd his own mony, and had public prayers read in his own name. These princes, notwithstanding their affinity, hated one another so much, that every one
made attempts on the life and estate of his brother, and let no occasion slip whereby he might pillage the country; and when any one gained advantage over another, if he gave him his life, he was sure to blind him with a hot iron; the father spair'd not the son, nor the son the father. But what was worst of all, the poor people bore the burden of these disorders, and were in a manner the tennis-ball of misfortune and misery, and groan'd under the weight of tyranny and oppression. Our conqueror applying himself to regulate the affairs of this kingdom, the Cheiks, the doctors, the Imams, and the inhabitants of Persia and Irac, presented to him petitions concerning the state of affairs, the changing of the laws and maxims of the country, and the disorders into which the perversity of the Muzafferian princes had brought 'em. The principal intent of their requests was, that Timur would no longer trust the command of two kingdoms in the hands of those tyrants; that under a milder government the Muslims might be freed from their miseries, collect their scatter'd effects, re-settle their families, and render this ruin'd once more a flourishing kingdom. In answer to these requests, Timur order'd that these princes should be seiz'd and loaded with chains, and their houses pillag'd; which was done on the twenty-third of Jumazulakhir 795. The Emir Olman sent men to Kirman to bring away the treasures of the Sultan Ahmed: the Mirza Omar Cheik fled at Chiraz, to govern the kingdom of Persia, and the emperor nam'd for his counsellors the Emir Birdibeh, Sarbouz, Mirza Omar Moard, Zirec Yacon, and Sevindighe Behader, with annual commissions, and assign'd good troops to the prince to maintain his authority. The
The emperor was accompanied by Beiran Temour, Chapaz Javalini, Meftic Aperdi, Devlet Coja, and other favorites; he gave the government of Kirman to Attecom, son of Cayaefeddin Berlas, the brother of Emir Yacon Berlas; that of Yerd to Temoune Coutchin, and that of ABreecouh to Lalim Coutchin. He sent troops to besiege the town of Seirdgian, of which Gouderz was governor for Sultan Abou Ishae, grandson of Chahchuja. The strength of this place, situate on the top of a high mountain, had inspir'd this governor with the thoughts of fortifying it, and living independent.

At this time Timur sent to Samarcand the prince Chehebi, whose eyes had been put out by Chahchuja his father, and Zein Elabeeddin, who had been us'd in the same manner by Chah Mansour; and assign'd for their subsistence some of the best ground of that city, that they might spend the remainder of their lives with pleasure under the shadow of his clemency. In these retreats there are pleasures which the ambitious never taste. All the men of learning, and the artificers of Fars and Irac, abandon'd their country, and went to dwell at Samarcand. Timur gave the government of the little kingdom of Lorellan to the Atabeec Pir Ahmed, with letters patent seal'd with the seal of his red hand. Thus Pir Ahmed return'd to his ancient residence with near two thousand families, whom Chah Mansour had pillag'd, and constrain'd to retire to Chiraz; and this old Atabeec began to govern the country of Malemir, as his ancestors had done before.

* The Mogul emperors make their hand red, and imprint it on their patrons as a seal.

* The same as Lorellan; and different from Malemir Chot.
CHAP. XXVII.

Timur marches to the kingdom of Iran Agemi, or Hissana.

Timur departed from Chiraz for Isphahan the twenty-seventh of Jumâ al-Filbeh 793, hunting and destroying the game, which abounds in that country, all the way. He encamp'd at Comcha, after twelve days march, at which place he issu'd out that famous order, so much desired by the people, and so remarkable in history, that the princes of the house of Muzaffer should be put to death, which was done with rigor, according to the laws of Genghis Can, to the great satisfaction of all the subjects of this kingdom. All the males of this house, who were then at Yezd and Kirman, were put to death by the governors of these countries, that the people might be deliver'd from the fear of their violence and tyranny.

Timur decamp'd from Comcha, and arriv'd at Isphahan the sixth of Regeb 793. Mirza Muhimâr Sultan went to meet him, gave him a handsome entertainment, and offer'd presents worthy of the greatest emperors; he executed his commissions very faithfully, which prov'd of service to him for the advancement of his fortune. Timur laid five days at Isphahan in the palace of Nanchidghan, and departed thence on the fifteenth of Regeb. He permit't Mirza Charoe to go and meet the queen his mother.

* A village near Isphahan.  

Seral
The history of Timur-Bec.

Serai Mule Camm, taking the road to the village of Dehi Alavi.

Timur in two days' march arrived at Gerbadean, and next night went to the village of Ancouan, the inhabitants of which, being atheists, had fortified themselves in the caverns of rocks. A stratagem was made use of to subdue 'em; all the troops were employed in digging rivulets along the mountains where there were rivers or springs, and to break down the banks, that all the waters might flow at once like torrents into the caverns where these miscreants were, and drown 'em presently if they did not make haste out. This design succeeded; the waters fell on a sudden into these cavities, and cast these miserable people into the fires of a dark eternity; and their goods were pillaged by the soldiers. Timur passed the night at Ancouan, and departed the thirtieth of Regen in the morning, and encamped in the plain of Perahan, where a general hunting was ordered; all the country was surrounded, and abundance of antelopes and wild-fowls were killed. The empresses, Serai Mule Camm, and Touman Aga; the princess Canzade, and the other wives of Timur's sons, partook of the diversions of this chase. As they had left their baggage to come the more easily to court, they joined the emperor at this place, congratulated him on his conquests and return, sprinkled on him precious stones, and made presents to him.

The third of the moon Schaban, Timur decamped and went down to the meadow of Foul Careen, where he layed three days; he took horse on the fifth, and encamped the eighth at Schaban in the agreeable plain of Hamadan. The Mirza Mirancha left the baggage on the road, to come to the court of the emperor his father,
The history of Timur-Bec.

BOOK III.

father. The Emir Gchancha Behader, Chamfoddin Abbas, Hadgi Mamoutcha, and Ouchcara Behader, who staid with the baggage and main-body, took the road to Sultanis, with the troops they commanded, and had the honor to salute Timur at Hamadan. Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was left behind at Isphahan, join'd the court at this place; and the two empresses, Serai Mule Canum and Tonnam Aga, to divert the court, gave Timur a magnificent feast in this agreeable place.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Timur invests the Mirza Miran Chab in the kingdom of Hulacou Can.

The emperor being willing to recompense the Mirza Miran Chab for his services, gave him the sovereignty of the kingdoms of Azerbijana, Rei, Derbend Baco, Chirvan, and Ghilan, with their dependencies, and the adjacent countries as far as Roum or Anatolia, subject to the Ottomans. This Mirza gave Timur an entertainment in Hamadan, becoming the greatness of the gift he had receiv'd; he made him considerable presents of rarities which he had got at Tauris, Sultanis, and other places where he had staid. They spent several days in pleasures and diversions, and were entertain'd with consorts of music on all sorts of instruments. After the feast, the emperor departed from Hamadan on the thirteenth of Schaban 795, sending before him the Mirza Gchancha towards Coulighi: he order'd

Aug. 7.
1393.
The history of Timur-Bec.

a hunting, and went to encamp in the meadow of Lima Courouc. On the next day the circle was made, and the game kill'd. The court then went to Tounaton, and laid there five days, and on the sixth having display'd the standard for departure, there was another hunting. The Emirs of both wings form'd the great circle as usual, surrounding all the plains of Bech Parmac. From thence they went to encamp in the meadow of Ghul Loudja; the next day at Dalper, in the plain of Gonbedce, where they made entertainments. The nineteenth of Schaban they departed, and the court went to encamp four leagues from thence. The Mirza Miranche being arriv'd at the plain of Coulaghi, sent an express to Timur, to acquaint him that the robber Sarce Mehemet Turcoman had fortify'd himself in the mountains with his family, and getting together a company of seditious people, had set himself up for sovereign.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur vanquishes the Turcoman Hachan Sarce.

TIMUR had no sooner receiv'd this advice from the Mirza, than passing by the castle of Sagaloun, he came to Coulaghi in two nights march. Being at the plain of Gehanaver, he plac'd a strict guard in all the ways whereby

* A town near Humaid in Coulefian.
* A village of Coulefian.
* Town of the country of Coudees.
* Town of Coudefian, long. 80° 45'. lat. 35° 30'.
the enemy might get away. These robbers had a fortress nam'd Habachi, as well as other defiles of mountains, wherein the ways were extreme rugged and narrow: in these places the Turcomans had retrench'd themselves, placing troops in the narrow passages, whom our army attacked. Our soldiers got up to the very top of the mountain, from whence they brought away a great many sheep and cattle. Berat Goja Kukeltach on this occasion gave marks of extraordinary valor; and ascending the mountain by very difficult ways, fought with extreme courage, and made himself admired by all the army: but he was at length unfortunately slain by a poison'd arrow, to the great regret of Timur and all the Emirs. The Cheik Hadji son of Comari, who ascended the mountain with him, was also wounded in the thigh, and contrived to return to the camp, where he died of his wound. The great men willingly sacrificed their lives to their honor and reputation. The Turcomans observing the resoluteness of our soldiers, fled the same night by the by-ways and woods of the mountain Aourman, leaving their baggage behind them: our men pursued them as far as the other mountains, bringing away a great number of horses, mules, sheep and other cattle. The Cheik Temour Behader at the head of a body of horse, pursued the fugitives with so much expedition, that he overtook them, and slew a vast number of them. Our men made themselves masters of the place they had fortified, which was fit for the summerseason.

There was another place in these quarters, in which a great number of Guebres* were got together.

* Adorers of fire, and professing the religion of the ancient Persians. There are to this day a great many of them in the east, particularly in India.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Together. Timur order'd 'em to make them-chap.39.

felse matters of this place, and to ruin it. The

liege lifted some time; but being at length ta-

ken, it was reduc'd to a heap of rubbish, and

all those who were in the place exterminated.
The emperor, with the empress, and the princes

his sons, return'd to the plain of Coulagh:

on the tenth of Ramadan he decamp'd to return Aug. 30.

home, and the next morning join'd the baggage

on the banks of the river Afsar. He staid one

two days at every encampment in these quar-
ters, to consult of the means to exterminate the

robbers in each place. He sent Mirza Miran-

cha to besiege Sârse Courgan 1, and Ouchcara

had orders to besiege Caresron 2; they assaul-
ted these places with so much fury, that they

took and ruin'd 'em, after having put to the

lword the soldiers who were in 'em; and then

return'd victorious to the imperial camp.

Timur order'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan to go to

to the Derbend 3 of Courdillan, to reduce that

country, and destroy the robbers of these places,

who plunder'd passengers at their pleasure. The

Mirza departed to obey this order, tho' he had

made preparations for a magnificent entertain-

ment, which he design'd to give the court.

After the court departed for Achioula 4, where

they spent the month of Ramadan in falling

and prayer. The fif't of Chawal, after the fast

was over, Timur gave great alms, and cele-

brated the Bâram, that is, the paller of the

Mussulmans. Two days after, the great Mufti

Noureddin Abderrahman Esterami, famous for

1 caller in Courdillan.

2 Or Derme Cap, bongage, a narrow passage like the

Porte Caliprin.

3 A town near Arbelle in Courdillan.
his learning, came from Bagdat as ambassador from the Sultan Ahmed Gelair: Timur receiv'd him handsomely, as he was wont to do learned men, and noted doctors; he gave him audience, the subject of his embassy being, that the Sultan sincerely submitted to the emperor; but being surpriz'd at the approach of the great Timur, he dar'd not come to cast himself at his feet; that he knew himself not powerful enough to make any resistance; and moreover that his intention was not to oppose him, nor to sustain a siege. The ambassador made his presents, which consist'd of nine of each sort; among which were Marmens, a kind of large deer, leopards, Arabian horses with saddles of gold; and then he went back. Timur did not receive these presents after his usual kind manner, because he suspected the sincerity of Sultan Ahmed, seeing the prayers were not read, nor the mony coin'd in Timur's name, at Bagdad. Nevertheless he honor'd the Mufri Cheik Nourreddin, because of his particular merit, which recommend'd him more than his embassy; he gave him a very rich vest, a horse of great price, and silvermony, and sent him back to his master without any positive answer.
CHAP. XXX.

Timur Marches to Bagdad.

After Timur had dismiss'd the ambassador of Sultan Ahmed Gelair, he resolved to besiege Bagdad. He order'd Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir to return to Sultania with the baggage, and the empresses and ladies; and the soldiers to provide themselves with two bottles of water a-piece. On the thirteenth of Chawal 795, Timur took the road to Bagdad: he march'd day and night to encamp at Yan Boulac; and after three days he went before as a scout; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Cours Courgan; the next morning he met Mehemet, prince of the Turcooms, whom he attack'd at the head of a hundred horse, and routed him; the army which came after pillag'd all his subjects who dwelt in Cherezour. At this place Timur made choice of a number of brave soldiers, at whose head he march'd in a litter thro' narrow passages between

* Capital of Iraq Arabi, seat of the Calilis, on the Tigris, long. 39. lat. 33. 27. fifteen leagues from the ancient Babylon. It was built by Aboufakr Almanfur, second Calif of the house of the Abbasides, A.D. 757.

* A Mogul prince; for Bagdad remain'd in the hands of the Moguls from 756 when Balcos Cai, grandson of Genghis Can, new Muhammad Billah, last of the Abbasides Calilis, and captured the Calilis which had continu'd six hundred years.

* Village near Arbelia in Courdilan.

* A town in Courdilan, near Cherezour.

* A city of Courdilan, frontier of Courdilan, long. 83. lat. 34. 30.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. steep mountains, which were very difficult to get thro'. He order'd 'em to light the Machilalets, a sort of great torches, by which means he made expedition, flapping no where on the road, so that the army cou'd scarce follow him. When he was at Ibrahim Lie', he enquir'd of the inhabitants whether they had sent pigeons to Bagdad to give advice of his arrival. They told him that as soon as they perceived the dust of his army, they had done so. Timur immediately caus'd another pigeon to be brought; and making the same men write a billet, the contents of which were, that the dust they had perceived at a distance was caus'd by the Turcomans, who fled to avoid Timur, they tied this letter under the wing of the pigeon, which they call into the air. The bird immediately fled to its pigeon-house at Bagdad: it was brought to Soltan Ahmed, who on this advice gain'd fresh courage. Nevertheless he did not entirely confide in this last billet; for on receipt of the first he had caus'd his furniture to be carry'd to the other side of the Tigris.

Timur having at the tomb of the Saxon pray'd to God for victory, and distributed much alms to the poor who resided there, he went before him as a scout of man Behader, and departed himself at the head of the army: he went twenty seven leagues, each of which were three measur'd miles, without getting off his horse; and on the twenty first of Chawal 795, in the

Of the 1395.

* A place of devotion, twenty seven leagues from Bagdad.

† This practice is common in the East. They carry pigeons from their pigeon-houses to the place from whence they would have advice. These birds, when for twenty, immediately fly to their nests, by which means news is brought to a very distant country in a short time.
morning, arriv'd at Bagdad. The Sultan had Chap.10. already cross'd the Tigris, and having broken the bridge, and sunk the boats, resolve'd to stay on the other side, till our army arriv'd, and he was perceiv'd by our men. He had no sooner heard the noise of our trumpets, and the cries of our soldiers, than he fled out of the kingdom by the way of Hille. Our troops, who cover'd near two leagues of ground nigh the city, sail themselves into the water with a great cry, and pass'd the Tigris notwithstanding its rapidity. Mehemet Azad, who was one of 'em, having found the royal galley of the Sultan, to which he had given the name of Chans, that is, the sun, brought it to Bagdad, and Timur cross'd the river in it. The Mirza Mirchana, at the head of the army, cross'd the Tigris, over against Caryatula Cab, below the city. Thus the Tartar troops having pass'd the Tigris, enter'd Iraq Arabi; like armies of pavement or grass-hoppers, they cover'd the fields, pillaging on all sides, and endeavoring to find the enemy, that they might block up his way. The inhabitants of Bagdad were as much surpriz'd to see so great a number of Zagartsians swim over their river, as their neighbours the Babylians were formerly at the confusion of languages; and biting their fingers in token of admiration, they were satisfy'd that the progress of Timur, and the courage of his soldiers, were not to be equal'd by those of other potentates of the

* Otherwise Hille: Benimesaid, a town of Iraq Arabi, between Bagdad and Corda, in the land of Babel or Babylon; long. 79.45. lat. 31.50. There are three other towns of the same name, one near Abouca in Condratan, another near Mount, and the other between Vales and Baffa.

* The village of the eagle, the suburb of Bagdad.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. earth: but that this conqueror was guided by the hand of God, and that his victories were the immediate work of heaven. Our prince wou'd himself pursue Sultan Ahmed, accompany'd by the princes his sons and the Emirs: he march'd by Sefir; and being arriv'd at Carbatou, Ahbadge Aglen, the Nevians, the generals and his chief couriers, besought him to return to Bagdad to repose himself, while they pursu'd the enemy, and endeavor'd to seize the Sultan, and bring him to him with his hands and feet bound. Timur knowing their sincerity, return'd to Bagdad, where he staid in the palace of Sultan Ahmed, whose treasures which he had left fell into the hands of the officers of Timur's household. The Emirs at the head of the troops march'd all the day and the following night, and next morning arriv'd at the Euphrates, which Sultan Ahmed had pass'd in the night, having broke the bridge, and sunk the boats: he had taken the road of Damascus by the way of Kerbela; on advice of which Olman Behader told the other Emirs that he thought it proper to swim over the river, and pursue the Sultan. The other Emirs oppos'd it, saying it was better to go along the bank till they should come to a place where the army might pass without any risk. This proposal was follow'd, and they march'd along the banks till they found four empty vessels. Our Emirs em-

1 A town three leagues from Bagdad, between that and Cufa. The pilgrims of Mecca going from Bagdad take up their lodgings here. A little river, call'd the river of Sefir, which falls into the Euphrates, runs by it.

2 Village in true Arabic, seven leagues from Sefir.

3 A plain, long 77, lat. 32, 70, on the Euphrates, where Ismael Hulain, grandson of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by Yazde, son of Hasira, sultan of the Califs of the house of Omniah.
back'd, and made their horses cross the water, while they held 'em on the sides of the vessels: the whole army did the same, and march'd with such expedition, that they overtook the Sultan's baggage; they seiz'd on his furniture, tents, mony, buff's, and whatever fear had made him leave behind him; by which means he lost all his goods. The Mirza Miracha arriv'd at Hilt, where he sent his troops in pursuit of Sultan Ahmed. Albudge Agien, prince of the house of Touchi, Gelalhamid, Osman Behader, Cheik Aflan, Seid Coja son of Cheik Ali Behader, and other Emirs of Toma, in all forty-five, overtook Sultan Ahmed in the plain of Kerbela on the twenty-second of Chawal.

These Emirs were oblig'd to pursue him themselves, because the horses of the common soldiers were so fatigu'd, that they were constrain'd to be left behind to rest themselves. The Sultan had with him near two thousand horse, two hundred of whom turn'd upon our Emirs sword in hand. The Emirs got off their horses, and let fly their arrows on the enemy, by which means they repuls'd 'em: then they remounted their horses to pursue 'em; but they sac'd about again and attack'd the Emirs, who got off their horses and took to their arrows, on which the enemy fled once more. Ours pursu'd 'em again; but they return'd to the charge a third time with so much fury, that the Emirs had not time to dismount: thus they fought with extreme vigor, and many were kill'd on each side. Osman Almas did wonders; but he was wound-ed in the hand with a sword. At length the enemy were repuls'd, whereupon our men seiz'd on a great quantity of spoils, and pursu'd 'em no longer.
That day being extreme hot, and the plain of Kerbela affording no water, our men expected to perish by thirst. Aibadge Aglen and Gelahamid sent men to seek for water, who could get no more than two pots full; Aibadge drank one of them without quenching his thirst; wherefore he said to Gelahamid, "I shall certainly die with thirst, if you don't give me the pot which is your portion." The Emir Gelal answer'd, "I have heard it told the emperor, that a certain Persian travelling with an Arabian, the like misfortune which we now suffer happen'd to them in a desert. The Arabian had a little water left; on which the Persian said, I know the generosity of the Arabians is so noted, that it hath pass'd into a proverb: you will discover a great proof of it, if you will give me the cup of water you have left. The Arabian answer'd him, If I give you my water, I must die of thirst; nevertheless necessity shall not make me transgress the maxims of the Arabians; for I prefer a good name to life. I had rather run the hazard of dying than let my action put a stop to the celebrating of the virtue of my countrymen. Then the Arabian gave his water to the Persian, who by this means pass'd the desert, and gave occasion to every one to praise the extraordinary charity of the Arabians." The Emir Gelal after having related this story, said to Aibadge, "I will imitate the Arabian in giving you my portion of water; but on condition that you mention this charity to the princes of the house of Touchi, and to their subjects, so that the fame of my action may bring credit to the descendents of Zagatai Can, one of whom I have the honor to be; moreover, that when you arrive at the imperial camp, you shall..."
shall inform the emperor of what I have done, that this action may have a place in history, and be a monument of my virtue to all our descendants."

Albadege having consented to these conditions, Gelal refus'd to die; wherefore he gave his water to Albadege, who quench'd his thirst. Yet Gelal did not die, God permitting him to escape for this good action. They then departed with the rest of the Emirs, and arriv'd at Maccabhad near the Euphrates, where Hatem son of Ali was slain. Every one kiss'd the gate of the holy place, and paid his devotions, according to the custom of the Mahometan pilgrims. The brave Emirs gain'd great advantages over the enemies, and took prisoner Aladdole son of Sultan Ahmed, and some others of his children, as likewise his wives and domestics, of whom the Sultan rather chose to be depriv'd, than expose himself to the fury of our Emirs. Thus the Sultan cleap'd with a few of his men, and the Emirs return'd to court enrich'd with slaves and spoils.

Albadege Aglen and the Emir Gelal related what had pass'd about the water; which extremely pleas'd Timur, who was naturally generous. This monarch extoll'd the great wisdom of the Emir Hamid father of Gelal, and pray'd for the repose of his soul: he then applaud'd Gelal, telling him that he must acknowledge he had many times offer'd to sacrifice his life to his service, but that this action of exposing himself to a certain death by giving the water to Albadege to preserve his life, and by this means to gain renown to the Zagatafans, more feallibly touch'd him than all his former actions. Timur therefore made great presents to Gelal, who answer'd 'em with an unlimited obedience.
The history of Timur-Bek.

C H A P. XXXI.

Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.

T H E Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who before the expedition to Bagdad was gone against the Courdes, enter'd their mountains, and destroy'd a great number of these robbers; some of whom he had reduc'd to obedience, and precipitated from the tops of the mountains others who were most rebellious, and had fortify'd themselves on the ridge of a high mountain. This severity was not useless, for since that time one or two men may travel securely in their great roads, whereas before large caravans, accompany'd by a hundred archers, were oblig'd to pass thro' by-ways; as I myself can witness, having gone thro' them several times. The young prince having successfully finish'd this expedition, return'd to court by Derbend Tacli Ca

* A defile of mountains, where one must pass under an arch set in the rock, more than five hundred paces.
* A town of True Arabic, on the Tigris, long. 32°. 46°. lat. 32°. 10°.
* A town near the place where the Tigris and Euphrates fall into the Persian gulf, long. 24°. lat. 32°, call'd also Bathia.

laddo
laddole should be transported to Samarqand, with all the learned men of Bagdad; and the masters of arts and sciences; as also the famous Coja Abdulrader, author of the book of Edwaris, that is, the several tones in music. Letters of conquest were sent to Samarcand, Cachgar, Constantinople, Czezen, Azerbaijan, Persia, Iraq, Corais, Zabulio, Mazarin, Fabarellan, and other kingdoms and cities, that on this good news rejoicings might be made everywhere for the emperor's victory.

Timur spent two months at Bagdad in diversions, in gilded palaces, and pleasure houses on the bank of the Tigris; being entirely satisfied with the progress of his campaign, and the other conquests his subjects continued to make with so much glory. The officers of justice by his orders seized all the wines they found in Bagdad, and called on into the Tigris: and the inhabitants of Bagdad paid to the commissaries the accustomed tribute for the preservation of their lives.

C H A P. XXXII.

Timur sends an ambassador to the Sultan Barco in Egypt.

As Timur's chief study and ambition was to secure the roads from robbers, to regulate the affairs of kingdoms, and give peace to the people, he thought proper to send the Cheikh Savce, one of the most skilful and famous doctors of his time, in embassy to Malek Ezzaheh Barco, Sultan of Egypt and Syria. He ordered several noble Moguls to accompany him, and he gave him a magnificent equipage and a royal gar-
The history of Timur-Bec.

The letter which he carry'd was as follows: "The potent emperors of the house of Genghiz Can having been at war with the kings your predecessors, who oppress'd the people of Syria, and these wars having ended in a peace by the intervention of ambassadors, security and union have been establish'd between the two nations. And forasmuch as since the death of the invincible Abouaid Behader Can, there has not reign'd in the empire of Iran any sovereign prince of the race of Genghiz Can, who has regulated the affairs of the people, but on the contrary there have been governors in all the provinces of this great empire, who have set themselves up for kings, and cause'd infinite misfortunes to the people: the King of kings hath made choice of us, by a peculiar favor, to remedy these disorders, and permitted our victorious sword to conquer all the kingdoms of Iran, as far as Iraq Arabi; which borders on your dominions. We imagine that the love we owe our people requires that, because of the proximity of our two empires, a correspondence should be settl'd between us by letters, and that ambassadors should go and come mutually from one empire to the other, so that the merchants of both nations might travel with security: which will render the countries flourishing, produce plenty in the towns, and maintain the people in peace. 'Tis for this reason we have sent an ambassador to you; beseeching God to load you with his favors, if you act as becomes you. Now thanks be
The history of Timur-Bec.

"to him, who is the sole lord and master of kings, and of all the people in the universe."

C H A P. XXXIII.

The taking of the town of Tecrit.

After the reduction of Bagdad, the merchants and travellers presented petitions to Timur, importing that in the neighbourhood of Bagdad there was a place call'd Tecrit, which for its strength was esteem'd impregnable, and had drawn thither a great number of robbers, who had fortify'd themselves in that rock, and when caravans pass'd by that place, pillag'd 'em, and especially those of Egypt and Syria, which were the richest of any: they likewise allure'd him that battering-rams and other machines cou'd do no harm to this place; that the inhabitants were not satisfy'd with robbing, but that they murder'd the passers; and that till this time no prince, how powerful soever, has been able to put a stop to these disorders. For these reasons Timur conceiv'd that the reduction of this place, and the ruin of these villains, would gain him a treasure of merit in the other world, and great honor even in this. He therefore order'd Burhan Aglen, Yali Souli, Gelalhamid, Chameli, and Seid Coja, to march to Tecrit, and block up the place; which they accordingly did. Timur distributed among the Emirs and soldiers the money which had been collected from the inhabitants of Bagdad for
preferring their lives; and left at that place the Emir Osman Abbas, who had been wounded in a skirmish at Kerbela, giving him for a pension a thousand Dinars Copeghi a day, which he generously said was to pay the surgeon. After this he departed from Bagdad, the twenty-fourth of Zilhadjad 795, to encamp at the tomb of Cheic Behlou, where he pray'd this Sanon to intercede with God for the victory. Timur having sent Mirza Charoc with the scouts, march'd all the following day, cross'd the Tigris, and lay on the bank of the river; the next day he arriv'd at a great lake, where he encamp'd. On the morrow he went to Anna, and the day after to Lejarma. The first of Muharram 796, he came to the town of Harbi; the following night he encamp'd at Bendafar, and the next morning he went for Ghiz Serami. In his way thither a lion being perceiv'd in the wood, Timur order'd to chase these wild beasts, which abounded in this country, for which reason the wood was surround'd, and there came out five lions, which furiously prepar'd their claws and teeth to kill the hunters, whom they fiercely attack'd; but they were receiv'd with so much dexterity and vigor, that all the five were slain at the same time, and made the prey of other beasts.

After this chase Timur departed, and the 4th of Muharram arriv'd at Tecrit. He rang'd his army in order, commanded the drum to be beat, and the great cry made. The men surround'd the place, and sapp'd the out-parts, which they overthrew. Timur order'd his tent to be fix'd near the works, to animate the soldiers. That

* A town on the Euphrates, long 76° 30', lat 34°.
Farali prince of Mundel, and the Cheif All Chapad Oirat, prince of Aribelie, came to call themselves at the feet of Timur, with many presents. Timur order'd his soldiers to enter the place notwithstanding any difficulties. This town was built on a rock near the Tigris in the reign of the Sassanians. The passages were clos'd up with mortar and stones, and it was so well forti'd, that it cou'd never be taken by force; the rock on which it was built being very high. The Emir Haflan, the governor, robb'd on the highways, not obeying any prince; but when he knew of Timur's arrival, he was afraid, and sent his younger brother to assure him of his obedience and services. Timur receiv'd him handsomely, and having made him a present of a beautiful horse and a veil, he dismiss'd him, ordering him to tell his brother Haflan, that if he came cheerfully before him, he should be well receiv'd. Haflan's brother gave him an account of all this; but this unfortunate prince resolv'd to defend himself. Our brave soldiers immediately begin'd Tecrit closely: fixing the battering-rams and machines to shoot stones, with which they ruin'd the houses of these robbers. The third day of the siege, the Emir Haflan sent his mother to Timur to intercede for him, with presents of horses and rarities. She humbly represented that Haflan well knew that he was not powerful enough to defend himself against the imperial army; but that the fear of appearing before

---

A family of the ancient Moguls.

The Tigris is called Dagez by the Arabians. To, in Persia, signifies an arrow; because the Tigris is rapid, some pretend the name of Tigris is from that etymology.

The kings of Persia of the fourth race, the last of whom, Yezidkiss, was kill'd by Osman, An. Dom. 945.
the majesty of Timur, hinder'd his coming out; that if he would pardon him, he would send his brother and sons as hostages to the court. Timur was very civil to Hallan's mother, and told her, that for her sake he would pardon her son; but that he must come out of the place, or be responsible for the death of so many persons who were in the town. These words disquieted the lady, who return'd to the town, the siege of which was continually going forward; the soldiers having already advanced under cover to the foot of the walls, and Seld Coja with his regiment having made the enemy abandon a tower in the night, and oblig'd the guards to retreat into the town. The taking of this tower facilitated the taking of all the out-works, for they were presently abandon'd. Timur's answer to Hallan troubled him so very much, that he resolved upon fighting to the last, that he might have the honor of dying (sword in hand). Timur order'd all the soldiers to assault the walls together: whereupon the Tavatchis divided the space the walls took up among the troops, and mark'd with a red furrow what each regiment should lap, and gave it 'em in writing. This distribution began with the regiments of the left wing, which was the most honorable of the two: which regiments compos'd the Toman of Kepeck Can, which had for their leader Arlian. This Toman work'd in files, and was follow'd by the regiments of the Toman of prince Charoc, who labor'd with so much earnestness, that in a short time they pierc'd the rock thirty five cubits. The regiments of the other Tomans 1 employ'd themselves in the same

1 The names of the Tomans and Heatres, as well as of their generals, are given in the original; but the French translator thought proper to name 'em, as too tedious for the reader.
manner in the places allotted 'em. By this may Chap. 55. be known the strength of the town of Fezirit, since they were oblig'd to employ at once seventy-two thousand men, the number of soldiers in Timur's army, to undermine the place.

The Emir Haflan seeing the work so far advanced, was greatly troubled; wherefore he sent to Timur, to confess his fault and demand quarter. Timur answer'd, that to obtain his request, Haflan must come out of the place. The next day he sent another man to Mirza Charoe to beg his protection, and to intercede for him. Haflan afterwards sent his brother to the same prince, to represent his despair and misery, telling him that every one in the place, and Haflan himself were firmly resolv'd to obey Timur for the future; but that the fear of appearing before him hinder'd Haflan's coming out. Charoe conducted him to Timur, who declar'd, that if Haflan did not come before him to give assurances of his repentance for his crimes, and the robberies he had committed on the high ways, with promise to abstain for the future, he would hear no more excuses; but if he did what he desir'd, he would not only pardon his crimes, but treat him according to his quality. Timur gave Haflan's brother a veil, and sent him back to the town, telling him, that if Haflan would not come, yet he might stay with him. When the two brothers came to a conference, one of 'em argu'd in this manner: "It is a long time since from one generation to another we have been sovereigns in this place, and done what we pleas'd, having no one to control us. If we shou'd now surrender, those whom we have wrongfully plunder'd, will demand justice against us; then we must not only restore what we have taken away, but shall
The history of Timur-Reck.

Book III.

"shall be punish'd, and perhaps put to death in a thankful manner. Wherefore I approve of fighting to the last drop of our blood." The robbers in the place willingly consented to this resolution, and began hostilities. This irritated Timur, who order'd the drums and kettle-drums to be beat, the trumpets to be sounded, and the great cry to be made. Part of the walls fell down, having been prop'd by large pieces of timber, which were now set on fire. The besieged repair'd this great breach, and fought like desperate men resolv'd to die. Timur order'd all the soldiers to advance together, and enter the places they had undermin'd, and where they had fix'd props, to fill 'em with small pieces of dry wood and pitch, which they accordingly did: and on the 20th of Muharram 1792, at night, they set fire to the wood and pitch. The air was darken'd by the smoke, and most part of the walls fell on a sudden; as likewise the tower which had been taken by Yace Souli; and twenty of the enemys fell with the walls. The besieged, notwithstanding the ruin of the walls, arm'd themselves with planks and great builders, and continu'd to make a defence against our men, who advance'd to the very middle of the place, where there was a furious and bloody battell; the besiegers fighting for glory, and the besieged for their liberty and lives.

Further orders were given, that the walls which were yet standing shou'd be undermin'd: the battalion where the Tomans of Allahdad and Amancha were working, was destroy'd to the very foundations, by Bedreddin. Whereupon the Emir Hasfan being terrify'd, retir'd with his soldiers to the edge of the mountain, of which they were yet masters. The brave Emir begg'd
The history of Timur-Bec.

beg'd leave upon their knees to ascend that mount-
AIN, to finish the destruction of these rash people:
but Timur answer'd 'em, that it was better to
wait the razing of the place. Some of the be-
sieged on this came out, to beseech the Emirs to
intercede only for their lives: but Timur warmly
answer'd, Let him come or not, no quarter shall
be given: for I know that by God's assistance I
shall gain the victory: I will seize the chief of
the robbers, and hinder the retreat of these
villains. The soldiers were animated by these
words of the emperor, and at length getting up
to the top of the mountain, finish'd the annih-
lation of the place. They bound the Emir Hatban and
those who accompany'd him, neck and heels, and
brought 'em to Timur, who order'd the inhabi-
tants to be separated from the soldiers, and
prohibited any one to insult 'em; but that the
soldiers shou'd be fear'd among the Tomans, and
put to death. Thus they made these robbers
luster the punishment due for their crimes, in
plundering and killing passangers. The Tavar-
chis caus'd towers to be built with their heads
for an example to others, and fix'd the following
writing on them, Thus the malefactors are punish'd.
This conquest was on the 25th of Muharram 796,
which answers to the year of the Hen. Timur
order'd that one of the walls of the place shou'd
be left entire, that posterity might wonder how
it cou'd be taken by assault and the strength of
men; and that they might remember with fear
the punishment of these robbers, and acknowl-
edg with admiration the valor of the soldiers of
so powerful a conqueror.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur continues his journey, and sends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in several kingdoms.

December.

The first of Sefer 796, Timur return'd to Harbi, which was the rendezvous of all the troops, which were sent to make inroads both before and during the siege of Tezir; and order'd a general hunting to divert the court and army, wherein they kill'd a great many wild asses and antelopes. The Mirzas and Emirs, who went with troops to make incursions in the provinces of Iraq Arabi, and even farther, to put an end to the disorderly practices of the Arabian robbers, came here to wait on the emperor: of which number was the Mirza Mehmet Sultan, who went to Valet along the banks of the Tigris; as likewise Mobacher and Argouncha, who march'd another way with their troops; and the Mirza Mirancha, who went from Hille to Basra at the head of his Emir Yadghiiar Berlas and Gelancha Yakou, who set out together; Mehemet Dervich Berlas, Cheik Ali Margoub, and Ismael Berlas, who had taken another road. All these Emirs establish'd the laws of Ghinz Cans, slew a great number of Arabians, and pillag'd their goods and horses, because they rob'd on the high roads, and hinder'd the passage of the caravans going in pilgrimage to Mecca.

They who had brought into subjection and made tributary the princes of the tribes of the furthest
furthest parts of the desert, came also to Harbi Chapt. 34. to give an account of their progress. The prince Miranche, having confin'd the government of Bassra to Melkoe Serbedai, cross'd the great river of Chat Elarab, and join'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan: and these two princes, having gloriously accomplisht their designs, destroy'd the common enemies of the empire, and executed Timur's intentions, come also to court, where they had the honor to salute his majesty. Bagdad and all Iraq Arabi being brought into subjection to Timur, this conqueror sent the following mandate to all the princes, governors, lords of provinces and towns, and even to the generals of forces, the Cheikhs of the tribes and families of the Turcomans and Ogours.

"You found these countries without a sovereig; and like players at roll, who finding the ground empty, fling their ball from one side to another at their pleasure, you have carry'd your sword wherefoever your ambition hath prompted you, and acted in an arbitrary manner: but now the case is alter'd; for you must submit to our orders, and repenting of what is past, cease to rob on the high-ways, and no longer inflame passagers, if you expect that our mercy and justice should extend as far as your states: but if you obey not this command, know that whatever happens to you for the future in consequence of this refusall, will be thro' your own fault, and you will have none to accuse but your fuses." Some who receiv'd this order, on serious consideration, came to call themselves at Timur's feet,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. whom he regarded favorably, and gave them employments in their own countries according to their merit and birth; but the others who continued in rebellion, by their disobedience brought on themselves the wrath of God, and consequently all the disasters which happen to the most wretched; and these men were at last exterminated, as we shall see hereafter. In the mean while Emir Ofman Abbas came from Bagdad with the baggage, and join’d the imperial camp at Harbi.

CHAP. XXXV.

Timur marches to Diarbekir.

When Timur had reduc’d Irac Arabi, he resolve’d to march to the country of Diarbekir, having first committed the government of Bagdad to Coja Mafoud Sebzuari, and order’d him to maintain peace among the inhabitants; to inform himself of the condition of the poor and infirm; and to shew respect to the Cherifs, the descendents of Mahomet, as well as to the doctors and men of letters; and even to feed the poor as far as he was able. Then he departed for Diarbekir, sending the Mirza Mirancha with many Emirs and troops to conquer other places situate on the Tigris. Timur caus’d a bridge of boats to be built over this river, which he pass’d, and order’d a rumor to be given out, that he was on his return home, that

* The form as Amed; only that Diarbekir takes in both the town and country; whereas Amed is only the town: it is situate on the Tigris, long. 74. lat. 38.
The history of Turim-Bec.

the enemies might be left on their guard. He Chap. 35. chose two men out of every ten in all his army, leaving the rest and the baggage with Osman Behader, ordering him to march slowly; he also gave to Ardechir Tarsachi, the lieutenant-general of his troops, with the care of his own herd, as well as of proper places and fit ground to encamp in. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan, Emir Cayafeddin Tercan, and Oucheura Behader, had orders to stay with the baggage, and to take care of it, in conjunction with the commander. Timur embark'd with the greatest diligence: and when he had pass'd by Tooue, 1 and was got to Carcou, 2 the inhabitants came out to meet him with great ceremony, and sincere marks of respect and obedience: and he gave this place, as a lordship for ever, to Emir Ali Mouseli. Then Czal Mirali Qarat, Pirali, and Gehanghir, ran to call themselves at the emperor's feet, to allure him of their submission; as did the princes of all these quarters, the governors of towns, especially the prince of Altoun Cuple: he gave them a handsom reception, and made them presents of belts of gold, magnificent veils, gold, precious stones, and fruits for their wives and daughters.

Timur departed on the 4th of Sefer 796, for Arbelle 3, the prince of which, Cheikh Ali, paid his devoirs to him, and treated him magnificently, with all his court. The next day Timur went to encamp on the bank of the river Cuma-

---

1 A town in Meopotamia near Harran.
2 A town of Meopotamia, long. 75. 25. lat. 33. 25.
3 A town of Meopotamia between Mousel and Tarsin, dependent of Chebron, famous for the battle between Alexander and Darius, long. 77. 10. lat. 35. 50.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. cxxv: two days after he swam over, and arrived at Mouchiel, where he devoutly visited the tombs of the prophets Jonas and Georges, recommending himself to their prayers; he gave ten thousand Dinars to each tomb, for the building of magnificent domes over their illustrious bodies: he also distributed much alms among the poor.

In the mean time Mirza Miranchea arriv'd, after having conquer'd the country and towns situate on the Tigris, and reduce'd many people to the obedience of Timur, whom he had the honor to salute at Mouchiel. Yarali, prince of this place, gave a sumptuous banquet to Timur and all the court; at which some one heard this poor prince say, when the victims was (cry'd up to Timur, "Is not this the history of Solomon and the psalmire?"") He then offer'd his presents on his knees.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Timur marches to Edessa.

TIMUR departed from Mouchiel for Rhiza or Edessa, taking Yarali prince of that place for his guide. The Emirs of Tomans rang'd the army in order, advancing by squa-
HISTORY OF TIMOUR-BEC,
Known by the Name of
Tamerlain the Great,
Emperor of the
MOGULS and TARTARS:
BEING
An historical JOURNAL of his Conquests in Asia and Europe.

Written in Persian by CHIRSERODEN ALL, Native of Bokh, his Contempory.
Translated into French by the late Monsieur Petit de la Croix, Arabic Professor in the Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Oriental Languages:
With historical Notes and Maps.
Now faithfully render'd into English.

In Two Volumes.

The history of Timur-Bec.

While they were on their march, Sultan Aisa, prince of Mervin, sent an express to meet Timur, to offer him his services. Whereupon, at the end of Sefer 796, Timur being near Mervin, sent to this prince to come with expedition to join his army, because he had a design to enter Syria and attack Egypt. Timur having passed this place, encamp'd at Rafelain, from whence he sent all the army to pillage the enemy's country. The right wing plunder'd the lands subject to Husein, call'd the black sheep; and the left wing the neighbouring places, from whence they brought away a great many horses, camels, oxen, and sheep. When they were return'd loaded with spoils, they decamp'd and march'd to Edessa; the prince of which place, nam'd Ghuzel, had abandon'd that city on the approach of our army, with some of the inhabitants, who took shelter with him on a high mountain. Timur sent Emirs and soldiers in search of 'em, who pillag'd 'em, and took 'em prisoners. Then Timur, accompany'd by the princes his sons, the Nevians, and principal Emirs, made his entry into the city of Edessa, all the houses of which were built with stone. This place is said to have been built by Nemroth; and the Mahometans believe that Abraham was cast into the furnace here, the fountain which sprong up in the midst of the fire to quench it, being now to be seen; and round about the fountain the place is black with smoke. Timur and all his court were overjoy'd to see the remains of this miracle, tho they already believ'd it true, by the light of faith. They bath'd in this foun-

* A town of Mesopotamia, long. 74. lat. 37. 16.
* A town of Mesopotamia, where are several springs, from whence the Gabour rises.
Timur spent nineteen days in this city in plays and entertainments, giving largesses to the warriors who had exposed themselves to the greatest dangers for his service. Juncid, a Turcoman prince, had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in this place, whereby he obtained the lives of himself, his family, children, and subjects. The prince of Hafni Keita had the same honor; for he submitted to Timur, and brought him the keys of his town; he therefore met with a kind reception. The Sultan Ali prince of Meryn, refused to come to court notwithstanding his promise: upon which Timur thinking it not prudent that a rebel should be left in the midst of his dominions, return'd to Meryn the twenty-sixth of Rabilevel 796. He met the Sultan Ali prince of Arzine, who call'd himself at his feet, and offer'd his service, with magnificent presents. The prince of Battran did the same, and was receiv'd into the number of Timur's subjects. The empresses Tchelpan Mule Aga, and Ditchadaga, who had been thirty-five days absent from court, and had follow'd the baggage, join'd Timur on the top of a hill. The baggage also arriv'd, having pass'd by Meryn. Timur rang'd his army for bazzel, and continu'd his march: he encamp'd at Tchumlic, seven leagues from Meryn, where Malek Azzeddin prince of Gezire had the ho-

---

* Town on the Tigris in Mesopotamia, long. 74. 26. lat. 37. 20.
* Town of Courdisian.
* Town and river which falls into the Tigris, in Courdisian.
* A town in Mesopotamia on the Tigris, long. 75. 30. lat. 37. also call'd Gezireh Ber Omar.
The history of Timur-Bec.

nor to salute him, making great presents, and Chaps.7:
submitting to pay tribute. Timur receiv'd him
courteously, and permitted him to return home.
The Sultan Asiā had no sooner learnt that the
emperor was on his march to Mardin, than he
came out of that place, to call himself at his
feet, with presents of fine horses, mules, and
other curiosities, nine of each sort. He was
presented to Timur on the twenty-eighth of Ra-
būlevol, by the great Emirs: the emperor de-
manded the cause of his unwillingness to come
before him; on which he beg'd pardon for his
fault. Timur was willing to pardon him; and
to comfort him, gave him a veil. Then he de-
parted from that place, and went to encamp at
the foot of the mountain Mardin.

C H A P. XXXVII.

Death of Mirza Omar-Chick, Timur's son.

T H E Mirza Omar-Chick, who among all
his royal virtues posses'd a supreme degree
of valor and intrepidity, being the head-gen-
eral of the army under Timur, during the year
that he was in the country of Fars, had made
himself master of all the provinces and places,
which were not subjected to Timur while he
march'd thro that country; of which number
were the fortresses of Estacar-Perce, and Chehr-i-
ari Ghermezir. He then went into the out-parts
of Seirjan, which was besieged by many Emirs,
who had not yet taken it. But when Timur
took up a resolution to make war in Syria and
Egypt, and had march'd to Diarbekir, he sent
orders to Mirza Omar-Chick to return to court:

which
which orders the Mirza receiv'd while he was besieging Seirjan: yet he did not wait till the reduction of the place, but immediately departed, leaving Aidecou Erlas, with Chah Chahan governor of Siflan, and Pirali Selduz, to continue the siege. The Mirza being on his return to Chirza, equip'd himself for his journey, leaving Seyundingic to govern the kingdom of Persia in his absence. This Emir rebuilt the fortres of Ca-
header, ruin'd by Chaehuia, while the Mirza with his guards took the road to Chouleflan. He pass'd by the country of the Courdes, and arriv'd at a little fort nam'd Cormaton, inha-
bited by a small number of men. The Mirza got upon an eminence to view the place, where he was shoc with an arrow in the Vena-Cava, which kill'd him on the spot. This unforeseen accident had almost made the Mirza Pir Meber-
met, and those who accompany'd him, despair, so that they even wish'd their own deaths, but who can escape when fate calls? This misfort-
une happen'd in the midst of winter in the month of Rabinlevel, 796, which answers to the year of the Hen.; the Mirza being but forty years old. After the soldiers had bitterly lamented the death of their prince, they destroy'd with fire and sword all the living creatures they cou'd find in the place, which they raz'd.

When the news of this misfortune came to the imperial camp, which was without the town of Mardin, every one was in so great a confirma-
tion, that no one dur'd reveal it; yet as it was improper to keep it secret, after different resolu-
tions they agreed to tell it to the emperor; which they did in his closet, with many sighs and tears. Timur heard all this without being mov'd, only anwering in the words of the Al-
coran, *We belong to God, and must return to him.*
Then he gave the kingdom of Fars to Mirza Pir Chap. 17. Mehemet son of the deceased, tho' he was but sixteen years old; and ordered Ouuchara Behader to take care that the corps of the deceased Mirza shou'd be carry'd to Chiraz by the Emirs, and that he shou'd accompany 'em. Ouuchara Behader at his arrival at Comatoe signify'd these orders to the Emirs Birdi Bei, and Ziroc Yacou, who with their regiments return'd to the camp. And the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs of the court of the deceased, as also the Emir Ouuchara and others, march'd in ceremony from Comatoe to Chiraz with the corps, which was there laid under a dome. Some time after the princesles Sevindic Cotluck Aga, Bei Mule Aga, and Melket Aga, the wives of the deceased, with his little son the Mirza Eskender, carry'd the body to Kekh, where he was inter'd in a mausoleum built by the emperor his father. The cause of this translation was, that Timur had erected at Kekh an edifice with several domes, which he design'd for the burying-place of the princes of his houseth. This fine piece of building was on the south of the tombs of Sultan Chamieddin Kelar, and the Emir Tragai, Timur's father; and had on the right and left sepulchres, which the prince had erected, as well for the Mirza Gehanghir, for whom this was principally design'd, as for his other children. God, being willing to honor Timur not only in his life, but also after his death, inspir'd in sincere a love for him in the great Emirs, who seconded him in all his enterprises, that they all cou'd their burying-places to be erected near this sumptuous monument, according to their quality and birth; and wherever they died, they were, according to their last wills, transported to this place, to testify to posterity the great
great love they had for their prince. The Emir Acheouga bore so great a reverence to him, that wherever he sat or lay, he never turn’d his back towards the place where Timur was, and his feet were always stretch’d out that way. All these demonstrations of respect and love in Timur’s officers, were not only proofs of his merit, but also mark’d out something divine, which was granted to him above other men.

When the Sultan Aifs, prince of Mardin, came to cast himself at Timur’s feet, he submitted to pay the tribute usually impo’d on towns which are taken: upon which the commissaries went into the place to receive these taxes, as did the soldiers to buy what they had occasion for. But a company of young men, who were got together, insulted the soldiers; of which Timur being inform’d, he order’d the Sultan Aifs to come before him, of whom he demanded the cause of this action: and by several questions put to him, they found, that at his coming out of the town he had charg’d his brother and subjects not to deliver up their arms, or surrender the place; and what was found most criminal in his conduct was, that he had order’d ’em not to obey the commands sent to ’em in any letters about receiving a governor: for he had resolve’d to sacrifice his life for their safety. Sultan Aifs being convicted of what was alleged’d against him, orders were given to seize him, and bind him in chains: yet Timur did not think proper to besiege Mardin at that time, because there was not grass enough for the great number of horses, and winter was almost at an end.

Timur decamp’d from before Mardin the eighth of Rabyulahner 796, and march’d towards the mountains, where he encamp’d; and the next day he depart’d for Espendge. On the third
third day the Emirs being every one in their posts at the head of their regiments, there happen'd a terrible tempest: it lighten'd and thunder'd every where, and such great rains fell, that all the tents were full of water, and our men were in the utmost confusion: they cou'd not stay in the camp for fear of being drown'd: the camels as well as the mules were stuck full, and in a short time nothing cou'd be seen but the horses ears, because the soil was very soft, and caus'd much mud: they suffer'd thus many days, whereby a great many bealis were lost. The greatest part of the cavalry were oblig'd to dismount to put their tents in order; but the storm still encroaching, they were forc'd to leave all their effects, and march on foot. At length Timur with his guards, after great fatigues, got out of the ploughs, and on the tenth of Jamazin level 796, encamp'd on ground which was firm and full of graves. He immediately sent men to inform himself of the condition of the princes his sons; and these Mirzas, as well as their Emirs, with felts before them, and umbrellas on their heads, pass'd the ploughs with their Toman's: then they departed from this place for old Moulisl.

Timur had before this time sent to Sultania many presents for the princes his sons; and an Emir, who had saluted Timur at Thumlic with Malec Azzeddin prince of Gezire, was so rath and daring as to steal these curiosities, and carry 'em to Gezire. Malec Azzeddin, notwithstanding his promises to be obedient to the emperor's orders, entertain'd this robber, promise'd to protect him, and by this action declar'd himself Timur's enemy.

Timur resolvling to revenge himself on this bold fellow, sent two couriers to Malec, with orders
orders requiring him to seize the Cherek, and to send him to court in fetters, if he was desirous to obtain pardon for the fault he had committed, in protecting him; but if he refused to do this, he would bring his cavalry to Gezire, and destroy his country, fortresses, subjects, and domestics, not excepting one. Malee Azzeddin was so blinded by his adverse fortune, that trusting in the strength of his castle, and the Tigris which surrounded it, he refused to obey these orders.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Timur marches to Gezire.

March 2. On the refusal of Malee Azzeddin, Timur departed on the thirteenth of June, in level, leaving the baggage behind, and crossing the Tigris on floats; he marched all night, and at break of day, while the enemy were asleep, fell upon 'em with his troops, who pillaged all the country, took two or three fortresses, and enriched themselves with a great quantity of goods and horses.

During this confusion, Malee Azzeddin fell into the hands of one of our soldiers, who took from him many valuable pieces; and not knowing who he was, let him escape. After Timur had ravaged the town and country of Gezire, and obliged Malee to wander about the desert as a vagabond, he returned home, repaired the Tigris, and ordered that all the booty, nay even the sheep, should be conducted to Moulfi. Upon which the booty was convey'd over the Tigris in forty bales, and arrived
The history of Timur-Bec.

arriv'd at the imperial camp in ten days, and Chirp. 30.
ten nights.

C H A P. XXXIX.

Timur's second enterprise upon Mardin.

When Timur had taken Gezire, and the
fortresses of that province, he held a
council with the Emirs, and took care himself
of the regulation of the army, providing the in-
fantry with horses. So on the first of Jumazul-
lahber 796, he began his march towards Mardin,
sending the Mirza Mirancha at the head of
the vanguard. Timur in his march pillag'd the
inhabitants of the plains and mountains, and on
the twelfth came in view of Mardin with all his
army. Then tents were erected for the soldiers
to lie in, and the troops entered into the gar-
dens, where they posted themselves to advan-
tage.

The next day the princes, Emirs and soldiers
of the Tumans, Hazares and Seides, gave an affa-
ict upon the place on the noise of drums, trum-
pets, kettledrums; the great trumpeter Kerrenai,
and the terrible cry of Souron. The main-bod-
y placing their bucklers on their heads, fix'd the
ladders: and then taking their war-clubs in
their hands, and their sabres in their mouths,
they scal'd the walls with such fury, that they
made the enemy give way. They soon made
themselves masters of the town, while the be-
fee'd fled into the fortress Cough', which was

* The Cough signifies in Perfian a mountain, yet it is the
name of the fortress of Mardin in particular.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Situate on the ridge of a mountain, thinking to escape the fury of the conquerors: but our warriors closely pursu'd 'em, taking many girls and boys, besides a great many horses, mules, and camels. Then they posted themselves at the foot of the walls, with design to force the besieged, after they had repos'd themselves. There was but one way to get up to the fortress, on the top of which was a fountain sufficient to turn a mill, which falls down the rock. Many poets have describ'd the strength and advantageous situation of this fortress, and among others, Ebni Peraia, who gives it the surname of Cala Chabha, that is, the white castle. We attack'd it in the evening, while the enemy cast down abundance of stones; we desisted during night, but the next day our soldiers got upon the mountain level with the walls of the place: here they seiz'd on several of the enemy, who had hid themselves in the caverns of the mountain. The besieged observing the fury of our soldiers, and with what vigor they advanc'd, were so dismay'd, that they came with tears and groans to beg quarter; which being told Timur, he retir'd from the foot of the walls, and re-enter'd his camp. Then the besieged came out of the place with several presents, nine of a sort, among which were Turcoman horses, of an ineffable value; with large sums of money; they swore to become faithful and obedient, submitting to pay a tribute every year. The present conjunctures were very favorable to the people of Merdin, and appeas'd Timur's fury; for next day an express arriv'd from Sultania from the empress Serai Mule Camum, mother of Mirza Charoc, with advice of the birth of a son to this heir of the crown.
CHAP. XL.

Birth of the Mirza Oluc Bei.

The first of Jamazhilevel 796, which answers to the year of the Dog in the Mogul calendar, God was pleas'd to bless the Mirza Charoc with the birth of a son in the castle of Sultan, on whose countenance the splendor of the royal majesty seem'd already to appear. The astrologers took all necessary precautions to allure themselves of the moment of his nativity; and to find the point of his horoscope, that they might observe the centers of all the houses, and fix the situation of the planets and their aspects, they erected the figure of his horoscope. The house of his nativity was Leo, which has the sun for its lord, and which prognosticated the accomplishment of his desires, and his coming to the crown: the sun acquired nobilities by means of Aries in which it was at that time, which signify'd that this prince wou'd be learned, and put the sciences in practice. When this news was brought to Timur, he was so overjoy'd, that his fury was abated, and he pardon'd the ruffians which the inhabitants of Merdin had been guilty of, and even remitted the taxes they had submitted to pay. Then he gave the principality of the country to Sultan Sale, brother of Sultan Aifa. The next day the drums were beat for their departure, and Timur began his march. The roads were mark'd out for the regiments, and they march'd towards Bofri; the Mirza Mehmet Sultan took the road to Meidan; Timur march'd to Saour, being accompany'd by Mirza Charoc;
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Charoe; and the Mirza Mirancha went to Ja-

cone; the Emirs of Tumans, according to

their ranks, took also different ways. Timur,
at his arrival at the Tigris near Saoun, sent by

water the Mirza Mirancha to give necessary

orders, as to the regulation of the garrisons, and

the receiving the revenues from the places con-

quered on the river. Timur crossed the Tigris,

and encamped in a delightful meadow, where he

stayed three days with a design to return to A-

shur. But he received advice from Mehemet Sultan,

and Mirza Mirancha, that the inhabitants of the town of Carache Coja, which

is commonly called Hamed, priding themselves

in the strength of their walls, refused to come

before him to testify their obedience.

CHAP. XII.

Timur marches to Amed or Hamed, capital of

the country of Diarbekir.

TIMUR on information of the insolence

of the men of Hamed, sent thither the

Emir Gehancha; and on the 23d of Jumazylak-

her 796, march'd in person against this city,

where he arriv'd in two days and one night.
The Tigris was so shallow, that the troops

pass'd it on foot; then they encamp'd round the

walls of the town, and beleaguer'd it. The strength

of this place consists in the height of its walls,

* Amed or Hamed, Carache Coja, Diarbekir, and Car-

nun, are the same place, situate on the Tigris in Mesopotamia,

long. 74° lat. 38°.

which
The history of Timur-Bec.

which are built of free-stone, and in their thick-
ness, which is such, that two horses may pass a-
breast on 'em. On the top of this wall there is
built another, which is also of free-stone, and the
height of a man; and on both there is a terrace;
on the outside of which there is another stone-
wall with battlements. Thus in this great wall
there are two stories, so that when it rains, or
is exceeding hot or cold, the soldiers may fight
in the lowest story. Besides all this, there are
high towers distant from each other fifteen cu-
bits. In the middle of the town there are two
fountains of rock-water, with many fine gar-
dens: all which have been seen by the author.
It is reported the walls have been built four
thousand three hundred years, and that the
place has never been taken by force of arms.
Indeed the Calif Caled, son of Veld, with a
detachment of Mahometans during the first pro-
gress of religion, after having besieged it a Mahom;
long time, entered it by the common-shore, 
and made himself master of the town.

Timur on his encampment without the place,
prepared the soldiers to give the assault next
morning; and made 'em advance at break of
day with their great and little bucklers, to
dischARGE a shower of arrows into the place.
The besieged cast down abundance of stones on
our men, who nevertheless stood their ground.
Osman Behaded, who advanced foremost, fapp'd
a tower, and made a considerable breach.
Seid Coja, notwithstanding the vigorous de-
fence of the besieged, made a second breach.
Argouncha did the same, and first entered the
town, getting on the top of a tower, where he

As likewise by the French translator.

VOL. I. H h gave
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. gave marks of a singular valor. The other Emirs of Tomam also behav'd themselves nobly, every one scaling the walls by different ways. Thus this place, which no conqueror had been able to take in four thousand years before, was carry'd in less than three days by the valor of Timur's soldiers, whose whole life was a continu'd scene of vict'rys, and prodigious events. They enter'd into this great city, and pillag'd it, setting fire to the houses; while most part of the garden were kill'd in the breaches. The officers began to beat down the walls with axes and other instruments; but as they were built very strong, they work'd a long time without being able to demolish any considerable part; wherefore thinking it would require an age to ruin 'em entirely, they only pull'd down the tops.

May 34. The last day of Jumazinlakher, Timur decamp'd; and three days after an Usbec soldier was brought before him, who accus'd Yae Soufi with fomenting a rebellion, and designing to fly during night. Yae was arrest'd, and being question'd by Timur, he confess'd his crime, and discover'd his accomplices. But as he had several times before been convict'd of the like crimes, which the emperor had pardon'd, and had receiv'd favors from Timur, who had given him a Toman, and made him the greatest Emir in the left wing of the army, next to the princes of the blood; his judges order'd him and his son to be laid in irons, and all his accomplices to be put to death; which was accordingly executed.
CHAP. XLII.

Timur returns to Alacac.

Timur took the road to Alacac, and being in the meadow of Mehrouan, the princes and governors of the neighboring places, the chiefs of tribes, and the generals of troops, came from all parts to pay their respects to him, and submit to the taxes imposed upon 'em. After Timur had passed by Miatarilin, Batman and Achma, he marked out the roads to the Emirs of Tohans, assigning guides to each. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan took the road to Tschepachour, with the Emirs of the left-wing. Timur marched by Sivas, and continuing his road towards Sahra 'Mouchi, where he encamped the 15th of Redjeb with Mirza Charoc, he came to some high mountains, where, tho' the time was spring, their own were so deep, that many horses, mules and camels perished. The Mirza Mireches, with the Emirs of the right-wing, joined the camp at Bethlis, which the Mirza Mehemet Sultan did also with the left-wing, and the princes of those parts submitted to Timur.

Hadji Cherefs, prince of Bethlis, who was the most sincere and courteous of all the princes of Cordistan, and who had always attached himself to Timur's interest, came to salute him; making presents to him of horses, which were

---

1 A little town and fine meadow, two days journey in length, at the same distance from Miatarilin, and three from Bost, long. 74° 30', lat. 39° 30'.
2 A town near the lake of Van, long. 74° 30', lat. 38° 30'.
The history of Timur-Bec.

not only strong, but even swifter than flags and wild-goats; brisk in action, and yet as gentle as lambs: among the rest was a bay-horse, which outran all Timur's swiftest horses. Timur was pleas'd with Hadei Cheref, and treated him with the utmost civility, not only confirming him in his former possessions, but even joining other lands to his domain: and to distinguish this prince above the other princes of Cordillan, he gave him a veil embroidered with gold, as likewise a belt, and a sword with a gold handle, He then put Yaei South into his hands to be kept prisoner in his castle; and afterwards order'd that the roads should be taken down in writing.

CHAP. XLIII.

Timur sends bodies of soldiers into several countries to enlarge his conquests.

TIMUR order'd Mehemet Dereich Berlas to besiege the castle of Alengic; at whose approach Cara Youlef with his Turcomans fled: whereupon Timur, in council with the princes and Emirs, resolv'd that the troops should march in pursuit of 'em. He made Burhan Aglen general of the horse, ordering him, with Albadge Aglen, Gehancha Behader, and other Emirs, to decamp from Sahrai Mouch, and pursue these Turcomans to the very utmost, and to deliver the public from the disorders they committed by their robberies.

Then Timur resolv'd to exterminate all the Coudies princes, who refus'd to come before him, according to the orders sent 'em. The Mirza
The history of Timur-Bec.

Mirza Miranbela had instructions to give quarter to all who should come and make their submissions to him; to pillage the subjects of them who disobey'd; and afterwards to besiege Alemur.

Then the emperor having sent Tavachus into all the provinces to get recruits, continued his road to Aflac, from which place the emperor and other ladies set out, to join the court, passing by Taurus, the 24th of Rudgeb. Timur sent June 16, the Mirza Charoe to meet 'em, who in four days join'd 'em between Seleucia and Coi.

When Timur encamped in the neighbourhood of Eclat*, Cacaun prince of Adelianouz*, one of his old friends, came to pay him his respects, making presents, which Timur received with pleasure, being persuaded of his sincerity, and zeal in his service. He then gave this prince the lordship of Eclat, with its dependencies, to be enjoyed by him and his heirs for ever.

The 2d of Chaban, Timur ordered a hunting-match in the plains of Eclat, in which were fine white goats, flocks, wild deer, and many other beasts. After which, it having been eleven months since he had seen the young princes whom he left at Sulama, he parted from the army, and rode post to meet 'em, passing by Alichgherd*; and encamping that evening at Outch Kilisfa, that is,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III: the three churches of Alatac.

In the morning the empress and ladies arriv'd with the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir; and had the honor to salute Timur, and testified their joy at seeing him. But this their pleasure was mixt with bitterness, because of their complements of condolence for the death of the Mirza Omar Cheik; which renewed the emperor's grief, who only said to 'em, 'God gave him to me, and God hath taken him away.'

Then Timur sent Tamer Coja son of Aebouga, with a body of soldiers to assist Mehemet Dervich Berlas in the siege of the forresses of Amen-

The 8th of Chaban Timur decamp'd for Ashin, the inhabitants of which place came to allure him of their submission, bringing with 'em all their silver, money, horses and cattle, fruits, and provisions; and with tears in their eyes they besought him to grant 'em quarter; which he did, and leaving him 'em for their remis-
sness in not coming to him before, he restored 'em all they had brought. Then he departed for Qurch Kilissa, where he arriv'd in one night.

Here Taliarten, governor of Arzendarjan, came to pay his respects to him, and on his knees made him large presents, after having given him assurances of his obedience. Timur being pleas'd with his conduct, accepted of his presents, and treated him with all imaginable honor and civility.

A town of Courdistan, where are the three churches of Achimadfish, the seat of the patriarch of Armenia, near Nac-

chavan, long. 77. lat. 40.
C H A P. XLIV.

The taking of the town and fortress of Avenic.

MESSER, son of Cara Mehemet and prince of Avenic, perceiving in his desigh not to come to court, tho' he had been summoned by a circular letter; Timur resolve'd to make himself master of that town: he therefore sent before some troops under the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and on the 16th of Chaban march'd thither himself in person, first encamping in the meadow of Alghgherd, from whence, passing by Klofata, in two days he arriv'd at Avenic, before the Mirza. The soldiers immediately attack'd the town, and soon made themselves masters of the walls, which they raz'd. Upon this Meller retir'd with his men into the fortresses, situate upon a steep and craggy mountain, all the passages of which were block'd up and fortify'd; a wall being also built on one side, on the very edge of the mountain, the gate of which was also fortify'd; so that Meller and his Turcomans resolve'd to defend it to the last.

The Emirs of Toman, and the bravest men of the army, dismounted, and march'd up as far as the gate, which they assaulted, after having closely invest'd the castle. At the sound of drums and kettle-drums, the battering-rams were made ready, while the horsemen were mounted as high as the walls, to discharge arrows on those who should be plac'd on the breast-work.

The 19th of Chaban, Meller sent his son and July 1 his lieutenant, with considerable presents, to Timur; to whom they said, That Meller, being
Book III. Satisfy'd of his inability to defend himself against the valiant officers of the imperial army, had resolve'd entirely to submit to the emperor's orders, but had not boldness enough to come out of the place; that if Timur would grant him quarter, he would not fail for the future of behaving himself like a faithful servant, in whom he might confide. Timur gave these envoys a bounteous reception, presenting each with a veil and a gilt belt; telling 'em that he freely pardon'd Meller, and that he might come out of the place without any fear, since he had promised him quarter. The envoys carry'd back this answer to Meller, who had done whatever Timur requir'd, had fortune been favorable to him: but he was so unhappy as to reject the advice given him, and chose to defend himself, discharging on a sudden a whole cloud of arrows on our men, who by that perceived his resolution.

This obliged the Emir Talaresen to speak to Meller from a place where he could inspect no danger; he demanded of him what unruly passion made him peril in his stubbornness, and commit hostilities against a prince, who had obliged the kings of the seven climates of Asia to lay down their arms, being satisfied of their inability to defend themselves against him. He told him he would be a self-murderer, if he did not submit to Timur. **"Confider, says he, that all the kings of Asia have laid their crowns and scepters at this conqueror's feet; that he has under him two hundred generals, each of 'em equal in valor to the great Kon-lem; and that these lords bear so much respect to him, that they are always ready to sacrifice their lives in his service. The magnificence and grandeur of this monarch surpass'd even**
that of Feridon, Gemchi, and the emperors of China. I advise you to consider the danger you are in; and not confiding in the strength of your walls, to reflect on your weakness. Not being able to resist these Turks, who make the universe to tremble, depart speedily out of the fortresses. God is witness of my sincerity in advising you to escape the danger you are in.

On this advice Meiller was in greater perplexity than before; he sent his son, and one of his nearest relations nam'd Setilmich, to the emperor with presents of very beautiful horses. With groans and tears they begg'd pardon, as they had done before. But Timur perceiving Meiller had no design to quit the place, caus'd Setilmich and his attendants to be seized.

The 7th of Chaban, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan rejoyn'd the camp with his troops: during this night the soldiers leal'd the mountain as far as the walls, against which they made a vigorous assault, which lasted till day. During this assault an arrow was discharge'd from the place, at the end of which was fasten'd a billet, wherein were contain'd these words: "Setilmich who is with you is one of Meiller's nearest relations, and being the bravest of all, commands the garrison; if you put him in chains, the men within this place, being depriv'd of their general, will lose all courage." This advice was not displeasing, tho' it had been already put in execution. Next morning, Timur order'd Meiller's son, who was but six years old, to be brought before him: this young prince calling himself on the ground, kis'd the emperor's...
The history of Timur-Bee.

Book III.

... and in submissive terms beg'd pardon for his father; promising that if his highness would grant his father his life, he would go himself and humbly him to appear before the throne, with a sword and handkerchief in his hand. Timur being sensibly touch'd with these applications, said, "Go, my child, I will give your father his life, on condition that he makes his appearance before me." Then he gave the child a veil, and fix'd a collar of gold about his neck, sending him back to Meller with a very obliging letter. When the young prince was introduced into the castle in this condition, the besiegers murmur'd against their prince, and applaud'd Timur; they very civilly receiv'd the men who were sent to conduct Meller's son, and at their departure gave him gold and garments. Yet Meller would not resolve upon going out, tho' he had been invited to it with so much civility and complaisance. This oblig'd Timur to order the Enam of the Tomains to keep fix'd in their respective posts, and make ready the machines for casting stones, and other necessary arms. The assault began, our troops approaching the walls, where they were not less fatigu'd with the stones cast by the besiegers, than these were by our arrows; but at length the stones from our machines ruin'd several houses situate on the top of the mountain. Upon this the mother of Meller came down from the fortresses, and throwing her self at Timur's feet, besought him to pardon her son; she represented to him that there was no probability that a hamlet of Timcorens should be able to hold out against the emperor's army; and begg'd of him to consider that this disorder proceeded only from the fear her son was in, which would not let him know his own interest. Next day Timur gave
a magnificent vell to Melier's mother, and told her that if her son would leave his life, he must immediately depart out of the place. The empress Serai Mute Camum and Touman Aga also gave her valls. When she was return'd to the place, she told her son what Timur had said: but he imprudently continu'd his stubbornness. Timur order'd a hill of earth to be rais'd over against the walls of the place; whereupon the soldiers went to all places within three days journey of the town to cut down trees, which when they had convey'd to the fortrefs, Timur order'd Osman Abbas to inspect the workmen in the Meljor (for so they call this fort of work) from evening till morning. When the trees were pill'd one upon another, the spaces were fill'd up with stones and mud mix'd together; and thus the Meljor was finisht in a short time, and rais'd higher than the fortrefs. A regiment mounted it, and having prepar'd the machines, discharge'd so great a quantity of stones, that it seem'd as if a mountain had fallen on their heads. The 11th of Ramadan the besieged were, through scarcity of water, reduc'd to extremity, and oblig'd to turn out the inhabitants, so that there remain'd in the place only the officers and garrison of Meller, who resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. Nevertheless, as the machines, which were continually discharging great stones, ruin'd the houses, and beat down the arches upon the soldiers heads: Meller being alonish'd, sent his lieutenant to implore the affiance of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who conducted him to the emperor, to whom he made known the disquiet Meller underwent. Timur again promis'd him quarter if he would come to him; and gave the lieutenant a vell at his departure. Notwithstanding all this, Meller con-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. contint'd in his stubborn humour, and resolved to defend himself. A company of our brave soldiers remained all night in the caverns of the mountain, and in the narrow and almost inaccessible passages. Coja Chahin, one of that number, advanced with seven others, and mounting one of the arches, got to the foot of the wall of the place, where he lighted fires to advertise the army. Upon this the Emirs, Argouncha Ectadgi, and Amancha Cazanedgi, ascended the mountain in the same place, and came to a very narrow arch; where the belied d attacked them notwithstanding the darkness of the night. Amancha being dangerously wounded, was confined to return to the camp, while Argouncha and the self getting upon another arch, which is above three hundred cubits broad, arrived at the foot of the walls, which they labored with their hatchets, hammers and pick-axes, fixing at the same time stakes to prop them up. The officers and garrison, seeing themselves thus put to it, would no longer find their ground, but abandon the Meller. Some hung themselves off the mountains, while the others exclaimed against Meller, and in token of submission hung their arms on the ground, and begged leave to depart out of the place. Meller, to appease 'em, feit his mother and son to Timur on Friday, which was the day of their feast. His mother cast herself at the emperor's feet, and with tears in her eyes begged her son's life. Timur, touched with her affliction, told her, that for her sake he would grant him his life, but on condition that he came himself to beg pardon; otherwise that after the reduction of the place, he would give order that every one slain be slain, whole blood would cry for vengeance against Meller. The mother of Meller re-
The history of Timur-Bec.

return'd to the castle very much distracted, and Chap.4.
gave her for an account of every thing; but he
did not go out that day, and would have con-
tinued to defend himself, if his domestics had
not quitted him, and leap'd off the walls. Then
seeing himself reduc'd to extremity, he tied a
handkerchief about his neck, and took a naked
sword in his hand, with which on the second
day of the feast he departed out of the fortress
of Avenice: he had immediate recourse to the
Mirza Mehemet Sultan, whom he besought to
intervene for him, promising for the future an
entire submission to the emperor, and to lay
down his life in his service: he shew'd so many
signs of grief in this discourse, that the Mirza
was mov'd to compassion, and having comforted
him, brought him to Timur. Meiller obtain'd
favor of the emperor, tho' his proceedings had
merited another kind of treatment. The arms
were taken from the garrison, and orders were
given that Meiller and the Sultan Atla-prince of
Merdim should be conducted to Sultania, and
that afterwards Meiller should be carry'd to Sa-
marcan; which was accordingly done. Timur
careful'd those who had given proofs of their
valor at the siege of Avenice, and distributed the
treasures of Meiller among them.

C H A P. XLV.

Timur's return after the taking of Avenice.

TIMUR stayed five days at Avenice, to so-
lemnize the feast with plays and banquets:
and then putting the castle into the hands of
the Emir Atimach, and leaving some good sol-
diers
Book III. diers with him, he decamp'd the seventh of Chawal. Next day his grand viffer Seifuddin, being come from Samarcand, made him rich presents. Timur having inquir'd of him how publick affairs were in grand Tartary, Capchac, Gete, and Turkistan; the Emir told him, there was an entire tranquillity in those parts, where his majesty was lov'd and admired by all; and that the news of his conquests having spread as far as Gete, the inhabitants of Cara Coja had abandon'd that kingdom. Timur entertain'd himself in his march with the viffer, till they came to the delicious meadow where they were to encamp that night: the variety of flowers in this place charm'd the emperor; and as there was good grazing here for the horses, he easily contented to stay some days. On the seventeenth of Chawal he entertain'd his court with a sumptuous banquet, and a fine feast, which celebrated his conquests. After this regale, Timur confer'd the principality of Arzengdian on Taharren, to whom he gave advice in relation to the government of that place: then having presented him with a crown, and a belt of gold enrich'd with precious stones, he lent him into his own country.

During these transactions the Emir Ziree Yakon, who was gone to besiege Aidin with a body of the army, according to Timur's orders, had given such considerable afflicts upon that town, that the Emir Bayazid, the prince of it, found he could not hold it out against this general; upon which he demanded a truce, promising that as soon as the army thou'd decamp from before the walls, he would go out of the town. Ziree willingly consented to his proposal. Bayazid accordingly went out during the night without Ziree's knowledge, and came by airways to Timur's
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur's camp; he caft himself at the emperor's Chaplain's seat, and presented him with a horse of great price, whose good quality he said surpassed those of Roeche, the horse of Rohitam. Timur receiv'd Bayazid with joy, and teem'd pleas'd with his conduct in coming to him; he then confirm'd him in the principality of his town and its dependencies, and caft home the troops which then block'd it up, whom he prohibited from committing any acts of hostility. He sign'd patents to empower Bayazid to establish a governor in the town of Aidin, whom he sent thither, after having given him a vell, and a belt of gold.

CHAP. XLVI.

Timur sends an army into Georgia.

ON E of the principal advices of Mahomet to his followers, is, that they shou'd make war on those who profefs a different religion from themselves, and sacrifice their own lives for the increase of the faith. This caust'd Timur, who was a strict Muslumin, to send Barhan Aglen, Hadi Seifeddin Geanches, and Ofian Behader, into Georgia, against Aflica prince of that country, while he himself shou'd march thither by the roads of Aflaar with a very numerous army. The Emirs enter'd Georgia, divided themselves into several bodies, and waited the country of those infidels. Timur before his decampment order'd a hunting; in the evening all this fine country was surrounded, and next morning the circle growing left and left, the meadow was cover'd with game. Timur began the
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. the slaughter, and the captains follow'd in their turn, so that there was not one officer who had not for his share at least ten heads.

After this hunting Timur continu'd his road to Georgia in long marches, seldom dismounting to repose himself; while his troops plunder'd all who were of a different religion, and would not submit to the emperor. As Timur's sole intention in this war was God's glory, he had every day some considerable blessings shower'd on him from heaven. Among other delights, when he arriv'd at Cars, he had the pleasure of encamping in a very agreeable plain, where the green meadows, the infinite number of springs and rivulets of water clear as chrysal, the shady groves, delicious fruit-trees, the variety of tullums and flowers, and the refreshing zephyrs were so charming, that they seem'd to meet together in this place only to receive the greatest emperor of the universe. At this happy place was born to Charoe, a prince, at whose birth all the court was transported with joy, and the whole army made public rejoicings.

C H A P. XLVII.

The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charoe.

Of all the blessings the Divine-being incessantly bellows upon his creatures, the most learned doctors believe there is none greater than that of the continuation of the species:

A town of Georgia; long. 40° 50', lat. 51° 25'.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Theit must be confessed that the favor which Chossey God grants to men, of educating their children in virtue, nobleness of mind, and the knowledge of his goodness and almighty power, is infinitely more excellent; because the former is common to the beasts, and the latter places men upon an equality with the angels, renders'em prophets, and, if one may dare to say it, raises'em up to divinity; it half God, whom it pleas'd to increase Timur's power, and to furnish him with favorable conjunctures to render himself master of the universe, granted him this blessing in a degree above that bellow'd on other potentates, that to his power might be prefers'd in his August Politeness; wherefore on the twenty-sixth of Chawal 768, he became with a fan the Minta Charm, whose physiognomy prognosticated the height of grandeur to which he shou'd in time arrive; as his horoscope signify'd that he shou'd ascend the throne, and be the heir of his father's crown. Seraj Mule Caunum immediately sent this agreeable news to Timur, who sent his joy to the court by presents of gold, silver and curious fruits. All the lords of the court spread gold and precious stones upon the young child: the emperor's children, the queen, the Emirs, and the Nervians, also paid their respects to him; and Timur order'd a sumptuous banquet. That the rejoicings might be general, he elevated many great lords to considerable posts, and deliver'd the poor from their miseries; so that there was scarce one person in the whole empire who had not cause to return thanks to God, for he exempted the people from all sorts of taxes for a whole year. Orders were issu'd out to the most skillful astrologers to come thither to draw the horoscope of the young prince. But as Moulla Abdalla Leffan was the skil-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. skilfully of any present; they chiefly regarded his remarks; which were, that he should be endowed with all the virtues of a great prince; that from the cradle he should wear a crown; and become the greatest monarch; and that this crown should remain for ever in his family, because the sun was at this time in the tenth house of Leo. Then Timur order'd him to be call'd Ibrahim * Sultan, that he might have for his patron that prophet who was God's chief favorite.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Salma rejoycing for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charox.

Next day, the army of Timur decamp'd from the meadow of Bars for the plain of Minegheid; where he had information that the Emirs, who had been sent into Georgia, after having gain'd several battles, conquer'd great part of the country, and taken many strong places from the Christians, were upon their return. Shortly after these Emirs had the honor to salute Timur; and having presented to him * Georgia, the spoils they had taken in Gurgilan *, they congratulated him on the birth of the prince his grandson. After this, orders being given for preparations to be made for the banquet, they provided tents and canopies, which they adorned with the most magnificent furniture of all Asia. These tents took up two leagues of ground: the

* A village near the tombs of Joseph in Georgia.
emperor's was under a canopy sustain'd by forty Chippal pillars, and as spacious as a palace: in the middle of it was erected a throne, which was set off with precious stones, that it resembled the sun. A great number of the most beautiful ladies of Asia were plac'd on each side the throne, with veils of cloth of gold, adorn'd with jewels. At length the emperor came and sat upon the throne with the scepter in his hand, and the crown on his head. The mass was plac'd in two rows: the vocal on the right, and the instrumental on the left. Nine Chanso of a hand-some men, well equip'd, and mounted on Arabian horses, came there in quality of stewards of the feast: who having dismounted, took golden wands in their hands, and march'd in procession before the dishes which were serv'd up. They were follow'd by cup-bearers, having in their hands chrysalite bottles, and golden cups; with red wine of Chiraz, white of Mazenderan, gray-colored of Cafrouan, and water as clear as that of the fountain of "Kioles. The conversation of charming women, whose hair hang in tresses down to the very ground, did not add a thing before to this illustrious assembly. The Mirzas, Emirs, Nevians, and foreign lords of Iran and Touran, who came to Timur's court from India even unto Greece, partook of all the diversion which this opportunity cou'd favor 'em with; and to testify their utmost joy, they join'd with the Zagarians in rows for the prosperity of the emperor and the new-born prince. Then Timur divide the princes Tousman Aga, who was as wise as Balkis", and as illustrious as Caidadas", to be

*Soleman's wife.

"Queen of the Amazons; and the Thaethis of Quintus Curios.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. governed the young Mirza on which account he made a magnificent banquet, which lasted eight days, to return thanks to the emperor for the honor he did her. The Emir Olman Abbas was appointed his governor, and his wife Saookin Aga, a relation of Timur, his nurse. When these entertainments, which lasted three weeks, were finish'd, Timur decamp'd from Minegheh on the eighteenth of Zilde 796, and went to encamp on the top of a mountain.

C H A P. XLIX.

Timur constitutes the Mirza, Chaco, governor of Samarcand.

Octob. 8. THE twenty-first of Zilde 796 Timur con-

sole'd upon the Mirza Chaco, the government of Samarcand; he recommend'd him entirely to apply himself to the doing acts of justice, and treating his people as his children; in which paternal advice Timur acted with great prudence. Then he embraced his son, and having kiss'd his eyes and head, took his leave of him. After Chaco's departure, the empresses Serait Mule, and her mother, Toina Aga, and other princesses and ladies of the court, also departed with the baggage for Sultania, at which place they had orders to stay: Chaco having cross'd the Oxus, the inhabitants of Tranłożiana came as far as the banks of that river to receive him with all the honors due to so illustrious a viceroy: and the ways were find'd with people from the Gihon as far as Kech. The Emir Solimancha, on advice that the Mirza was near Kech, came to meet him with
The history of Timur-Bec.

with great ceremony. The city of Samarcand was adorn'd to grace his entry: the artists, brought thither from other countries, strove to excel one another on this occasion in their respective arts. The streets he mad pass thro', from the gate of Aferine to the royal palace, were hung with carpets; the gates were adorn'd with pieces of cloth which had been taken from the enemies in the several battles the emperor had won; and the ground was cover'd with satin and scarlet cloth. Charos made his entry amidst the people's acclamations; and as soon as he was set upon the throne, he ordered (according to the example of the just Anouchiroan *) the heralds to proclaim that the inhabitants should repair to him for justice against their oppressors. Thus he began to execute the function of viceroy, exactly following his father's advice; so that the contented happy people had cause to thank God for giving them so equitable a prince, under whom the weak cou'd live in as great security as the powerful.

CHAP. L.

Timur goes in person to the Georgian war.

Timur's zeal for religion made him undertake the war himself in Georgia: wherefore he decamp'd, and enter'd the mountains of those Christians, cutting in pieces all who resist'd, and pillaging their country. Then he march'd into the lands of certain Georgians, nam'd Cara Calcanitic, that is, the black buckler, who had fortify'd themselves in cahles situate on very steep mountains; by the assistance of hea-
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. when he vanquish'd these enemies, entered their habitations, and plunder'd their goods, after having put 'em all to the sword. He encamp'd some time in their plains to repose his army, and from thence march'd before Tellis; and continuing his road came to the plain of Cheki, where he encamp'd several days. From this place the Emirs Hadji Seifeddin and Gehancha Schader were sent to pillage the lands of a Georgian prince nam'd Berraz; they accordingly entered this prince's country, made a terrible havoc, and took the inhabitants prisoners, whom they brought to the camp. Timur also sent the Cheki Noureddin, son of Starboza, with a considerable body of the army, into other mountains called the Caucasus of Georgia; he had no sooner set foot in those parts, than Sedli Ali of Cheki, prince of the house of Eslat, who was governor there, was afraid and fled, abandoning his effects to Noureddin, who having destroy'd his houses, sack'd his country, and pillag'd his goods, return'd to the imperial camp.

At this time advice was brought by the way of Chirouan, that the troops of Tzar-much Can, having for their generals Ali Aglen, Elias Aglen, Atta Bei, Yaghi Bei, and other great Emirs of Capchac, had pass'd by Derbend, and ravag'd some countries dependent on Chirouan. Timur having learnt this news by the Uzbek's, said, It was better that the game should run into the nets, than that the hunters should go in search of it; and that there was nothing to fear from the armies of Capchac. Whereupon he immediately departed from Cheki, to

* Capital of Georgia, long. 63°, lat. 63°.
* A town between Tellis and the river Cyius.
meet these rath inhabitants of Capchac, with Chap. 38.
all his Emirs at the head of their regiments.
The enemy, on advice of his march, shaketh-
fully lied. Timur, who was then on the banks of the
Ahero *, order'd the quarter-masters to chuse a
place for raising the winter-seasom. They pitch'd
on the plain of Mahnooudabad, to which Timur
marchd, and encamp'd on the plain of Calin Goa-
bed, near the town of Facrabad. Timur, who
extremely lov'd the princes his children, sent to Sul-
tania for them, the empresses, and the baggage to
come to the imperial camp; which they accord-
ingly did, in their palage crossing the Cyrus.
Mirza Mirancha quitted the siege of Alegin, to
come to court; and being at Babi*, he was in-
form'd that he had a son born to him, whom the
emperor nam'd Aigel. Mirza Pir Mehemet, leav-
ing the Emirs Sevindig, Hallan Jagadaout, and
Ali Bei son of Aita, at Chiras, departed thence,
and joind the imperial camp in the winter-
quarters, where they pass'd the seasom agreeably
in plays and feasts, every day furnishing new
diversions.

CHAP. II.

Timur marches a second time into Capchac
against Tocatmich Can.

THE winter was no sooner on the decline,
than Timur departed for Capchac at the
head of a powerful army, to make war on Toc-
atmich Can, who had not only re-establish'd
himself in his kingdom, but was daily making

The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

Inscriptions into Timur's dominions, to repair the loss of his last defeat. Timur distributed among his soldiers several sums out of his treasury, and sent the ladies with the baggage to Sultana, to which place also came Tschelma Mule Aga, while the empresses Semli Mule Cahan and Touman Aga, with the young princes, departed for Samarcand. Timur ordered for their convoy Moula Recmat, to whom he gave the government of Sultana, in concert with Akh Irancha governor of the fortress. The seventh of Jamainivel 179, the army began their march in order of battle, with their ensigns displayed, and as their faces were turned towards the northeast, the left wing advanced before the rest of the army, which was the manner of the Tartar armies marching. While they were in their winter quarters, the emperor wrote the following letter to Tocamuch Can.

"After having given God the thanks which are due to the governor of the world, I demand of you, whom the devil of pride hath turned from the right way, what is your design in pulling beyond your bounds? Who has put you upon such vast undertakings? Have you forgot how in the last war your country and effects were reduced to nothing? You certainly behave yourself with great rashness, since you oppose your own happiness. Is it possible you can be so ignorant that they who have testified their friendship to me, have been received with respect, and drawn great advantages from the treaty I have made with them, and which I have inviolably observed.

Among the Tartars, the left wing is more honorable than the right.

While
while my enemies have not only been under continual disquietudes and fears, but also been unable to escape my vengeance, tho' in the greatest security. You are acquainted with my victories, and are persuaded that peace or war are equally indifferent to me. You have experienced both my mildness and severity. When you have read this letter, don't delay sending me an answer; but let me know your resolution, either for war or peace. This letter was carry'd by Chamseddin Almaleghil, a man of great wisdom, experience, and address; who was as well skilled in contriving any noble design, as in executing it with vigor; he was perfectly acquainted with the maxims of the Tartars of Touman, and with the interests of the several princes of that country: and he always succeeded in his negotiations by his eloquence, and forcible ways of arguing. Because of these qualifications, he was sent into Capenac, where at his arrival he was admitted into the presence of Tocatmich Can, to whom he related in a few words the subject of his embassy. He afterwards discours'd with Tocatmich in a forcible manner, that the Can was wrought upon by it; and being persuaded of the necessity of peace, he was about consenting to it, and begging pardon of Timur. He had without doubt concluded a treaty, if his courtiers and generals, whose interest it was to make war, had not persuaded him against it, and by that means brought ruin upon the state. Tocatmich, following the evil sentiments of his courtiers, sent a rude and imperious answer to Timur, by the hands of Chamseddin, to whom he made a present of a veil. This ambassador, at his arrival at the court near the river of Sambour,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

NUM, gave the emperor a detail of his embattled army, and presented to him Ferezmich's letter. Timur was enraged at the impertinent reasons which he alleged in his answers, and at the same time gave orders for the review of his army, which he commanded to get ready with expedition.

CHAP. LIE

Timur reviews his army.

TIMUR permitted his soldiers to repose themselves one night, and commanded them all to march next day in order of battle to the place of the review, which was on the banks of the Samnour, situated at the foot of mount Alburz, five leagues from the Caspian. The troops having mounted, made the great cry: the Canbol* of the left wing was at the foot of mount Alburz, and that of the right wing on the banks of the sea; and from one to the other were posted a great number of soldiers upon a line. It is reported that from Genghis Can's time to numerous and well-equipped an army had not been seen in those parts; nor do we read of any such in the history of the kings of Persia. While Timur review'd this formidable army, all the Emirs and principal officers of each Toman on their knees ador'd him of their fidelity, and resolution to sacrifice their lives in his service, for which he encourag'd em with the most affecting speeches. After the review, he return'd

* Different from the root of the same name, which is a branch of the Tis in Capelas.
to the main body; they beat the drums and fifes; kettledrums, and sounded the Kerrenai and the great bones: the soldiers in an instant drew their swords, and turn'd towards the place where the enemy was at that time; after the great cry Scrant, the Emirs of the Timur, the commanders of thousands, and the foremost took to their respective polls, and march'd in order of battle with the ensigns display'd. When the army had pass'd by Derbend, advice was brought that a host of Tocatmich's party, call'd Cabiagh, was at the foot of mount Albulas. Timur deftions to try his fortune, according to the maxim, That the end of a battle usually succeeds like the beginning, order'd that that host should be destroy'd. Our Emirs march'd thither immediately, and unexpectedly fell upon these unfortunate persons. They surrounded 'em, so that of the thousand who were there, scarce one escap'd; and after they had pillag'd their houses, they set 'em on fire. At the same time advice was given that an ambassador of Tocatmich, nam'd Orar, was coming to the camp; but as the light of so great a number of our troops, he was terrify'd with fear, and immediately return'd to Tocatmich, whom he told, that Timur had sent out a great body of scouts, whom he follow'd in person at the head of a very formidable army. Timur at his arrival at Tebki, learnt that Tocatmich's scouts, commanded by Carzantachi, were encamp'd on the banks of the Cen: whereupon he departed with some chosen troops, and having march'd all night, he unexpectedly fell upon the scouts in the morn-

* A town of Derbend, long. 85. lat. 43. 35.
* A river of Derbend above Tebki, which falls into the Caspian.
The history of Timur-Bec.

BockIII. ing, who had neither time to prepare for battle, nor means to fly; so that our men made a horrible slaughter of 'em. Timur continued his road, and encamp'd on the banks of the Sevendge, till the remainder of his troops came up to him. In the mean time Tocatmich, at the head of a formidable army, encamp'd on the banks of the Terk. His camp was fortified on all sides, and the regiments were surrounded with great bucklers and wagons which serv'd for walls. Timur drew up his army for battle, and march'd to attack Tocatmich; who, either thro' fear, or to gain a more advantageous ground, decamp'd, and return'd back with his army, most of his soldiers flinging away their bucklers to fly with the greater expedition. Timur, having found a passage over the Terk, cross'd it with his troops, while Tocatmich arriv'd at the Crawa, where he flung to get together the remants of his troops. On the other hand, our army, being in want of provisions, march'd along the sides of the river Terk, towards the country of Coulas, where there were provisions in abundance, that our soldiers might be able to pursue the enemys without any obstrucion. Our scouts having brought advice that Tocatmich had rally'd his troops, and was march'ing by the lower part of the river, Timur having resolv'd to give him battle, rang'd his army in order, and always preferring the higher ground,

* A river between the Terk and the Cen, which falls into the Caspian.
* The same as the Timenke; it ariseth in mount Albaru, and falls into the Caspian.
* A river in Capelbar between the Caspian and the Terk; it ariseth in mount Albaru, and falls into the Caspian.
* A fortress in Georgia, near Tana, on the Terk.

The history of Timur-Bec.

wheel'd about towards the part where the one-Chap.33. my advance'd. Then the two armys encamp'd in fight of each other.

The twenty-second of Jamaziulakher 797, April 21. which answers to the year of the Hug. our Ta- vatchis mark'd out the ground, and the soldiers made entrenchments round the camp, which they fortify'd with flanks and palissados, inclos'd by a ditch. Then orders were given that every one shou'd remain that night in their respective polls, and be cautious for fear of a surprize. Injunctions were also given that no fire shou'd be made, nor bell sound'd, and that no one shou'd speak with a loud voice. This night, Al-badje Aglen, who till that time had faithfully serve'd Timur, went over to the enemy: but the presence or absence of such men is of small importance, seeing no one is hurt but themselves.

C H A P. LII.

Battel between Timur and Tusatmich Cau.

T H E morning of the twenty-third of Ja- maziulakher 797, the soldiers of both ar- mys began to move, and rais'd a noise which Lembled two oceans beating against each o- ther, when agitated by the tempestuous winds. The commanders display'd their standards, and put on their helmets at the first sound of the em- peror's kettle-drums. Timur form'd his army in- to seven bodies, placing at the head those who had the title of Behader; the infantry being cover'd with their bucklers, were plac'd before the cavalry. The M人民银行 Mehener Sultan com- manded the main body, which he strengthen'd with.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

With the bravest men of the army, Timur again rode before the soldiers, to see whether they had all their arms, which were swords, lances, clubs, bows, and nets to catch men. Then he mounted at the head of twenty-seven chosen companies, who compose'd the body of reserve. The enemy also range'd his army over against ours, and display'd his ensigns. The fight began, the great cry was heard on each side, and on a sudden the air was darken'd with arrows, and fill'd with the cries of war or glory, that is, give and take, hold and take. Then came a man from the left wing, who told Timur, that Gomgyle Aglen, Biczarne Aglen, Ateo, Daud Sork, son-in-law of Totezmeh, and Orsazou, were advance'd with a considerable detachment from their right wing, to attack our left. Whereupon Timur immediately march'd against 'em with his companies of reserve, and attack'd 'em with so much fury, that they turn'd their backs, and fled. One of the companies Timur had with him pursu'd the enemy, who being arriv'd at their main body, rally'd and attack'd ours so briskly, that they flew several, and made 'em give ground, and retreat fighting as far as where Timur was. By this means the companies mix'd together, and broke their ranks; and one running away, by his example made several others fly. The enemy were willing to make their advantage of this disorder; for which reason they advance'd upon our men, as far as where Timur was poled. They boldly attack'd our men, and notwithstanding his vigorous resistance, accompany'd with a thousand marks of intrepidity, wherein his arrows were all discharge'd, his half-pike broke to shatters, and his sword always in action, they had hemm'd him in, if the Emir Chehit Noureddin, resolve'd to sacrifice his
his life for his master's safety, had not dismount-
ished close by him, with fifty others, who kept off
the enemy with their arrows. Mehemed Azal,
his brother Akha, and Tousel Basarachi, made
themselves masters of three of the enemy's wag-
gons, which they join'd together just before Tim-
ur, to embarrass the enemy, and try to break
their ranks. Allahdaj came also to Timur's
affinity with his faithful company; he got off
his horse, and posted himself near the Cheik
Naoureddin. Naoureddin Malec Courdenil arriva
with his chilt-ren, and Zirec Yacou with his.
The regiment of guards came also with their
eignt display'd, and the horse-tall erected,
and made the great cry: and Ubrani, who ad-
vanced with his company, posted himself behind
the guards. All these troops having dismounted,
flung their ground against the enemy, whose sold-
diers made continual attacks upon ours, and per-
formed actions of the utmost vigor: neverthe-
less they could not make our infantry give
ground, who continually let fly vast showers of
arrows. Coudara Huliein, who conducted the
vanguard of our left wing, advanced between
Condora Agien, who commanded the enemy's
right, and planted himself between ociao, who
boldly fac'd Timur. In the mean time the Mir-
za Mehemem Sultan, with his reenforcements, march'd
towards the left of the emperor; these brave
men rush'd upon the enemy, and with their fl-
mets and lances routed their right wing, and
constrain'd Accao to fly. The Emir Hulief
Sci-
foddin, who commanded the vanguard of our
right wing, found himself more press'd for the
enemy's left, whose vanguard was commanded
by the Emirs Afza Bec and Baschi Coja, had the
advantage of this Emir; they got behind him
and inclos'd him, so that dejecting of his life,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

He dismounted with his Toman, and holding his great bucklers before him, as all his soldiers did likewise, they put themselves in a posture to discharge their arrows, and defended themselves with an inflexible resolution against the enemy, whose number continually increased. But tho' they fell upon our men with their lances, feimiters and demi-fabres; yet our soldiers did not cease repulsing 'em with their arrows, driving the moh forward, till Gelancha Behader, who came from another part of the field, seeing the danger, Seifeddin was in, fell impetuously with his Toman upon the enemy, who were almost conquerors. The club men gave way on one side, and the lanciers on the other; and the attacks were so violent that there was a horrible slaughter. When these two great Emirs were join'd against the enemy, they rush'd upon 'em with so much courage and bravery that the vanquish'd of their left wing gave way. The Minga Komcem, son of OmarChuck, rush'd like a thunderbolt with his Toman upon the main body, which he put to flight, after having slain several, and signaliz'd his valor, tho' very young, to the honor of the emperor his father. Yaghubbe Behur, a favorite and even a relation of Toarmich Can, being willing to distinguish himself by some great action, advanc'd with a troop of brave men, and haughtily cried out, that he dur'd to the combat the bravest of Timur's army; he even call'd with a loud voice to Ofman Behader, and told him that the place he was in was the field of battle, and that he expected him there. This piece of vanity so incens'd Ofman, that without waiting any longer, he march'd against him at the head of his Toman; they came to blows, and having broke their sabres, they seiz'd upon their war-clubs and
and poignards, and grappled with one another. The soldiers of their
Romans imitated their chivalry, and fought hand
in hand; so that the blood flow'd in this place
like a torrent, and never were such furious blows
given before. At length Ofsan Behzider had
the advantage; he overthrew his enemy, and
took upon his troops with so much fury, that he
entirely defeated 'em. All our generals in their
respective parts perform'd their duty so well, that
after a long obstinate battle, they made the
enemy give ground, and put 'em into disorder. Yet
we were not certain of the defeat till the flight
of Tocamich Can, who shamefully turn'd his
back, with the princes of his blood, that is,
from the race of Tocchi, the Nevians, or foreign
princes dwelling in the kingdom of Capelzede,
and the Emirs and generals of his troops. Then
all our men rally'd, and joining together, fell
upon the enemy, loudly crying out, Victory!
They slew a vast number of 'em, and afterwards
hang'd up a great many of those whom they
took alive.

Timur finding himself sure of the victory, got
off his horse, and humbly knelt down before
God, to return thanks for the assistance he had
given him, acknowledging that he had gain'd
the victory entirely thro' his goodness. The
princes, the emperor's sons, and the other princes
and Emirs, also on their knees congratulated
Timur, and call'd gold and precious stones upon
him. This monarch embrac'd 'em all one after
another, loading 'em with praises and thanks.
They departed from this place; and when they
were come to the bank of the Corai', Timur

* A river in Cossobian in Georgia, which falls into the Caspian, north of Tartar.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. got an exact information of all who had bravely serv'd the public on this important occasion. He granted great favors to the Emir Cheik Noureddain, who had with so much zeal expos'd his life, to save his prince: he gave him a more honorable and advantageous post than any he had posses'd before, presented him with a horse of great price, a veil of gold brocade, a belt set with precious stones, and besides all this, a hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi. Timur distributed his treasures among the Emirs and captains, who had perform'd extraordinary actions in this battle; and that every one might be contented, he made a general promotion of all the officers of the army.

C H A P. LIV.

Timur goes in pursuit of Tocarmich Can, and instalts a new Can of Capchac.

TIMUR left with the baggage the great booty taken after this victory, and as the Mirz : Miranchar had been wounded in his hand by a fall of his horse before the battle, he order'd this prince to remain behind to be cur'd of his wound; and he left with him, the Emir Yadgihar Berlas, and Hadgi Seifeddin. Then he march'd at the head of his best troops in pursuit of Tocarmich: but when he was arriv'd at the Volga, this Can having already pass'd it, he staid some time on the bank of the river at a pannage call'd Tourazon. Then he order'd Coltrichec Aglen, son of Ourous Can, who was an officer of his court, to come before him: he gave him for his household-troops the squadron of brave
brave Uzbecs, who were enroll'd in his service; he order'd an equipage worthy of a great emperor to be prepar'd for him; he gave him a veil of gold brocade, and a belt of gold; and after having crown'd him emperor of Capchac, and all the empire of Touchi, he made him cross the Volga. This new Conquer'd all his endeavors to get together the troops of his nation, which were dispers'd every where, and to govern his new subjects. In the mean while our men closely pursu'd the fugitives as far as Oukee: they flew a great number of those who were in the rear. And as the enemy had our Zagataians behind 'em, and the Volga before 'em, several were made captives, while the others cross'd the river upon floats. Tocarmich seeing himself thus closely pursu'd, abandon'd his effects, houses, and all his possessions, preferring his life before his kingdom; he fled with his most faithful servants, into the unknown and impenetrable forests of Boular. Our army march'd by the west side of the river to the place where it had been in the first campaign of Capchac on the east side, and where it had ravag'd all the country to this very place, which is near the dark ocean, or icy sea. At their return the soldiers pillag'd a great part of Capchac, and brought an immense booty to Timur; as gold, silver, furs of Condor, rubys and pearls, young boys and girls of great beauty, spotted furs of Vachaes, and even live Vachaes, whose pace is extremely grave and swift; besides several sorts of animals unknown among the Zagataians.

* The last town of the dependences of Sena, long. 84° 47', in Capchac upon the Volga; between Bugar and Gush, and fifteen leagues from each.
* Boular is Bulgaria, as far as Siberia, along the river Capchac; to the icy sea.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. The Mirza Mirancha, and the Emirs who laid behind with the baggage, join'd Timur in a place nam'd Youlucine Arzuche. And as in this expedition molt part of the Emirs of the empire accompany'd Timur, and this prince had a design to advance into the remotest parts of Capelae, that his name might be known in the western kingdoms: he us'd his precautions with regard to the kingdom he left behind, where there were not Emirs sufficient to guard 'em, on whom he cou'd entirely rely: whereupon he sent to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Chah, with six thousand horse; and to Samarcand the Emir Chamfeddin Abbas, with three thousand men, accompany'd by Cayas Eddin Tercan, because he belong'd to his Tuman. These Emirs immediately set out, and when they had pass'd Derbend, and were come to Ardebil, they receiv'd news from Tauris, that Caza Youlfe had again assembled a troop of Turcomans, with whom he was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Alatae, designing to march to Cof. The Emirs Chamfeddin and Cayaseddin continu'd their road towards Samarcan; but the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs Aboufai'd Berlas, Bekich, Dolet Coja, and Toulhel Behader, being come to Tauris, assembled the troops of the neighborhood, and were join'd by the Emirs of the Mirza Miran Chah, who had remain'd at Tauris.

Pir Mehemet receiv'd all the troops he cou'd assemble together, and set out with a resolution to attack the Turcomans. Being arriv'd at Cof, he there join'd Tezic and Julic, who with their soldiers follow'd the army. Ad-

1 A village in the defart of Africran.
The history of Timur-Bec.

vice was brought that the troops of Cara Yonfe' Chapre 4 were in the defile of Caruderra. The Mirza made haste to overtake 'em; and being arrived at this defile, the troops fled towards Cara Yonfe', who lay encamp'd at Bend Mahi, to advertise him of the Mirza's approach: which advice made this robber fly. The Mirza pursued him, and was join'd at Bend Mahi by Malek Azedhlin, a Courde, whom we have before mention'd. They pursued him together three days, and encamp'd; they likewise sent Emir after him, who went as far as Avenic, without being able to join him. Then the Mirza Pir Mehmenet departed to return home: he pass'd by Tauris to Sultania, where the princess Camaede gave him a magnificent entertainment and a feast: and he afterwards set out for Chirax, according to the emperor's orders.

CHAP. IV.

Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the western Caspian, as also Muscovy and Russia.

As Timur's courage would not permit him to be satisfied with an enterprise, till he had carry'd it to the utmost perfection; so he was not contented with having chased Tozemich Can out of his empire, and having exterminated his army: but the same courage made

---

1 A defile, of mountains, at present the frontiers between Ferris and Turkey. The French translate his pass'd 'em.
2 A little river, where they fish up the fish of the lake of Van, by a counterance in the nature of a sluice. The French translate his could't go.
The History of Timur-Bec.

Book III. him take up a resolution to conquer the rest of Asia on that side, and reduce to obedience the nations of these western frontiers. According to this generous sentiment, he enter'd the great defile which leads into Europe, at the river Orei, or the Borilhenes. He gave the command of the scouts to the Emir Ofuman, who being furnish'd with good men for that purpose, march'd before. He found Bilyaroc Aglen at a town nam'd Manhirmen on the Borilhenes, with some other Uzbeek Tartars who resided there: he cut almost all of 'em in pieces, and pillag'd their houses, as well as the goods of Bilyaroc, who, with a great deal of difficulty save'd himself with some of his Uzbeeks. Bach Temour Aglen and Atzo cross'd the Borilhene, and fled into the country of Hermedai, the inhabitants of which were their enemies, and did 'em more damage than our men cou'd have done, if they had been pillag'd or made slaves. The Toman of Atzo entirely abandon'd that country, and fled towards the kingdom of Roym in Anatolia, and fix'd it self there in the plains of Ira Yaca. Timur quitting the country on the Borilhene, march'd towards Muscovy and grand Russia; he arriv'd at the river Tanais; and the army again overtook Bilyaroc, who had the river before him, and our army behind him. Our soldiers pursu'd him as far as Carafou, a town of grand Russia, which they entirely pillag'd. Bilyaroc finding himself so closely press'd, was constrain'd to abandon his wives and children to the con-

* A country between the Borilhene and the Danube.
* Or Dari, a river which falls into the Palaus Mece, near the town of Anse.
* A town of Muscovy, otherwise call'd Cordish, on the frontier of Poland.
queror, and fly with his eldest son: he was o-Chap. 52.
blig'd to retreat thro' the midst of our troops in
the night-time; which he did without being
known. The soldiers brought to Timur his
wives, children and domestics. The emperor
order'd tents to be erected for 'em to lodge in;
and after having treated 'em very civilly, he
made 'em presents of carriol, horses, finlts, furni-
ture, and other rarities, and sent 'em back to
Bikyaroc. The Mira Mirancha, Gehancha
Behader, and the other Emirs, also went with
their Tomans and Hazares to ravage the western
countries. They exterminated Bic Coja, and
other Emirs dependent on Capchae, as also the
subjects of Queou, whom they pillag'd and
crack'd. They over-run all the great kingdom of
Muscovy, and of Ourougdjig, or little Russia,
where they took prodigious droves of carriol, and
abundance of women and girls, of all ages, and
of an extraordinary beauty and shape. Then
Timur went in person to the city of Muscou,
capital of great Russia, which his soldiers pill-
lag'd, as they had done all the neighboring
places dependent on it, defeating and cutting in
pieces the governors and princes of their parts.

The Russians and Muscovites never beheld their
kingdom in so bad a condition, their plains being
cover'd with dead bodies. The army en-
rich'd themselves with whatever precious things
they could find in this vast country: as ingots of
gold; silver blades; great quantities of flax of
Antioch very much esteemed; cloth woven in Russia
with a great deal of skill and nicety; skins of
Condor full of points, of which each soldier
had whole mule-loads; vast numbers of fables
black as jet, and ermins, with which every
person in the army was sufficiently furnish'd, both
for his own and his children's lives; as likewise

K k 4

skins
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. skins of Vaeach, grey and white, spotted like tygers skins. They also brought away many furs of grey, and skins of red foxes; and an infinite number of young colts, which had not yet been find. It would be tedious to give a detail of all the booty they obtain'd in this great country.

The Mirza Mehemet Sultan pillag'd all the province subject to Cabendi Caradul, he got together all the hordes and nations who had serv'd in the enemy's army during the last campaign, as those of Courbours, Pirlan, Yurkan, and Ko-ladgi, who for fear of falling into the hands of our men wander'd up and down in the desert: he pillag'd their effects, carrying away their wives and children captives.

Timur having got some guides, departed from those quarters towards Batchchomkin southwards. When he was arriv'd at Azac,' situate upon the Tanais, he was join'd by the Mirza Mirunsha with his troops, who had been out to make inroads in the enemy's countries along the bank of the Tanais. Timur order'd that the Mahometans of Azac shou'd be separat'd from the others, and left at liberty; but that all the other inhabitants of the town shou'd be put to the sword, and their houses pillag'd and burn't.

* Batchchomkin in the Palus Maritis.
* A town at the mouth of the Tanais, long. 74. lat. 52. 30.
TIMUR departed from Azao for Couban, and as the Circassians had destroy'd their meadows and pasture-grounds between those two towns, a great number of the horses of the army perish'd. They suffer'd this want of forage between seven and eight days; but at length, having pass'd many waters and marshes, they arriv'd at Couban, where they had some time. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan and Miranche, the Emir Gelanchea and other Emirs to make inroads in Circassia, with orders to return as soon as they had made themselves masters of that kingdom. These princes march'd thither with expedition, pillag'd all the goods of the Circassians, brought away an infinite quantity of spoils, and happily return'd to Timur's camp, to whom they gave an account of their expedition.

* Capital of Circassia, fog. 78. 110. 47.
C. H. A. P. L VII.

Timur marches to Alburz Cough, or mount Caucasus.

Timur being satisfy'd with the conquests of Mufcovy and Circassia, return'd with his whole army towards mount Alburz. Then some servile fellows, who are never wanting in the courts of princes, accus'd the Emir Osman Abbas before Timur, of crimes which had no foundation of truth. These flanders were believ'd by the emperor, who had before suspected the worth and credit of Osman. He order'd that this illustrious Emir shou'd be put to death, who on so many occasions had given indisputable marks of his courage and conduct: but fate is inevitable.

Timur having a design to destroy the infidels, march'd towards Boulaberdi, to attack Burakum, prince of the nation of As: and as there were forests on this road, he order'd 'em to be cut down, in order to make a free passage. There he left the Emir Hadji Seifeddin with the baggage, and march'd himself to mount Alburz, where he several times attack'd the Georgians, took their castles, and made himself master of their fortify'd defiles, which they imagin'd inaccessible: he put a great number of the Georgians to the sword, after having ruin'd their for-territories, and enrich'd his soldiers with their spoils:

Timur came down from the mountain, very much pleas'd with the advantages he had gain'd. He return'd to his camp, and order'd a feast to joy of his victor's: whereupon the pavilion of cere-
ceremony was erected, the cords of which were chap. 58. of silk, the pillars of gold, and the pins of silver; the throne, on which he sat with his crown on his head, was of gold enriched with precious stones. The princes and great lords were rang’d before him ready to receive his orders. The inside of the tent was sprinkled with an odoriferous rose-water; and then the tables were plac’d, and the meats serv’d up in dishes of gold. After they had done eating, the bottles were unstop’d, and the cups open’d; and every one drank wine of Georgia while they were entertain’d both with vocal and instrumental music. A whole week pass’d in these pleasures, and every one repos’d himself from the fatigues of the campaign. At length Timur made choice of the moment to decamp, which the astrologers found to be most fortunate; which was done at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets.

CHAP. LVIII.
Timur attacks the fortresses of Coula, Taous, and others.

TIMUR again left the body of the army, to march to the fortresses of Coula and Taous in Georgia, which are inhabited by the same people as those in Mount Alburz, and who can retreat into strong places situated on steep mountains, the passages to which are almost inaccessible. They are so very steep that one is

* The Orientals seldom drink till the end of their meals.
dazzled in looking upon 'em, and especially that of Taous, which is on the ridge of a high mountain, and is so very high, that the most skilful archer can't hit it with his arrow; which was the reason that no one had ever before attempted the taking of it. Timur order'd the Tonian of the Merzins who were in his army, to come before him; these men are so dextrous in climbing up mountains, that they will go wherever the antelopes or roe-bucks can. He order'd 'em to look out for the most difficult ways to ascend the place. They went all round the mountain; but were not able to find out a single passage to the castle. This very much disquieted Timur; he thought some time upon this enterprize; and at length resolvd to make a great many high ladders, which might be join'd to one another; in effect they plac'd 'em against the first ridge of the mountain, and some brave men ascended. A troop of the furthest, who were resolvd to sacrifice their lives for the success of the action, being upon the top of this ridge, bound themselves with cords; and having taken the ends of the cords to the ridge of the mountain, they came down even with the place, where the belief'd overwhelm'd 'em with stones. Several on this occasion had the honor of martyrdom; but the others, encourag'd as much by a motive of religion as by the glory of dying in the service of the great Timur, took the place of the slain, and advance'd with an extraordinary resolution. And as the whole army were continually mounting the ladders, and descending before the place, the belief'd lost courage, and cou'd not hinder our men from getting to the castle, and making themselves masters of it. They put to the sword all the men of the nation of Taous, who had resist'd either,
The history of Timur-Bec.

either. The governors of Cula and Tacus were also taken and put to death.

From thence the army march'd towards the fortresses of Poulad, whither Oumarcon, one of the great Emirs of Capchac, was retir'd. Timur in his way fray'd at a place nam'd Balucean', where there was so great a quantity of honey, that all the soldiers were provided with some. The emperor being willing to make the governor of this place, whose name was also Poulad, own his fault, wrote a letter to him, in which he declar'd, that if he did not fend Oumarcon to him, who had fled for refuge into his place, he would make him repent of it. Poulad, confiding in the strength of his citadel, lighted the letter, and sent Timur word, that he was in a good fortress, and ready to defend himself if attack'd; that the lord Oumarcon having fled for refuge to him, he would not deliver him up, but as long as he had one drop of blood left, he would defend him to the utmost of his power. Timur having receiv'd this answer, was more incens'd, and resolved to take the castle at any rate. There was in the way to it a very thick wood, the trees of which grew so very close together, that the wind cou'd scarce find a passage thro' it; whereupon he order'd the soldiers to cut down this forest, and make a way thro' it, which they accordingly did for the space of three leagues. Then the standards being display'd, they began their march, and arrived at the place. The fortress is situate in a very steep deile of mountains; and the inhabitants had hope up the way which leads to it, and plac'd a

* A town of Georgia, different from the town of Balucean, also in Georgia.
good guard there, having resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to their master's service, at the incitement of the assassins we have already mention'd. They rashly attack'd our soldiers first; but were soon defeated: our men enter'd the place, and having made themselves masters of it, put to the sword all who were capable of bearing arms. Outarecou fled, and escap'd by the defiles of mount Alburz. Our soldiers pillag'd the goods, and set fire to the houses of these miserable people, making the inhabitants slaves, and carrying away much booty.

Advice being brought that three companies of Georgians, who had fled, were posted on the top of a mountain, Timur march'd immediately against 'em, attack'd 'em, and after their defeat, caus'd 'em all to be call'd into the fire. Then the Mirza Mirancha, who commanded the troops of the right wing, acquainted the emperor that he had pursu'd Outarecou, who was got to the very middle of mount Alburz, where he defended himself in a place nam'd Abafa. Timur hereupon immediately departed, enter'd the mount Alburz, and being encamp'd at Abafa, they at length seiz'd on Outarecou, whom they brought before the emperor, who order'd him to be bound, and loaded with chains. The soldiers pillag'd all the habitations of this great and famous mountain, of which they entirely made themselves masters.
TIMUR march'd against the country of Semsem, where he no sooner appear'd than he became master of all this tract of ground. Mehemet son of Gaiour Can, to whom it belonged, came to offer it at his feet, and beg the honor for himself and all his subjects to be of the number of his servants: and he was enrol'd among the officers of Timur's court. Several of the inhabitants of these places had fled into the mountain, and maintain'd their ground in steep places, where the foot soldiers were scarce able to stand upon their legs. Timur went himself in search of 'em, and mounted these difficult places, where his soldiers met with some resistance from the enemy, who were at length overcome and brought to Timur, who order'd 'em to be bound, and precipitated from the top of the mountain. There were several places in Georgia, out of which neither horse nor foot could get, without gently sliding down the steep hills. Timur's zeal for the honor of religion, and desire to obtain the rewards promised to those who make war for the faith, excited him to hazard his person in all these difficulties, and expose himself to the greatest fatigue. But at length he clear'd this country of the infidels who inhabited it, setting fire to their houses, and destroying their statues and churches. From

* A town and country in mount Albure in Georgia.
thence he march'd to mount Aouihar, which he gave in pillage to his soldiers; and afterwards to Bichlant, where he gave great largesse to the inhabitants, because they had long since offer'd him their services: he allign'd 'em lordships, with assurances that they need not fear any harm; for he prohibited his soldiers from wronging 'em in the least manner; that every one might see, that what he did was either a recompence for their merits, or a punishment for their crimes. He then march'd on farther, and ravag'd the countrys of the Coflacks of Justin, putting to the sword all these robbers; our soldiers brought from thence great quantities of goods, and especially of honey, with which this country abounds. From thence they went to Bagaz Con, where the inhabitants of Mameatou and Caricomou came to make their submissions: he gave 'em a handsom reception and largesse, and promis'd 'em his protection against the insults of his soldiers. Then there remain'd unconquer'd in Georgia only the isles, the inhabitants of which confiding in the water which surrounded 'em, had fortify'd themselves, and neglected to come and pay their devoirs to Timur: they were call'd Balechian, that is to say, the fishermen. Timur sent troops to reduce 'em: and as it was winter, and the waters were froze above two cubits in thickness, the soldiers paso'd over, and fell upon the houses of these Islanders, pillag'd their effects, and carry'd 'em away captive to the imperial camp.

* A town of Georgia, long. 78. lat. 43.
* Adelis of mountains in Georgia.
CHAP. IX.

Timur marches into Capshae, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tercan*, or Astraran.

OMAR Tahan, Timur's lieutenant in Hadgi Tercan, having observ'd something treasonable in the conduct of Mahmoudi, who was the Kelanter, caus'd a memorial to be writ of it, which he sent to the emperor, who on that advice took up a resolution to raze the town. He began his march during winter, which was very violent this year, leaving with the baggage the Mirzas Mehmet Sultan and Miracha, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. He went at the head of his troops thro' the snows, and bad ways, caus'd by the severity of the season. Hadgi Tercan is situate on the bank of the Volga: the walls of this town are close to the river, which runs round 'em by means of the ditches of the town, and so serves for a rampart to 'em. And as the river is froze in winter, they usually build a wall of ice as strong as one of brick, upon which they fling water in the night, that the whole may congeal, and become one piece: to which wall they make a gate. The mention of this wall we believe will not displease the reader, because it is so extraordinary. Timur being come near Hadgi Tercan, march'd before the army, and in the morning advance'd before the town but with few men.

* A town of Capshae upon the Volga. long. 57° lat. 47°
* Governor of the town.
Mahomandi was oblig'd to go out, to meet the emperor: but Timur caus'd him to be arrested, and sent towards Serai under the conduct of the Mirza Pir Mehmet, and the Emir Ochmoche, Chiel Noureddin, and Coja Arbouga. He then enter'd the place, the inhabitants of which he treated very courteously; but at length he made 'em go out, and after having brought out the men and beasts, and all that was within, he caus'd it to be raz'd. The Mirza Pir Mehmet, having crossed the Volga which was frozen up, thrust Mahomandi under the ice, according to the orders they had receiv'd. Afterwards they went to Serai ', capital of Capchae, which they set on fire, and reduc'd to ashes, after having made the inhabitants go out. This destruction of Serai was to revenge the insulences of the men of Capchae, who had ruin'd Zendigir Serai', the palace of Sultan Cazan Can, while it was without a governor; and there was no prince in Transoxiana, Timur being employ'd in the conquest of the kingdoms of Fars and Irac. After Timur had reveng'd himself of these traitors, he return'd to the winter-quarters: and much as the violence of the cold had extremely weaken'd his army, so that most part of the horses peril'd, and the dearth was so great in the camp, that a pound of millet was sold for seventy Dinars Copeghi, an ox's head for a hundred, and a sheeps-head for two hundred and fifty; the emperor order'd that the spoils taken at Hadgi Tercan and Serai shou'd be divided among the soldiers. The Taxachis had the

* Capital of Capchae, where the Tartar kings of Dachi Barca, which is the Arabian name of Capchae, resid'd: it is situated on the Volga, long. 81. lat. 52.

* Two leagues from Caschi in Transoxiana.
The history of Timur-Bec.

care of this: they gave horses to all those who Chap. 61 had none; so that the army was very much eas'd.

CHAP. LXI.

Timur returns to Cappadoc.

As all the countries of Cappadoc, Kafar, and the west and north of the Caspian sea, were reduced under Timur's dominion, and his troops had pillag'd and sack'd the towns and provinces of all these climates, as Oukas, Madgiar, little Russia, Circassia, Bakycoed, Meke or Molca, Aza, Couban, and Alan; and as all the princes of these countries had given assurances of their obedience, and the enemy who had escap'd with their lives were dispers'd like vagabonds, without either fire or houses: at the beginning of the spring of the year 796 of the Hegira, which answers to the year of the Mosle Timur decamp'd from his winter-quarters in the defile of Bougaz Com, march'd into Derbend and Aserbajian; and at the sound of drums, and the acclamations of the soldiers, with the ensigns display'd, he cross'd the river of Terek upon the ice. As soon as he was come to Terki, he left the baggage, rang'd his army in order of battle, and march'd towards Uchendiga, to attack the Christians there: he be-
Book III. On every thing they found in 'em, they return'd laden with spoils to the camp. After all the places and lordships, situate on the north of Mount Alborz, were reduce'd to Timur's obedience, he decamp'd, and march'd with all his army, enrich'd with the spoils of Georgia and the northern countries. Every soldier brought away five or six of the most beautiful young women of the country; and their wagons were fill'd with riches. The inhabitants of Zereghezan, the most skillful workmen in coats of mail, came to meet the emperor, and offer him their services, and presented him with several of the master-pieces of their art; his highness receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility, and was liberal to 'em. Those of the mountain Caiagh, also submitted, and come to beg quarter; which Timur granted, and dismiss'd 'em. Then he march'd to Derbend Baceou, that is, the Capitans gates, and caus'd the walls of the fortes to be built in a short time.

The news of the emperor's return being spread every where, all the nations came to meet him; and he was receiv'd in triumph, with ensigns display'd. The cities sent to congratulate him upon his conquests, with great pomp and ceremony, and made solemn plays and feasts to return thanks to God: The Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirouan, who had follow'd the court in this expedition, beg'd leave to set out before the rest. He enter'd into Chaderan, and us'd all his care to prepare a great banquet, to receive the emperor in a magnificent manner: in effect, his regale was splendid, and worthy of the court; and he acquitted himself like a good
The history of Timur-Bec.

Servant; and a compleat courtier. From thence Timur march'd to Chamaki, and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Cyrus. The same Cheik Ibrahim, who was also prince of this town, a second time entertain'd the emperor and the court, making presents likewise to Timur, and assuring him of a perfect obedience to his orders. This monarch gave him a veil, and a belt of gold embellish'd with precious stones; he also distributed veils among the relations of this Cheik, and the principal officers of his household; he confirm'd him in the principality of Chirman and Chamaki, recommended to him the care of the town of Derbend, as a place of importance, and to inform himself of whatever should happen near the frontiers of his principality. Timur spent some days in this fine country in plays and pleasures; crost the river of Cyrus, and went to encamp at Actam.

CHAP. LXII.

Timur gives the government of Azerbijana to the Mirza Mirancha, who besieges slengh.

TIMUR having given to the Mirza Mirancha the government of Azerbijana, and all the country Situate betwixt Derbend Bacon and Bagdad, and from Hamadan to the country of the Ottoman; orders were sent by an express to all the officers of this Mirza, who had remain'd in Coraffan, to march to Azerbijana with the Emirs and troops of his household. The

1 Capital of Chirman, long. 21, lat. 40.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Emperor ordered him to govern this kingdom by himself, and to besiege Alengie. The Mirza, when he came to take his leave of the emperor, was tenderly embraced by him, who ordered the Mirza Roulem and Gehanche Behader to accompany him with some good troops, and conduct him as far as Alengie. The Emirs and troops, who were ordered from Ceraluna, being arrived, he fixed the countries of Carabagh and Nacchivan, as far as Avenic, for the hordes and habitations of the troops of his right wing; and the hordes of his left wing were quartered in the countries from Saoue Boulac and Derguzin, as far as Hamadan.

CHAP. LXIII.

Taking of the town of Seirjan, and the retreat of Behloul to Nehaven.

While Timur was busy in the campaign of Capchae in the most northern countries, the town of Seirjan suffer'd a siege of three years, wherein Chahchahan with the troops of Sultam were employ'd. This place was so press'd by the besiegers, that all the inhabitants and garrison were slain in the assault, except Gouderez the governor and six other persons. At length, the place being deliver'd up, Gouderez was put to death for his obstinacy. Temouke Coutchin, governor of Yezd for Timur, left one of his domestic officers to govern this

* A town between Timir and Sultanau.
* A town near Sultanau.
* A town of Iran Agami; long. 81. lat. 35. 30.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. 2.

town, whilst himself went to the imperial camp. The Sultan Mehemet, son of Aboufird Tebeh, with some troops of Coraffana, which had formerly been in the service of the princes of Muzaffer, and had fled at Yezd, were so ambitious as to form a design to revolt, tho' they had been witnesses of the examples we have mention'd: he flew Temouke's lieutenant, and several of the great officers of Yezd, while others escap'd their hands by flight.

As the lieutenant had amassed a considerable sum of money, being the revenue of this province for two years, which he had put into the hands of the receiver-general of the finances of Timur's Divan, and besides had bought several loads of stuffs for the empress Scrai Male Camum, which he had not yet sent to her, this insolent fellow seiz'd upon both the money and stuffs, and made the tailors of the town come to him, whom he oblig'd to make him several sets of these stuffs, that he might clothe all the rebels who had lifted themselves into his service, among whom he likewise shar'd the money. By this means he assembled an infinite number of robbers and villains, who were come here from all parts, hoping to make their fortune on this occasion. This sedition oblig'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Chielk, to depart from Chiraz with the Persian army, to put a stop to these disorders, and disperse the rebels. The governors of the neighboring provinces, as Iphahan, Cousalentan, and Corattan, also marched towards Yezd at the head of their troops; and being all assembled without the city, they form'd the siege.

Timur being inform'd of what had happen'd, order'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, to march thither, with Temour Coja son of Acbouga,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. Bougha, and other Emirs, at the head of his troops, when they were arrived there, they received a second order, that, there not being a sufficient quantity of pasture in the meadows of Yezd to feed all their horses, they should be left in the fresh country of Kiooch, and the province of Iphahan, and that the cavalry should march on foot to Yezd, to beleaguer it. The Mirza and the Emirs departed according to this order; and when they had passed by Iphahan, and came to Yezd, they encamp'd about it and beleaguer'd it, giving two assauts each day, one in the morning, and the other in the evening.

When Timur was in Capchac, the Emir Mezid-Berlas, a courteous, experienced, courageous prince, and of irreproachable conduct, was his governor in Nehavend. This lord had an officer nam'd Bahoul, a man of a wicked and perverse inclination, and defil'd to an evil end. His natural ingratitude excited him to despise the favors of the Emir Mezid, and treacherously to put him to death: by which means this villain got to be governor of Nehavend, and made preparations for an army, that he might maintain his revolt. Timur being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Cheik Noureddin to Chiraz, to receive the revenues of Persia. When this Emir was arriv'd there, the Emir Sevindgie sent in the name for the court, according to Timur's orders. Timur departed for Ardebil, and encamp'd at Sultania, where having compassion on the poor Sultan Aila, prince of Merdin, who had then lain in prison for three years, he ordered his chains to be taken off; and after having comforted him, and given him a veil, he pardon'd him, and by letters-patent restored him to the principality of Merdin, which he had before enjoy'd; yet not till this prince had solemnly
The history of Timur-Bec.

**Chapter 3**

Temibly sworn before the Emirs who protected him, that he would never fail in his obedience to the emperor, but accompany him in all his wars, and on every occasion give marks of his respect and fidelity; and then he departed to return to Merdin.

Timur after this order'd the Mirza Sultan Husein, and Coodad Husein, to march with expedition to Nehavend, with the other Emirs and their troops, to take this place, and destroy the impious Behloul, as a punishment for what he had done. They immediately set out, and Timur went from Sultaniä to Hamadan. When the Emirs were come to Nehavend, they caus'd the drums to be beat, and the trumpets sounded; then they besieged the town, which they took with abundance of toil and fatigue, and cut in pieces all the rebels who defended it; the traitor Behloul was seiz'd, and burnt alive.

Timur then order'd the Emirs to march against Toftar, to exterminate the robbers of the highways of Loreitan, and quell the disorders they had committed; he enjoin'd them to march along the shores of the Persian gulf, to bring under his obedience all the maritime places as far as the frontiers of Ormus, and return to the court after they had gain'd all those conquests. The Emirs departed from Nehavend according to these orders; and Timur went to encamp in the great plain of Hamadan, with the usual magnificence in his tents and pavilions. This monarch liad there during the whole month of Ramadan, which he spent in prayer, fasting, and the other exercises of piety which good Mussulmans observe; and he was not contented with practising all those things he was oblig'd to, but he perform'd also such acts of devotion as the prophet only advises.
C H A P. L X I V.

Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Tezod.

WHEN the feast of Bariam was over, the emperor order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to march to Ormus, and make himself master of all the towns near the Persian gulf; and he accordingly departed at the head of the army. Then advice was brought of the reduction of Tezod, which after a long siege was carried out, thirty thousand persons dying of famine. Timur pardon'd the inhabitants, because he knew they were not concern'd in the sedition; but the rebels, who had carry'd on the war, were reduc'd to such extremity, that they were constrain'd to dig a way under the ditch of the town, by which to escape: which our soldiers perceiving, they pursu'd 'em, and near Mehrigard," flew the son of Aboufaid Tebeni, the leader of these seditious persons, some of whom were cut in pieces, and others burnt alive. As Timur prohibited every one from hurting or pillaging the inhabitants; he was also willing they shou'd pay no tax: and Temoule Couthchin, who had been governor there for Timur before the rebellion, had orders to go into the town with his men, and hinder the soldiers entrance, lest they shou'd insult the inhabitants.

* A town of Corallia, otherwise call'd Esfernay and Mehrigan, long. 91° 30'; lat. 36° 30'.

Timur
The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur did not demand of them even the revenues of the two last years: and as thro' the tyranny of the rebels the town of Yazd had been so far ruin'd that there remain'd no flocks in it, and most of the houses were empty by the death of the inhabitants, it was now re-establish'd, and in a short time became as flourishing as before the revolt, thro' the good conduct of Timur's officers. After the reduction of Yazd, the Mirzas had orders to return to court, and let their troops repair to their quarters. So the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghiz return'd by Coraffana to Condoz and Bacalan; the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, came to court; and the troops of the victorious army march'd to their own habitations.

CHAP. LXV.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

The 2d of Chawal 798, which answers to the year of the Mouse, Timur depart'd from Hamadan, in order to return to Samarcand. He went to encamp in a delightful meadow, from whence he sent to the Emir Gehancha, with orders to leave the siege of Alengic to the Sultan Sendger, Hadgi Safoddin, and the troops of the Mirza Mirancha, that he might follow the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Pars. The same day he gave orders for a hunting: the principal officers of his court and household form'd the great circle, surrounding the plain; and Timur took the diversion of killing the beasts. After the hunting was over, he sent Abdel Malec Caracan, who came from Alengic,
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. to the Mirza Rouleem, to summon him to court. Abdel Malec met the Mirza at Sultana; and they came back with expedition. Timur disbanded the whole army, and set out before the baggage, marching in one day as far as others would in three or four. At his arrival at Veramin, the Mirza Rouleem paid his respects to him, and was soon after sent to Chiraz to join the Mirza Mehemet Sultan.

Timur at his return from Capchac, had sent the Tarachi Sekurec to the Mirza Charoc at Samarcand, with orders to send the Mirza Abooabere, the Emir Rouleem son of Tagi Bourgat Berlas, Pir Ali son of Mamut Chah Yeouri, and other sons of Emirs to the imperial camp, with the five thousand horse which remain'd with him. This Mirza join'd the emperor at Belfan, and was receiv'd with all imaginable cattles. Timur gave him a hundred thousand Dinars Copegli, with his bay horse call'd Taharten, famous for his largeness and swiftness; he also made presents to all the officers of this prince's household; and then he sent him to his father the Mirza Mirancha at Tauris.

Our conqueror continued his road towards Samarcand; and in all the places he pass'd thro', the Emirs, captains and other officers, came to tellify their obedience to him, and brought him presents of all sorts of rarities. When he was arriv'd at Corajana, the Emir Aehouta immediately departed from Herat, to pay his devoirs to him; and when he had that honor granted him, he offer'd his presents, and sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. Timur inform'd

* A town of Corajana in the territory of Rejo, long. 28. 30. lat. 35. 25.
himself wherever he pass'd of the condition of the people; he aveng'd those who were oppressed by tyrants, and severely punished extortioners as an example to others, putting some of 'em to death. And the better to establish justice, and hinder the great lords from wronging the people, he made the Emir Allahdial inspector-general of Coratiana.

Timur having crossed the Oxus in boats before Amoyne, he enter'd the country of Cuzar, where he found the empresses Sultan Baal Begum, Serai Male Camum, Touman Aga, and the other ladies and princelies who came to meet him with prince Charoc; they sprinkled great quantities of gold and precious stones upon his head, and made their presents to him, which consisted of a thousand horses richly caparison'd, adorn'd with precious stones, and harnesses and bridles of gold; besides a thousand mules all of one colour. They gave thanks to God for the emperor's happy return, who departed from Cuzar and came to Kech, where he lodg'd in the palace of Acferat, which himself had built. He then went to visit the tombs of the Cheik Chamfreedin Kolar, and other great Santons of the country, where after his devotions, he gave largesses and alms to the Santons who at that time dwelt there; he enter'd into the tomb of the Emir Tragai his father, that of his dear son the Mirza Gehanghir, and those of his other children and relations, where the whole Alcoran was recited by the readers, to whom he was exceeding liberal. The principal men of the city of Kech, and all the great lords of divers provinces, cities and towns of Tranfoixiana, came forthwith to court, where they kiss'd the earth before the emperor, congratulated him on his conquests, and wish'd him a long and prosperous...
The history of Timur-Bce.

Book III. perous reign. Timur order'd a solemn feast with banquets and plays in Aserai, to entertain'em, with all the ceremonys usual on such occasions.

At length Timur departed; and having pass'd the mountain of Kech, made his entry into Samarcand, which the inhabitants had adorn'd, to receive this great emperor in triumph; on all sides were to be seen garlands of flowers with crowns, amphitheaters, and musicians performing the newel pieces of music to the honor of his majesty. The walls of the houses were hung with carpets, the roofs cover'd with fluffs, and the shops set off with curious pieces. There was a vast multitude of people, and the streets were cover'd with velvet, fustian, silk, and carpets, which the horsefes trampled under feet. Timur had no sooner made his entry, than he went to visit the sepulchers of the saints, and of learned and illustrious persons: he gave great largesse to the Santons who took care of 'em, and alms to the poor; and at length he came to his palace, and sat upon the imperial throne. He order'd that for joy at his happy return, a magnificent feast should be made with all manner of diversions, in his own palace of Ghene Seraf, where the greatest splendor and magnificence appear'd. All the poets compos'd verses in his praise, and nothing was to be heard but Long live the emperor.

After this feast was over, Timur entirely employ'd his time in the government of the state, and regulating the public affairs: he order'd the Cheiris, or descendents of Mahomet, the doctors, the men of letters, and the chief persons belonging to the mosques of his empire, who were then at court, to come before him; and he gave to every one of 'em, according to his rank...
and dignity, some of the booty he had taken in Persia, Media, Hircania, C}s, Capelac, Georgia, Muscovy, and the other countries he had conquered since his departure from Samarcand. Then he inform’d himself of the affairs of the people, and did justice to all who made complaints. He order’d the tyrants to be put in chains, and the fork’d branch hung round their necks; and afterwards he put some of ‘em to death. He exempted all the subjects of his empire from taxes for three years; and made choice of several men of merit, probity and piety, whom he sent into all his kingdoms, to make an exact inquisition into the public concerns, and render justice to the oppress’d. He also gave great alms to the poor both within and without Samarcand. Thus all his people, either near or at a distance, were so pleas’d with having such an equitable, generous, and valiant emperor, that they justly flux’d his reign the golden age.

Timur pass’d the winter at Samarcand, in the palace of Gheu Serai, with abundance of magnificence, where he exercis’d his justice and liberality. He sent back to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheli, who was come express to Samarcand to pay his duty to him. In the mean while a son was born to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was nam’d Mehemet Ghezanghir. Timur order’d feasts, banquets, presents, and the usual compliments to be made in all parts; and he chose Temple Malec Coutechin to carry the agreeable news to the Mirza, the father of the new-born prince, who was then in Persia.
CHAP. LXVI.

The building of the palace of Baghi Chemal.

AT the beginning of the spring of 799, Timur went to a pleasure-houte he had built north of Samarcand, and which for that reason he had nam'd Baghi Chemal, the garden of the north; where his canopy and royal tent were erected. He order'd a palace to be built in this delightful garden, whose beauty and magnificence should be the admiration of the universe; and which should be a proper place for plays and banquets on days of rejoicing. He dedicated this palace to the princes Beghisi Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Miranba. The architects of Persia and Bagdad, who had been brought into this city, prove to excel each other in their plans, according to the nicest rules of architecture. His highness having made choice of one of these plans, gave orders that the palace should be built according to that model: he commanded the astrologers to come before him, whom he enjoined to observe the happy moment for beginning this building. According to their directions, the foundations were laid in the month of Jamazulakber 799, which answers to the year of the Crocodile, under a fortunate horoscope. The four pavilions of the corners were distributed among the Emirs, who were to inspect the workmen. The most skilful masters in each art were employ'd: and as they were carefully obser'd, the work was soon in its defir'd condition; and Timur was so intent upon his building, that he
The history of Timur-Bec. 531

he said here a month and a half, that it might be the former smith'd. Care was taken that the angles of the pavilions should be extremely firm and solid: and to that purpose a piece of marble which had been brought from Tauris was placed at each corner. The walls were painted in fresco by the most skilful painters from Persia and Bagdad, with so much art and care, that the works of Artese Mani,* several of whose pieces Timur kept in his cabinet of curiosities, were less beautiful than these paintings; and some travellers on seeing 'em, said, that the Neghlin Cave (which is the name of the palace of China, whose magnificence hath passed into a proverb) is nothing in comparison of Baghi Chemal. The court of it was pav'd with marble; the bottom of the walls, as well within as without, were cover'd with porcelain; and to crown the work, after the building was smith'd, Timur order'd a royal hall, where, with sumptuous banquets, plays and diversions, this charming retreat was for ever consecrated to the pleasure of the emperors of Zagatai.

C H A P. LXVII.

Timur gives the principality of Corasjace to the Mirza Charoc.

Timur, having several children, whose power, credit and authority approach'd to sovereignty, and who doubtless had in their hearts the ambition of reigning in their turn,

* The most eminent painter of China and Persia.
and leaving a crown to their successors, reflected upon the disorders which would arise, if at any time discord should creep in among 'em; but as he foreknew that his august politeness would be perpetuated in the Mirza Charoe, his eldest son, he resolved to give him during his life the propriety of the kingdom of Coraslan, being that of all his kingdoms which by its situation seemed fittest for the seat of his empire, as it lay in the fourth climate, and was a temperate country in the middle of Asia, between the two empires of Iran and Tigran. The feast of the consecration of the palace of Baghi Chemal was a favorable conjunction for the coronation of the Mirza. Timur was invited thither by this happy occasion: and while most part of the lords of the empire were assembled, he proclaimed the Mirza Charoe Behader sovereign and absolute prince of the kingdoms of Coraslan, Sijan, and Mazendaran, as far as to Firoz-kooh and the town of Rei. Then he named Emirs and generals of the first rank for the principal posts in the court of this new sovereign, of whom the Emir Soliman Chah was the most considerable, tho' the others were also lords of great figure. Each of 'em was placed at the head of a company selected out of a Toman; and all the other Emirs had the honor to send their sons or brothers to accompany this prince. As soon as our conqueror had thus out his letters-patent to establish Charoe king of Coraslan, he tenderly embraced him, kissed his eyes and forehead, and dismissed him, after having tellingly the sorrow he felt at his absence. The new king took leave of his father, and set out at the head of his army, being accompanied by the princes his brothers for two days journey, as also by the Emirs and great lords of
of the emperor's court, who were no sooner on
their return home than this king continued his
road, and arriv'd at the Oxus near Amouye,
where he crossed it in the mouth of Chaban 799,
which answers to the year of the Crocodile:
he encamp'd at Andeod, where he was enter-
tained, as he had been in all the places in his
palace, with banquets, plays and dances, which
were prepar'd for his honor. When he was at
Teluchetstan, the Emir Acheong, with the
Cherifs, the great lords, lawyers, and per-sons
of quality of Herat, came to meet him in
ceremony: they offer'd him their presents,
and accompany'd him the remainder of his
journey. The last day of Chaban he happily
came down into the meadow of Kebdelian,
situate without the town of Herat, where he
chose for his residence the palace of Bagh Zag-
ban, which signifies the garden of crows; and
there he immediately betook himself to render
justice. The governors of Corassan, Mazen-
dran and Sidan, made haste to pay their homage,
and make their presents to him; the merchants
likewise made theirs, and the artificers carry'd
each a specimen of their finest work. The lords
of the counties, and the governors of the cities,
brought him the keys of their respective places;
and all the foes of soveraigns, after having
sent their presents, congratulated him on his
coming to the crown. The night of the 31st
of Zilhadj 799, which answers to the year of
the Crocodile, he had a son born to him, who
had Gemini for his ascendant; advice of which
he immediately sent to the emperor, who nam'd
the child Haidincar.
CHAP. LXVIII.

Timur stays some time at Kebh. Return of the Mirza Methemeh Sultan from the campaign of Fars.

In the month of Chaban of the same year, Timur departed from Baghi Chemal, passed by Rebatiam, and march'd to the town of Sebra; then he went down into the charming meadow of Kebh, where he resolved to encamp. The abundance of beautiful flowers, its verdure, the freshness of the air, the clearness of its waters, and the fine gravel which appeared in its gentle streams, and several other charms, invited Timur to stay there some time; but at length he entered the town, and lodged at Aserisi, where he resided during the fast of Ramadhan, and the feast of Baim, after which he departed thence, and ascended a delightful place, named Sultan Astondge, to spend the summer in. In the mean while the Mirza Methemeh Sultan, who by order of the emperor his father had march'd from Chiraz to Ormuz with several Emirs and a good army, return'd to court, after the conquest of many countries either by himself or lieutenants. He took the road of Darabjerd, and Tarom, accompany'd by the Emir Gehanchee, and having left Seifeddin sick at Kerbal:

A town of Fars, where they find furs of all colours; in the middle of the town is a mountain of free-flore, which stands single, not joining any other mountains; it lies in long. 80' 40' lat. 31' 40'.

A town of Fars near Seifeddin.
so he went to Ormus, exterminating all those who would not submit. The Mirza Rouflem, son of Omar Chell, march'd theither by the way of Cazeron and Fars, Gelalhamid and other Emirs from by Gehrom and Far. The Emir Aidouco Beriaz took the road of Kirman and the province of Kigd, and Meeran, which he pillag'd as far as the plain of Decht Ali. When they were arriv'd at Ormus, they took at the first outer the seven fortresses, which are as it were the bulwarks of that kingdom, the sovereign of which, Mehemet Chah, was constrain'd to retire to Gerom, where they oblig'd him to make a peace, and pay an annual tribute of six hundred thousand Dinars, which he swore to do. The Mirza left Aidouco and his brother at Girost, to seek the enemy who had hid themselves: and when he was on his return to Chiraz, he march'd towards the country of Curistan, while the Emir Hadgi Sefelderin return'd to court by the way of Yezd. The day that the Mirza departed, a person nam'd Jumaleddin, native of the mountain of Firoozkohl, who rode at the side of his horse, strick this prince with a knife: but his hour not being yet come, he was only slightly wounded. The villain thinking to save his life, got up to the ridge of the mountain, where he trip'd as he was running.

- A town of Fars, long. 27. lat. 29.
- A town of Fars, long. 27. 30. lat. 28. 30.
- A town of Fars, long. 28. 30. lat. 28. 30.
- A town of Fars, long. 28. 30. lat. 28. 30.
- A kingdom, of which Ormus, Serjan, Girost, Bum, &c. are parts.
- Capital of Meeran.
- A kingdom between Kirman and India.
- Capital of Kirman, long. 97. lat. 27. 30. Four days journey from Ormus, and two from Serjan.
and falling into a precipice, was kill'd. Some of
the prince's domestics having pursu'd him to the
top of the mountain, perceiv'd the dead body;
they cut off his head, and call'd it at the Mirza's
feet.

This prince, having successfully finish'd his
campaign, resolve'd to return to court: he depart-
ed by the ways of Ouroudgerd, pass'd by Ha-
madan, and took the road to Samarcand. Hav-
ing gone thro Cavalcani, he crost the Gihon,
and had the honor to salute Timur at the sum-
mer-palace of Sultan Aoudje. Timur ten-
derly embrac'd him, talk'd with him in relation
to what had pass'd in the campaign he was now
return'd from, and discover'd a great deal of
joy at his arrival. The Mirza fell on his knees
to offer his presents; and on this occasion there
were banquets and public rejoicings. Then Ti-
mur return'd to Samarcand, to which place the
prince: Casrade also came from Tauris: and
when she was near the city, her dear son, the
Mirza Mehemet Sultan, went to meet her; she
had the pleasure of embracing him, whom she
tenderly lov'd, and had so long desire'd to
see with the greatest impatience. As soon as the
princess was arriv'd at Samarcand, she went to
pay her respects to the emperor in the palace of
Hugli Bouland; she present'd him with fluxs
embroider'd with gold, and Arabian horses with
saddles of gold; and to compleat this agreeable
present, she gave to each of Timur's sons vults
embroider'd with gold.
CHAP. LXIX.

Timur demands in marriage for himself the daughter of Keser Coja Aglen. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Eskender with the princess Baghis Sultan.

As it pleas'd Timur often to tie the sacred knots of marriage, he gave several veils, and other great presents to Chamagehan son of Keser Coja Aglen, and sent him to his father to demand his sister in marriage; and that this affair might be soon concluded, he order'd Casyafeddin Tercan to accompany him, whom he loaded with presents and riches. He afterwards went to encamp in the plain of Cangheul without Samarcand, the beauty of which surpass'd the cabinets of the Chinese manufactures, for its variety of flowers. The princess Melket Aga arriv'd there from Herat: she offer'd her presents, and after having saluted Timur, made a panegyric on him with her usual eloquence, which inflam'd the whole assembly with zeal and affection for him. The emperor order'd that preparations should be made for a magnificent banquet, at which the princes his sons, the Emirs, the Cherifs and Nevians were present, being conducted by the Chaoux on horseback, with their golden wands in their hands. The empresses also had embroider'd veils, and veils enrich'd with precious stones; and every one appear'd there with an extraordinary splendor and pomp. The music was much finer than on other occasions: for the illustrious Coja Abdel
The history of Timur-Bec.

Abdel Cader, author of the book of Edouards, and who was the glory of the pasages for his skill in music, was there in person, and presided over the rest. The feast lasted three months; and the princess Beghili Sultan was there mar-ry'd to the Mirza Eskender, according to the laws of the Alcoran, and the maxims of Ma-homet. Then the princess Canzade took leave of the emperor to return to Tauris by the way of Bocara.

CHAP. LXX.

Timur gives orders for making the garden of Ditenchus, and building a stately palace in it.

In the beginning of the autumn of 799, Ti- mur order'd that at the end of the delightful meadow of Canigheul, a garden should be laid out, where beauty should surpass all the gardens which had ever yet been in the empire. The astrologers made choice of the hour in which they were to begin it, and the artists prepar'd the plans to regulate the alleys, and the compartments of the parterres. The painters prepar'd some new master-piece, to place in the palace which was to be built there: and the most skilful architects of Asia, who liv'd at Samarcand, laid the foundations on a square plan, each side of which was fifteen hundred cubits; and in the middle of each was a very high gate. The ceilings of the palace were adorn'd with flowers of all sorts, in mosaic work. The walls were cover'd with porcelaine of Cachian. At
each of the four corners of the garden a very lofty pavilion was erected, cover'd also with porcelain, with very delicate shadowings, hang'd with admirable art and skill. The parterre of the garden was laid out with perfect symmetry in alleys, square-beds, and little wildernesses of divers figures. Sycomore-trees were planted on the borders of the alleys; and the compartments on all sides fill'd with different sorts of fruit-trees, and others which only bore flowers. When the garden was compleated, Timur gave it the name of Bagh-i Diluena, that is, the garden which rejoices the heart. In the middle the foundations of the palace, which was three stories high, were laid; the roofs were exceeding lofty; it was adorn'd with all the beauties which could charm the eyes of men: and it was built exceeding strong. It was surrounded with a colonade of marble, which gave it a majestic aspect. As it was customary to dedicate palaces to some lady, Timur dedicated this to his new mistress Tulek Canum, daughter of Kerf Coja Aglen king of the Moguls, whom he had sent Nevians to demand in marriage. The emperor then departed for Tschin to meet this princess, crossed the Sihon, and encamp'd at Dere Ahengheran, near the village of Tchinas, where he passed the winter, after having built houses, or rather cottages of reeds by reason of the weather; which sort of houses the Tartars call Comia. Timur went to the village of Issi, to visit the tomb of the Cheik Ahmed Haici, one of the sons of the Imam Zade Mehemet Hanofi: he cause'd this illustrious sepulcher to be rebuilt, it being partly ruin'd; and he augmented it with a superb edifice, containing a lofty roof, two Minarets, and a dome with four fronts, the south side
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III.

Side of which was thirty cubits. Near the great dome was another of twelve cubits with an apartment of four bed-chambers, wherein the tomb of the Cheik is; and on the right and left of the dome are two other apartments of four bed-chambers each. Each apartment is thirteen cubits and a half in length, and sixteen in breadth; being design'd to lodge the readers and their families, with some chambers for strangers who repair thither out of devotion. The walls and the dome were adorn'd with porcelain, and the flone of the sepulcher was of white marble, embellish'd with rich sculptures; and the care of this building was committed to the Moulla Obaidalla Sedre, who got it finish'd in two years.

Timur having perform'd his ordinary acts of piety at this place, distributed large alms among the keepers of the tomb, and the poor who were there. He then departed from that place; and as soon as he was on his return to his camp, advice was brought that the princef Toukel Canum was on her march. All the lady's and Emirs of the court took horse to meet her, according to the orders they had receiv'd; they advance'd sixteen days journey, and having met her, sprinkled gold and precious flowers upon her head. They presented horses to her, and did her all the honor which is due to a great queen; and at each hand they arriv'd at, they made feasts of the utmost magnificence. At length on the third of Rabâutelv of the year of the Hegira 800, they deliver'd this Caidafa into the hands of our Alexander.

* That materials, queen of the Amazons, who came to seek Alexander, that she might have issue of him. (See next page.)
The emperor gave orders for a feast to be prepared, to celebrate the marriage: he commanded the grand Mufli, the Gadi, and doctors of the law, to come before him; and they married him to the beautiful princess Toukol Canum according to the Mahometan religion. He was at the same time congratulated by the empresses, the princes his sons, the Emirs and Nevians, who sprinkled upon him precious stones and pearls: and the feast lasted several days. Timur gave various and considerable gratifications to the Nevians and Mogul ladies who accompanied the new Sultanes.

About this time ambassadors arrived from Tangouz Can, emperor of Cathay, with abundance of curious presents. They were introduced to their audience by the great Emirs: they offered their presents, and after having declared the subject of their embassy, and delivered their credentials, they had their audience of leave, and return'd home.

The emperor appointed Mamehmed Sultan governor of the frontiers of Mogolistan, ordering him to build a fortress at Achira, and use all his care to augment the houses, and have the lands about it tilled and cultivated better than they had ever been, and to render this city flourishing. He named for the Mirza’s officers, the Emir Birdi, son of Sarbouza, Hadji Seinteddin, Codzad Hulleim, Chamseddin Abbass, and others, with forty thousand horse. Accordingly they departed, and having passed the mountain Coulan, they went

---

* A town of Mogolistan on the frontiers of China.
* A mountain at the extremity of Mogolistan towards China.
The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. to encamp at Achira, the lands of which they came to be cultivated.

In the beginning of the spring of the year An. Dom. 1796, Timur departed from Tchinas; where he had pass'd the winter, to return to Samarcand; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, and happily arriv'd at the seat of his empire, from whence he set out some time after for Kocch. On this road there is a mountain about five leagues distant from Samarcand, out of which springs a river. Timur considering that this would be an agreeable place to live in, and that the soil was fit for cultivation, order'd a great garden to be made here, and a pleasure-houfe built on the top of a rock in the middle of it: which being finish'd, he gave it the name of Tac Carache, the black throne.

Two days after he departed, pass'd by the foot of the mountain, and came to Rebayam, where the Mirza Charoe, coming from the winter-quarters at Elcerahad, had the honor to kiss his hands. Timur gave him a handsom reception, and was well pleas'd to see him. The Mirza made his presents, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon him. Timur then went to Kech, and encamp'd at Eltehil Balec; where he spent several days in the meadows of that place, which were so much the more agreeable to him, in that they put him in mind of his infancy, and the infinite favors he had receiv'd from the Almighty, who had rais'd him to the highest pitch of grandure that any conqueror ever arriv'd at.

* A town in the meadow of Kech.

The end of the first volume.
"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.